





MASTER-PIECE

MARKHAM

1688















35466/B/1

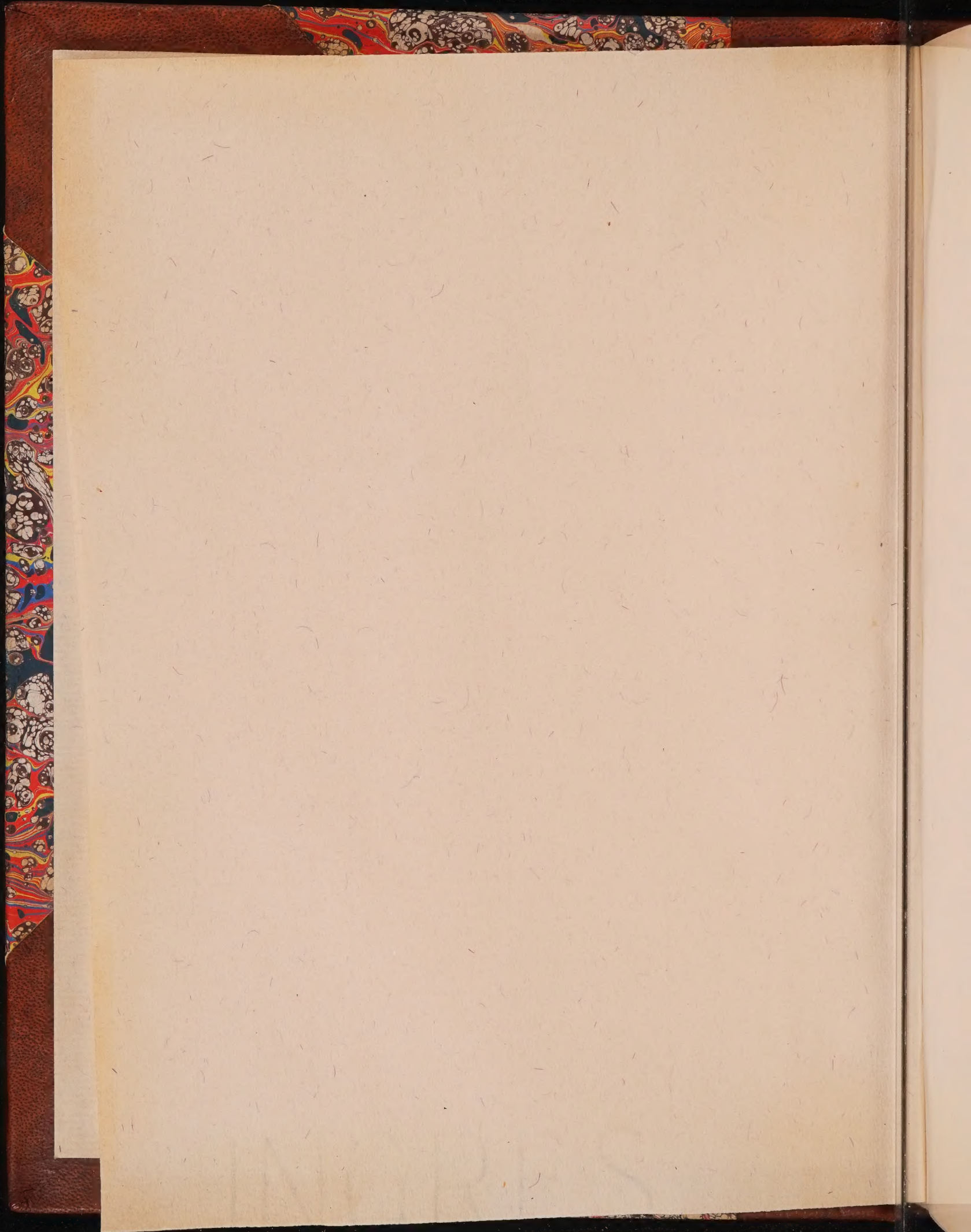
14th ed. 1688

Sigs. A1-3, P4, U1, Ccccc 2, Fffff 2-  
and Ggggg 1-2 and folding  
woodcut wanting

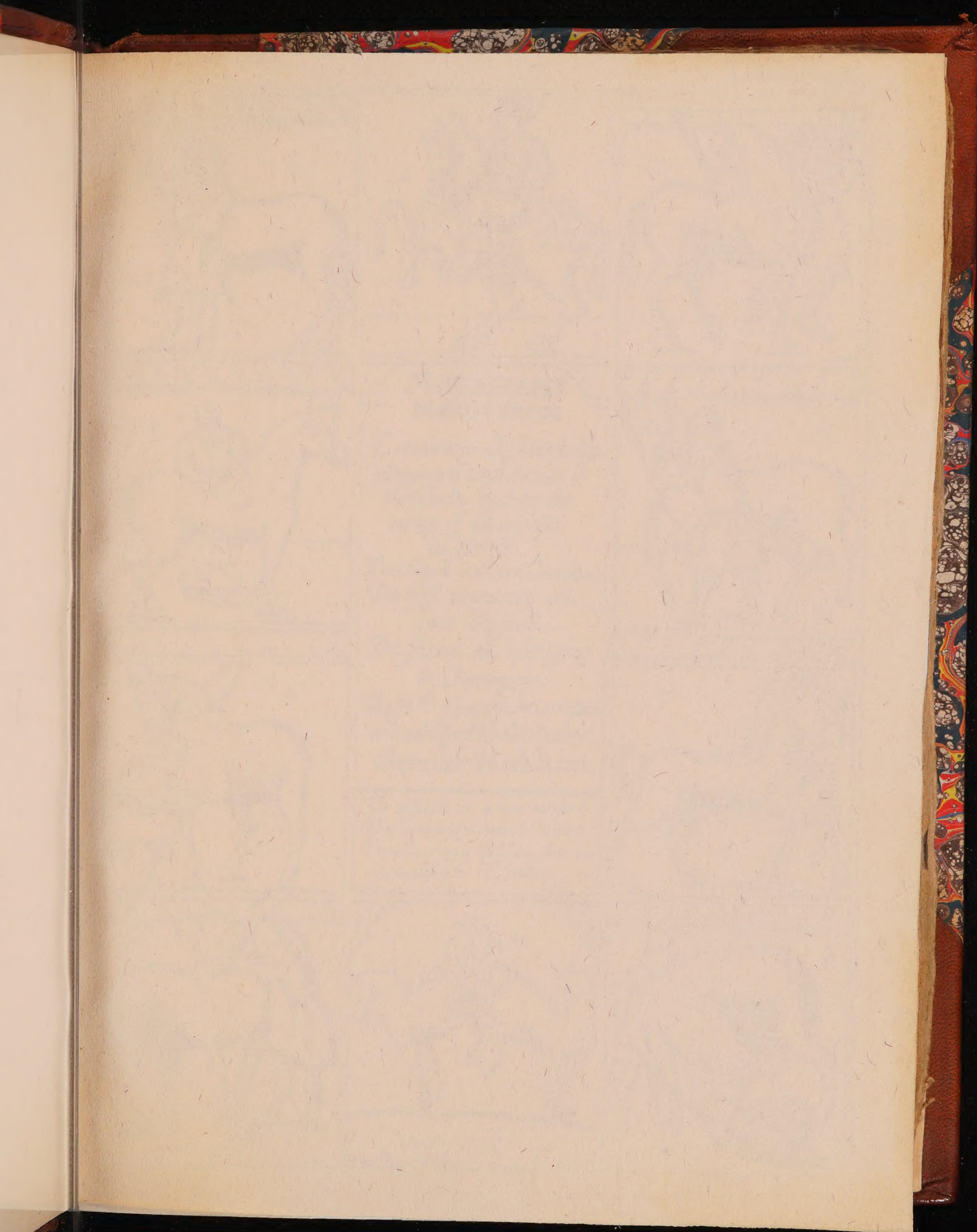


FFFF 2-4  
ding

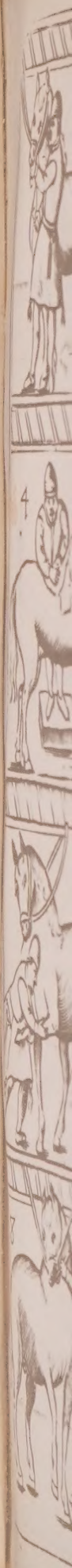
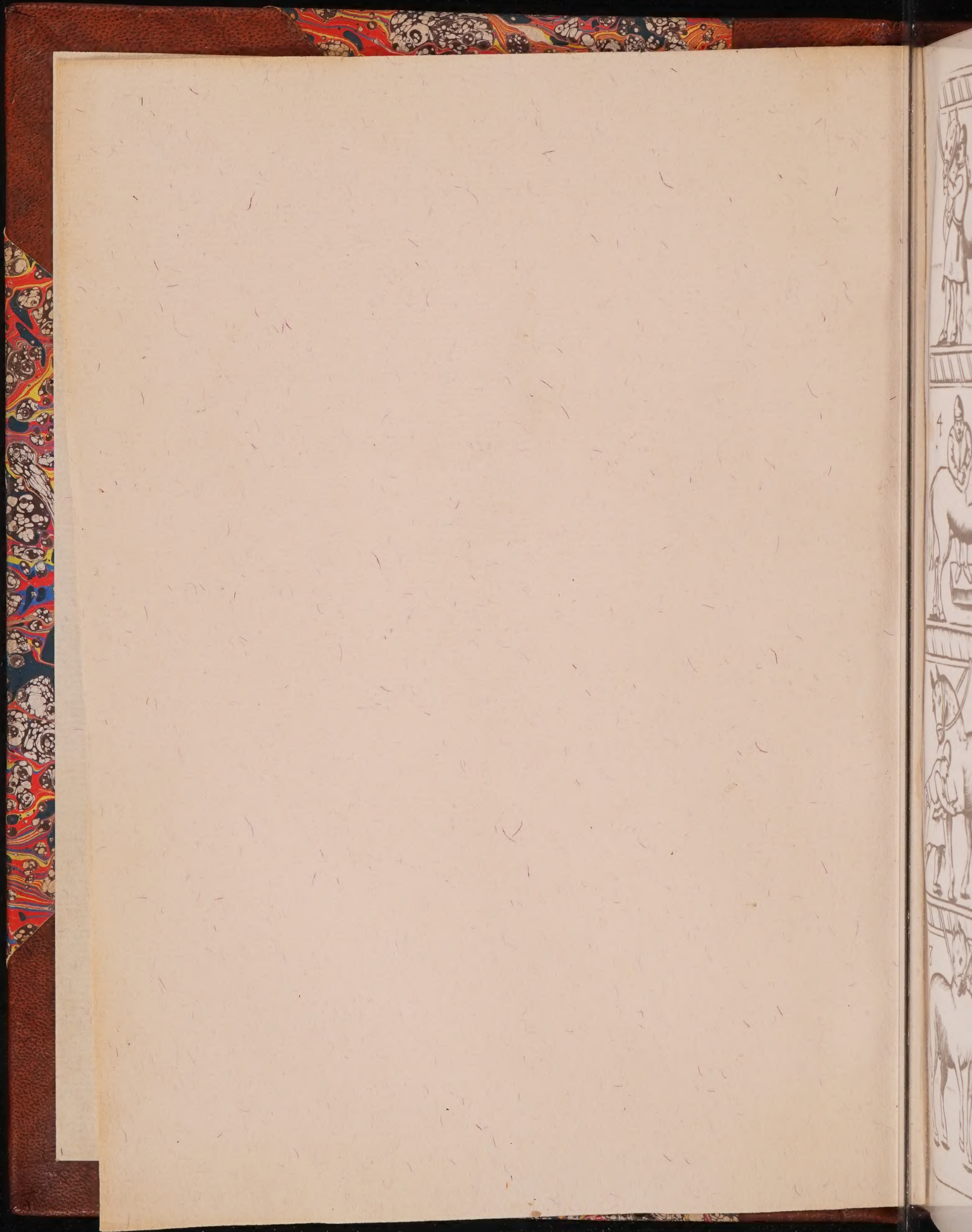
















**MARKHAMS**  
Maister-Peece

Containing all knowledge  
belonging to Smith, Farrier, or  
Horse-leech, touching the  
curing of all diseases  
in Horses.

Devided into two bookes.  
The first, containing all  
cures Physicall.

The second, all belonging  
to Chyrurgery.

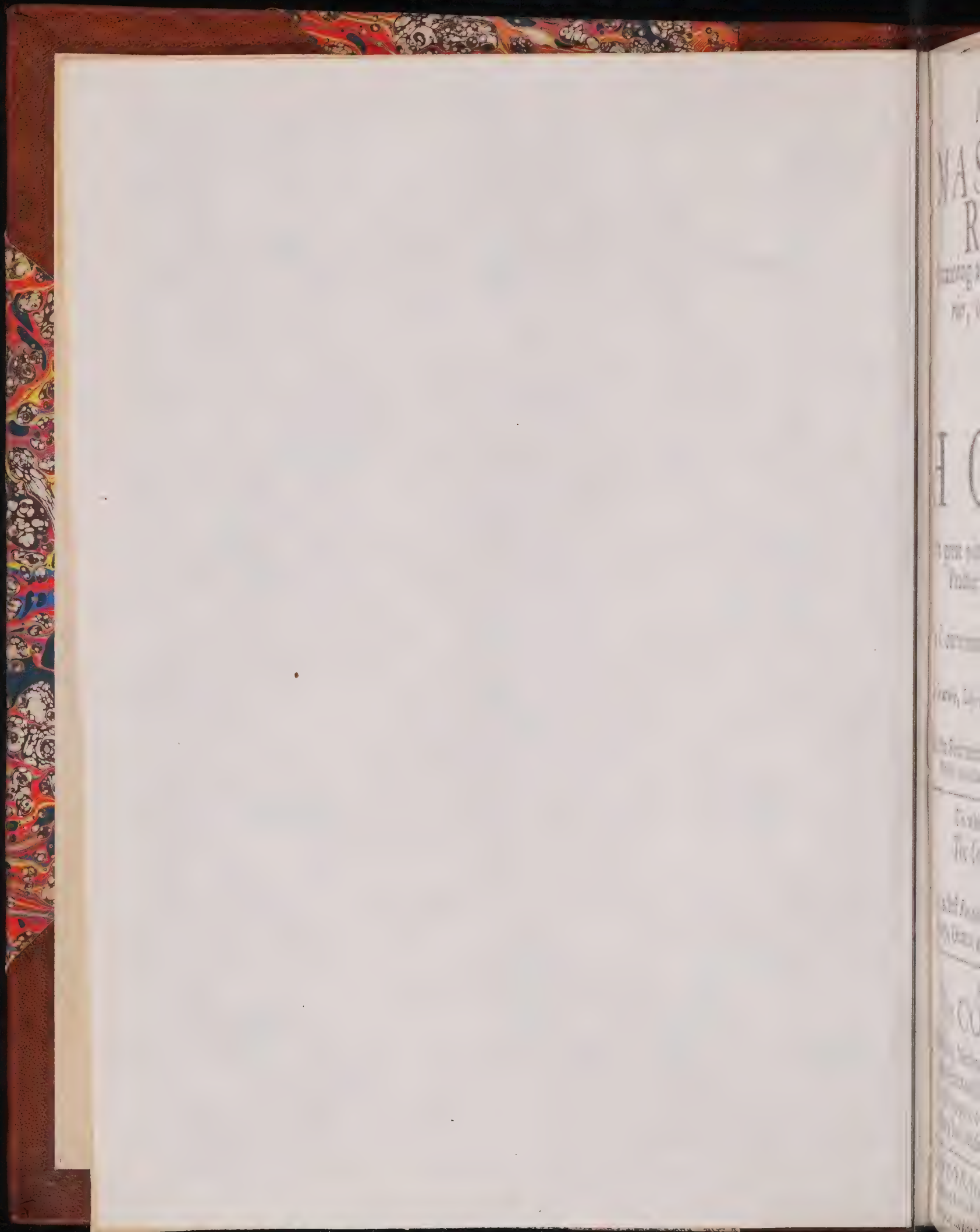
The 11<sup>th</sup> Impression, corrected  
and enlarged by the Author.

Geruaſe Markham.



In the Library of the  
British Museum







~~N<sup>o</sup> 203~~ 3, 4, 16.  
M<sup>r</sup> A R K H A M<sup>s</sup>

# MASTER-PIECE REVIVED:

Containing all Knowledge belonging to the Smith, Farrier, or Horse-Leach, touching the Curing

## All Diseases,

I N

# H O R S E S.

D R A W N

With great pains from approved Experience, and the Publick Practice of the best Horse-Marshals in *Christendom*.

Divided into Two Books.

The I. containing *Cures Physical*; The II. all *Cures Chirurgical* :

T O G E T H E R W I T H

The *Nature, Use and Quality* of every *SIMPLE* mentioned through the whole *WORK*.

Now the Fourteenth time Printed, Corrected and augmented with above Thirty new Chapters, and Forty new Medicines heretofore never Publish'd.

---

To which is added by way of *APPENDIX*,  
*The Countrey-Man's Care for his other Cattle,*

C O N T A I N I N G

The exactest *Receipts* for Curing all *DISEASES* in Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, Goats, and all smaller Cattel, with many new Additions.

---

And now in this Impression is added

## The COMPLEAT JOCKEY ;

Containing Methods for the Training of Horses up for Racing; with their Heats and Courses, and manner of Keeping, &c. Also Instructions to the Buyers, to avoid Cheating Horse-Courfers; And all things necessary for Gentlemen, and others. *Never before made Publick.*

---

L O N D O N, Printed by John Richardson for Tho. Passinger at the Three Bibles on London-Bridge, and M. Watts and George Collins, at the Three Daggers in Fleet Street, near the Inner-Temple Gate; and at the Swan and Bodger, in Ludgate-Hill against the Old Bailey, 1700.





RIGH

My

Sr & V

Baron D

Earl o

Mun

SIR

FF

FF

FF

FF

FF



*John Thors the Book*

T O T H E  
 RIGHT HONOURABLE, and  
 My NOBLE LORD,  
 Sir ROBERT DORMER,  
 Baronet,

Baron Dormer of Wing, Viscount Ascot,  
 Earl of Carnarvan, and Master of His  
 Majesties Hawks.

SIR,

**E**Ver since I came to serve your  
 Countrey in Military Occasions,  
 I accounted my self your Servant,  
 and to that end have made strong  
 Intimation: But Multa cadunt, many haps  
 binder



## The Epistle Dedicatory.

hinder hopes : now left to mine own Power.  
I could not find any thing that could so well  
express me to your Lordship, or shew you  
what I am either in Affection or Vertue, as  
the Dedication of this Book, which contains  
me amply and fully adorned with the best of  
mine own Feathers. And howsoever it  
may appear to your Honour with an old  
countenance, both because my self, the Title,  
and much of the Matter is old ; yet let me  
give Assurance unto your Noble Goodness,  
that there is that newness of Truth, Art, and  
approved Experience, which unto this day  
hath not been discovered in any other Au-  
thor. It is more ( my Noble Lord ) than  
fifty years agoe, since I began to sail in this  
Ocean, and to discover the fruitful Traffick of  
this needful Art : Nor have I in the Interim  
of Time been a Truant, but with my best  
means and abilities have pursued it ( as near  
as I could ) unto the height of Perfection,  
and



## The Epistle Dedicatory.

and doubtless (much Honoured Sir) I have not lost all my Labour, what I have gained I have here now newly inserted, and send it in all Humility to kiss your Lordships Hand; not as a material thing worthy your study; but as a poor Virtue that needs your Defence. And however, I dare not set it forth as a Present worthy your acceptance, yet be pleased to make it such by your Favour, which can make mean deserving appear to be of greatest Merit. This Obligation now offered unto your worthy Hand, is the free Offering of my Love, Service and Affection; and in a word, of my self, who am as well as my Work devoted to be ever Yours. This Book is but the external Pledge which doth demonstrate the inward Obligation of my Heart, since what I am, Art, soul and Affection is only Yours, and desire to be so esteemed in all my Actions, especially in this Work. If it arrive with as good success

(a)

as



---

The Epistle Dedicatory.

---

*as I transport it with sincere Devotion, no  
doubt but the Work will gain Lustre, and  
my self shall find that satisfaction which shall  
make me ever acknowledge my self,*

Your Honours Humble

Devoted Servant,

GERVASE MARKHAM.

---

AN



*The sum of part 1*

A N

ADMONITION

TO THE

READER:

*Which I would wish him to Read, before  
he peruse the Book.*

**T**WO Errors (gentle Reader) have been laid to my Charge in the first Publication of this Book, as namely, a mistaking in the Table of Additions wanting Direction: And the great multiplicity of heaping together of many Medicines for one Grief, without distinguishing their goodness, or foretelling the Practitioner, on which to rely for his best Profit and Assurance.

The first was but a venial escape in the Printer, and may be forgotten, inasmuch as it is in this Impression fully amended. For the second, which is the multiplicity of Medicines, I have for thy satisfaction, to all those Medicines which of mine



---

*To the Reader.*

---

own Knowledge I have found to be certain and most approved, and to be the best of those which are coupled with it; I have in the Margin, and over against the Medicin placed this Mark ☞.

As also to every new addition and new Chapter, (never before published) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this ☞.

And for thy better furtherance in this Work, I have likewise in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very excellencies of all my Knowledge) placed this Mark also ☞.

And this I have done for two Reasons.

First, to make this Work which was one of my first, and entituled my *MASTER-PIECE*, a true *MASTER-PIECE* indeed, and so exact in every part, that other stoln Pieces & Pamphlets Christened in my name, and Printed without my knowledge or assistance, with twice so many Falshoods as Pages may be known to be both Bastards and Abortive; mistaking an ounce for half an ounce, three handfuls for two, too much of one Simple and too little of another, of which whosoever maketh trial, will, without he hath had some knowledge already, indanger his horse; and therefore I have given many men notice myself of it, because they have taken one thing for another.

And



---

*To the Reader.*

---

And that the Bombasted Title, and the illiterate and absurd Epistles, were neither the one nor the other of my invention : For I must most ingenuously confess, that, but to this Book and my first, I was never so happy as to be made a God-Father.

And lastly, to wish all those which are abused by false and imperfect Printings, to come to this Book for Correction, which is a Cabinet that contains all, and more than others struggle for. I can give the Reader no better a Reason to persuade him to read my Book, than to shew him the real use of Horses well managed, according to the Rules of Horsemanship ; he is fit for feats of Arms, and Triumphs in War ; and a great pity it is, that such an excellent Beast should any way miscarry for want of knowing his natural Diseases, and the Cure thereof.

I have now made the Souldier and all others, Masters of Art in the Cures of their Horses, if Farriers be failing to advise and consider with them: For it is a Knowledge fit for a Gentleman, both in Peace and War, to be able to cure the Diseases incident to his Horses ; for other Countries do love all Experiments, and to be seen generally in all generous Practices, whereof horsemanship



---

*To the Reader.*

---

manship is one of the chiefeſt. Which work I will juſtifie upon my reputation to have bin tried by me, and hath wrought good effect; having theſe fifty years been a Practitioner in the ſame, and did never think to have diſcloſed theſe Secrets that now I have, which Time and my Industry hath brought to light; and becauſe old age groweth upon me, and that the Grave will be never a whit the better, I thought therefore to divulge them to the World, rather than to have hid them in Oblivion; deſiring the Reader to give God the Glory, and me but only thank and good wiſhes. So I reſt,

*Thine,*

*G. M.*

---

The



---

The **AUTHORS** Names, from  
whom any thing in this *Work* is Col-  
lected, being the best Farriers.

These are Publick.

<i>Xenophon</i>	<i>Libal</i>
<i>Rusticus</i>	<i>Stevens</i>
<i>Vegetius</i>	<i>Wickerus</i>
<i>Pelagonius</i>	<i>La Brove</i>
<i>Camerarius</i>	<i>Martin senior</i>
<i>Apollonius</i>	<i>Albiterio</i>
<i>Gresson</i>	<i>Vinet</i>
<i>Grilli</i>	<i>Clifford</i>
<i>Horatio</i>	<i>Mascal</i>
<i>Gloria de Caballi</i>	<i>Markham</i>

---

These are Private.

<i>Martin junior</i>	<i>Day</i>
<i>Webb</i>	<i>Barns</i>
<i>Dallidoun sen.</i>	<i>Mayfield</i>
<i>Dallidoun jun.</i>	<i>Lupman</i>
<i>Ausbourn</i>	<i>Goodsoon</i>
<i>Stanley</i>	<i>Parfray</i>
<i>Smith</i>	<i>White</i>
<i>Dowfing</i>	



Thomas Langford  
Feb<sup>y</sup> 4. 1767

John Thorpe  
Serrington Marsh  
1813

1825  
1767  
58

1845



Markham's Master-Piece.

R L

THE  
FIRST BOOK  
CONTAINING

All Cures, Physical, or such Infirmities, as being inward, crave the Administration of Physick, and are called in Horse-Leach-craft, *Horse-sicknesses*.

CHAP. I.

*Of the Natural Composition of Horses bodies.*

**T**ouching the true composition of a Horses body, you shall understand, that it is (as the Body of Man) compounded of thirteen several things, that is to say, seven natural, and six not natural: The seven natural are *Elements, Temperaments, Humours, members, Powers, or Vertues, Actions or Operations, and Spirits*; all which be called natural, because the natural Perfection and excellency of every sensible body doth wholly depend upon them: And hath his moving no longer than they have power of working. The six, which are not Natural, be the *Air, Meat and Drink, Motion and Rest, Sleep and Watch, Emptiness, and Fulness*, and the *Affects, or Motions* of the mind; and these are called not natural, because as (being rightly and in due order applied) they preserve, sustain, and fortify the body



so being misgoverned, or used any excess, or disorder, they are the only corrupt destroyers of the whole body: And of these thirteen principles which compound the Fabrick, or whole frame of the body, I intend to speak severally.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the four Elements, their Vertues and Operations.*

**F**irst, for the Exposition of the word *Element*, you shall understand, that it is the primary or first beginning of all things, being of it self pure, uncorrupt and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at last being resolved into the same again. It is also in its own nature so bright, clear, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not able to be discerned by any sensible eye whatsoever. Lastly, It is the last part of *Atom* or that thing which is made or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usual first movers, or beginners of all moving things, there are only four in number, that is to say, *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*; meaning not that *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*; which is here visible with us beneath, and which through the grossness thereof, is both palpable and to be discerned; but those which are amounted aloft, and through their purity invisible and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded Bodies, and not simple.) And of these perfect and distinct Elements you shall know that the *Fire* is the highest as being fixed or joyned next unto the *Moon*, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or being most predominant, or ruling in heat.

The *Air* is placed next unto *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot; yet his predominant, or chief quality is moist.

The *Water* is joyned unto the *Air*; the disposition thereof being heavy and Moist; but his predominant or chief quality only cold.

Lastly, The *Earth* adjoyned to the *Water*, is the lowest; and it is most heavy and cold; but the predominant or chief quality thereof is only driness.

Now for the Vertues, Properties, and Operations of these four Elements, you shall understand, that first the *Fire*, by means of his heat moveth matter to generation, and stirreth up warmth in all living things; it is that which the Philosophers call *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt bodies to separate things of divers kinds one from another



ther, and also to joyn things of like kinds together, which they likewise call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the Fire, the bones of Horses are separated from the flesh, the flesh from the sinews, the sinews from the veins, the veins from the Arteries, the heart from the Liver, the liver from the Spleen, and so forth in such sort as we see the divers parts of the fuel we burn, by the vertue of the fire and heat to be separated, and divided one from another, as the vapour from the smoke, the smoke from the flame, and the flame from the Ashes, as in these things, so in many other things, as in the trial of Metals and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heat separateth the body from body, that is, metal from metal, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the self same kind. Besides the vertue of the fire, is to ripen, order, and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the pores, that the Air being somewhat more solid and gross, may enter into the Body: And lastly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldness of the Water and the Earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the Body.

Touching the vertue and operation of the Air, you shall understand, that by the moistness thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive shape, either natural, or accidental, and by the help and Assistance of the fire, bringeth the Powers and influences of the Heavens and Stars into Inferiour Bodies, making the mixt bodies not only subtle and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too gross, nor too heavy. Secondly, the Air through his Moistness cooleth the burning heat of the Heart, Liver, and Intrails, as we daily see by the Office of the Lights and Lungs, which like a pair of bellows draweth uncessantly fresh Air unto the Heart and inward member. And albeit, the Air doth not seem to the sense of the outward eyes, to be any thing near so moist as the Water, yet according to the opinions, both of our Books and best Physicians, it is by much the moister, which is well proved, (say they) by the abundant flux it containeth, which flux spreadeth it self so far abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof with the special Properties and Characters of moistness, and by that Reason, is much harder to be kept within his own Bounds than the Water is. Lastly, as the Water was altered by God from his first natural place, for the better profit both of Man and Beast: Even so the Air, according to School-mens opinions, was not left al-



together in his first natural disposition, lest being over-moist it should so confound and suffocate all sense, that neither man nor Beast should be able to breath or Live.

Now for the vertue and operation of the Water, it is to be noted, that through the Coldness thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies, both parts and members together, which be of divers kinds; as bones with flesh and sinews, flesh with sinews and bones, and sinews with bones and flesh. Even as for a familiar example, we see in the time of any great Frost, the strength of the Cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one mass or substance, both Water, Dirt, Stones, Straws, Sticks and Leaves: The Water also with its Coldness, doth temper and cool the inflammation and heat of the Fire, gathering together those things, which otherwise the violent Heat would disperse and scatter abroad.

Lastly, for the vertue and operation of the Earth, it is through his driness in mixt bodies, so to harden and fix them together, that they may retain their shapes, which otherwise by the power of the Air and Water, would be so Soluble and Loose, that they could not hold together; as we may see in Past, Wax and such like, which whilst it is moist, will receive no print, but being once hardned, it retaineth any Form that is prest into it. And here is to be noted, that according to the opinion of *Hypocrates*, when any sensible body dyeth, not only every quality, but every substance, and part makes his return to the Element from whence it came; as heat to the Fire, moistness to the Air, coldness to the Water, and driness to the Earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these four common Elements, or common beginners of things; the Fire being hot separateth; the Air being moist, shapeth; the Water being cold, bindeth; and the Earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The use that you are to make of this knowledge, over and besides the composition of a natural body, is, that when you find any sickness, or infirmity, which proceedeth from the fire, as Inflammations of the body, or such like, that then you apply simples of the nature of the Air or Water, which may moisten and cool the violence of the heat. If the infirmity proceed from the Air, as Flux of Blood, or too much moisture, then you shall apply simples of the nature of the Fire or Earth, whose heat and driness may disperse and harden such moisture. If the Disease spring from the Water, as Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and such like;



like; then you shall seek simples of the nature of the Fire and Air; that through the heat of the one, and the moist lightness of the other, all such cold, gross and solid humours may be dispersed. But if the disease proceed from the Earth, as Manginess and Leprosie, or their like, that are dry and hardened infections, then you shall seek simples of the nature of the Fire only, whose heat may dissolve and loosen those ill knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you see, too much heat is abated by coldness and moistness, too much moistness by heat and driness; too much coldness by heat and moistness; too much driness by heat only.

Thus much of these four common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, sensible and unsensible; yet of sensible things, which live and have blood, there be other more near Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or generation; as the ingendring seed, and menstrual blood, from whence every Beast taketh his first shape and beginning; and yet those proper beginnings have their whole dependency and hanging upon the qualities of the first common beginnings already spoken of, which is moist, dry, hot and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

### CHAP. III.

*Of Temperaments, and their several kinds, and how far every way they extend in Horses.*

**T**Hese *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the second thing in a Horses composition, do spring from the Commixture of the four Elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are unequal, and the ninth is equal. Of the eight unequal, four are simple, and those be hot, cold, moist, and dry, which Physicians call the first Qualities; and of these, the first two be active, and the other two Passive: the other four are compound, and they be hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry. Now the equal temperament is divided into two, an Universal and a Special. The equal *Temperament Universal*, is, when the four Elements are in an equal proportion, generally divided through the whole Body, Nature injoyning no more from the one, than from the other. The equal *Temperament especial*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth most properly require, be it either plant or beast: in



Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements, which are proper to its kind, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, &c. Whereas contrariwise, to have a hot plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrel hot, were a false and unequal commixture of Elements. So likewise Beasts, that Horſe, that Dog, that Swine is ſaid to have his due *Temperament*, when he is of ſuch temperature as is moſt proper unto his kind, which is beſt diſcerned by his Actions, or Motions. As thus, the Horſe is known to be hot and moiſt by his Lightneſs, Swiftneſs, Valiantneſs, and long Life, and alſo to be of a temperate nature, in that he is eaſily Tamed, Docible, Obedient and Familiar with the Man. And ſo long as either Horſe, or any other thing, continueth in the Mediocrity and Excellency of his proper Temperament, ſo long we may truly judge him of a good temper and diſpoſition; but if there be any overflow of qualities, or exceſs in his humours, as either heat, coldneſs, moiſtneſs or drineſs, then we ſay, he is either a hot Cholerick Horſe, a cold Dull Horſe, a Drie Miſchievous Horſe: Or a moſt Cowardly Horſe according to the overflow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Again, every Horſe is ſaid to have his *Temperaments*, according to his Age and the Country wherein he is bred, and ſometimes according to the time of the year wherein he Liveth. And thus a Horſe in his foal Age, which is till he be ſix years old, is naturally hot and moiſt; in his middle, which is till twelve, more hot and dry than moiſt; and in his old age, which is paſt eighteen, more cold and dry, than either hot or moiſt. So likewiſe, the Horſes which are bred in Southern parts, as either in *Spain*, *Barbary*, or *Greece* are naturally more hot than thoſe which are bred either in the ſeventeen Lands, *Germany* or *England*; neither is there any Horſe, which is in good ſtate of body, that is ſo hot in the ſpring time of the year, as in the Summer, nor ſo cold in the Summer, as the Winter. All which obſervations are with moſt curious diligence to be obſerved of every Horſe-leach, when he goeth about to cure any ſickneſs: for unleſs he conſiders their natures and temperatures, and every other circumſtance already declared, he ſhall right ſoon be deceived in the adminiſtration of his Phyſick. Therefore, I earneſtly deſire every Farrier, before he give any drench or potion, firſt to inquire the kind, race, and diſpoſition of the Horſe, next his Age, then the Country, and laſtly, the time of the year: And ſo according to the truth thereof, to mix his Receipts.



It is most expedient also, for every Horse-leach to consider the second qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings from the first qualities already declared, of which second qualities some are called palpable, or to be touched, as these, softness, hardness, smoothness, roughness, thickness, brickleness, heaviness, thinness, thicknes, smallness, grossness, and such other like. Some again are not palpable, as those which appertain to hearing, seeing, and smelling, as noises, colours, odours, and such like; and by observing well the second qualities, he shall with much ease know whether the Horse be disposed to any sickness or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

## C H A P. IV.

*Of Humours, and to what end they serve.*

NOW concerning *Humours*, which are the third composers of a Horse's body, and so likewise of every other Beast also; you shall understand that they are four in number, that is to say, *Blood*, *Flegm*, *Choler*, and *Melancholly*. As touching *Blood*, it is in its nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moist, and sweet in taste, participating of the Elements Water and Air, *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the Elements Fire and Earth. *Melancholly* is cold and dry, and in taste sowre and heavy, as participating of the Elements Fire and Air; *Flegm* is cold and moist, and either sweet, or wallowish without any taste at all, as participating of the Elements Water and Earth: so that these four Humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the Elements. For to speak briefly, and according to the manner of Physicians, *Blood* is of the nature of the Air, in being most predominant therein; *Flegm* of the nature of the water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholly* of the nature of the Earth. And albeit these Humours are symbolized or mixt through every part of the body, yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part than in another, and have their places of residence, absolute, and particular to themselves; as *blood* about the Heart; *Flegm* in the Brain; *Choler* in the Liver; and *Melancholly* in the Spleen. Now as these Humours do more or less abound, or have greater or lesser sovereignty in the Horse, so is the Beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified, or disposed, as thus. That Horse in whom Blood hath the greatest predominance, that



and may be called a Horse sanguine, is bright, bay of Colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That Horse in whom Flegm hath the greatest dominion, and may be called a Flegmatick Horse, is for the most part of a milky white colour, and so consequently slow, dull, and heavy. If Choler bear the greatest rule in his Constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrel, and by that means of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, If the earth have gotten power above the other Elements, so that he may be called a Melancholly Horse, then his colour is commonly a mouse dun, and his disposition cowardly, faint and slothful. But because these particulars are properly appertaining to the Complexions of Horses, of which we shall have cause to speak more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater relations; only I give you thus much in conclusion: to understand that every one of these aforesaid Humours hath his proper use and end, whereunto it serveth, as thus. *Blood* serveth more properly to nourish the Body. *Flegm* giveth motion to the joynts. *Melancholly* begetteth an Appetite or longing to his meat. Now during the time that these Humours do possess their natural qualities, so long they are wholsom, and be called by their simple names, without Gloss or Addition: but if by any mischance they be disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholsom, and are no longer called by their simple names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly*, *Blood*, *Salt*, *Flegm*, *Choler*, *adust* or *burnt Choler* and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at last declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of Humours.

## C H A P. V.

*Of Members, and their several kinds.*

**T**ouching *Members*, which are the fourth main instrument in this great fabrick of a Horses body, they are by Schooll-men divided into two parts. The first is called *Similaria*, which is like, semblable, or one and the same thing. The other is called *Instrumental*, and are contrary to the first.

*Members* alike, are those, which being separated, or distributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature; as flesh, bone, sinew,



finew, and such like : for flesh being cut or incised into many parts, yet is every part still flesh, so reputed, and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether ; and as of this, so likewise may it be said of bones, sinews, and the like.

Now for Members instrumental, they be those which being made of parts semblable, and divided into parts, yet the parts are not alike, neither have one name with the whole ; as the head, legg, foot, and such like : for every part of the head is not called the head, nor every part of the legg the legg, but have other appellations, as the Brow, the Temples, the Knees, the Feet-lock, &c. Now these Instrumental members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection than the semblable Members : Wherefore Schoolmen have made amongst these Instrumental Members, four Sovereigns or Princes above the rest ; that is the *Brain*, the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones* ; of which the first three are the preservers of the singular Body, and the fourth of the whole kind ; the first three giving motion and agitation to the Body, the fourth generation and increase to succeeding Ages.

Now from these principal Members, like branches from a well-grown Tree, do spring other Members, which do them Service : as from the Brain springeth sinews, whose office is feeling, from the Heart Arteries, whose office is sprightliness and lively-hood ; from the Liver Veins, whose office is warmth and strength ; and from the Stones the seed-vessels, whose office is procreation and increase. Now forasmuch as from these do likewise proceed a World of other members, as *Tendons*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleens*, *Guts*, and such like ; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chirurgion, than to the Physician, (though most necessary to both) I am here to advertise every studious Reader that when he shall have occasion to meddle with any member about a Horse, that he turn to the second Book of this Volume, which treateth only of Chirurgery, and there he shall not only find every member and lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomy so lively demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his understanding. And thus much in this place of members.



## C H A P. VI.

*Of Powers, and how a Horses Body is governed by them.*

**P**Owers which by some are called *Virtues*, or principal faculties, and do govern and controul both the body of man and beast, and have the fifth place in this Work, are in number three, that is, the power *Animal*, the power *Vital*, and the power *Natural*.<sup>15</sup> The power *Animal*, is a vertue incident to the Brain, which through the Sinews coming like little conduit-pipes from the Brain, distributeth feeling and moving to all the parts of the Body. The power *Vital* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth give Life and Spirit to all the Body by means of the Arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the chief Fountain of natural heat, carry in their little chanelsover the whole body, that air and Spiritual blood which makes it full of lightness and alacrity. The power *Natural* is a vertue belonging to the Liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof, by means of the Veins, which do likewise proceed from the Liver, like greater conduits, carrying the Blood from the Liver, which is the Fountain of Blood, into every part of the Body. Besides, the power *Natural* containeth four other vertues, that is the vertue *Attractive*, which draweth Food, meat, to sustain the Body; the vertue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the Food received; the Vertue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same; and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these Powers or vertues being of no less validity than you perceive by this discourse, it is the part and duty of every good Horse-leach, to have a more careful and vigilant respect unto them; for if any one of them fail, the Horse cannot live. Therefore whensoever you see that either your Horse refuseth his Food, or that he cannot retain and keep his Food, but casteth it up again; or that he doth not digest his food, but keeps it corruptly in his stomach; or that he cannot avoid his excrements in a natural manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certain signs of mortal sickness: and Thus much of Powers and Vertues.



## C H A P. VII.

*Of Actions or Operations, And whereto they belong.*

AS touching *Actions* or *Operations*, which are the sixth column or pillar which doth uphold this natural body of which we treat, they are not only belonging, but even derived from the three powers immediately spoken of in the former Chapter, as thus: The action and operation of the power *Animal*, is to discern, to move, and to feel. Horses discern by means of the vertue *Imaginative*, *Discoursative*, and *Memorative*, whereof the first is placed in the forehead, the second in the middle of the Brain, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the power *Animal*. Horses move by means of the vertue *Motive*, whose Action and Operation is to restrain, or let slack the sinews, whereby every member hath his moving. And Horses feeling is by means of the vertue *Sensitive*, whose Action or Operation is busied in the five Senses, as to *See*, *Hear*, *Smell*, *Tast*, and *Touch*, and all these Actions spring from the *Power Animal*.

The Action or Operation of the *Power Vital*, is to restrain and loosen the Heart, and the Arteries which proceed from the Heart, which Action, whether it be hurt or disturbed in a Horses Body, is easily known of every good *Farrier*, or *Horse-Marshal*, by the unequal beating of his pulse; that is to say, of the Arteries, which come down from the Heart to the insides of both his fore Leggs, a little below the Knuckles of his Shoulders, and likewise cross both the Temples of his Head, a little higher than his eyes. And if any man be so simple to imagine that the thickness of the Horses skin shall be an impediment to the feeling of his motion; let him remember, that as a Horses skin is thicker than a mans, so also are his Arteries greater, and beat with more violence, and so consequently be felt without any great difficulty.

The Actions or Operations of the *Power Natural*, are to *Ingender*, to *Encrease*, to *Nourish*, to *desire with Appetite*, to *Attract*, to *Change*, to *Digest*, to *Retain*, and to *Expel*, and many other of like kind. These Actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier*, to the intent that he may learn by them, not only the whole estate of a Horses Body, but also what particular member thereof is evil affected, as thus: if either in your Horse you find much forget-



fulness, Unnimbleness of his Limbs, or Dulness upon Correction, it is a sign of sickness in the Brain, and that the *Power Animal* is evil affected. If you find that his *Pulses* do be extraordinary slow, or much too fast, it is a sign that his heart is grieved, and his *Power Vital* evil affected: but if you find that he doth consume, pine away, and loseth his stomach, it is a sign that his *Life* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power Natural* evil affected.

Now you shall again understand, that of Actions some be *Voluntary*, some not *Voluntary*.

The *Voluntary* Actions be those, which a *Horse* may either further or hinder, stay or let, when themselves please, as the moving of the Leggs; for they may go, stand, or ly down at their own pleasure.

The Actions not *Voluntary*, are those, which depend not upon the will of any Beast, but be done of their own accord, and naturally, as the moving of the heart, and of the Arteries and the passage of the Blood; the first, whereof beateth *Sleeping* and *Waking*; and the other hath his course every minute. And thus much of the Actions and Operations.

#### CHAP. VIII.

*Of Spirits, and in what part of the Horses Body they remain.*

**S**pirits, which is the seventh natural Builder of this natural Work, are to be understood, to be that fine, pure, clear, and Aery substance which is engendred of the finest part of the Blood, whereby the vertue of every principal Member may visit all the other parts of the Body, making them to do their duties, according to the Rules of Nature. Now of Spirits according to the Opinions of some Physicians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit Animal* and the *Spirit Vital*: The *Spirit Animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horse, and hath his resting place in the Brain from whence through the sinews, it is dispersed into all other parts of the Body: and it is engendred of the *Vital Spirit*, being more vehemently wrought and Laboured, and partly of continual breathing: Even so it is partly preserved by the *Caul* of the Brain, which doth hourly water and nourish it.

The *Spirit Vital* is contained in the Heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the Body, being the chief cause of all natural heat; and it is preserved and nourished both by breathing and blood.

To



To these two Spirits, there be most *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which add a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit Natural*, saying, it hath his residence in the *Liver*, and the veins, but the two former are of such *Power*, and have such superiority; that the Body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: Wherefore, it is the Office of the *Farrier* continually, in all his Medicines, to have some comfortable Simple, which may maintain and keep the Spirits in their full strength, lively-hood and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and those seven natural things which compact a natural Body.

## C H A P. IX.

*Of the six things not Natural, how they Profit, and how they hurt.*

**H**AVING spoken of the Natural things, whereof a *Horses* Body is Compounded, it is needful now that we speak something of the other six which be not natural, so far forth as they concern the Office of the *Farrier*, and no further; for with other matters we have not to do. The first thing then which is not natural, yet preserveth a *Horses* Body in good state, is the Air, which being pure, sharp, clear, and piercing, giveth great life and nourishment to a Horse: but being contrary, that is, gross, thick, and full of putrefaction, it cannot choose but alter the good habit of his body, and breed in him many Infirmities: Therefore every *Farrier* shall have great respect to the Air wherein a Horse either liveth, or was bred in; as if a Horse that was bred in a hot Air come to live in a cold, and through the exchange grow sick, the *Farrier*, shall by warm diet, close house, and moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: Also when a Horse exceedeth in any of the four qualities, that is, in heat, moistness, coldness, or driness it is best for him to live in that Air which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Lastly, in many Diseases, the change of the Air is most wholesom, as shall be shewed at large in the particular Diseases.

For the Meat and Drink of a *Horse*, which is the second thing not Natural in a *Horses* Composition, it is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, clean, and good, as bread well made and baked, dry *Oats*, dry beans, dry Pease, sweet Hay, sweet Straw, or short Grass, so long it nourisheth and preserveth the *Horses* body: But if it be fusty, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barly, then



then must he needs be unsound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrier* shall be careful to keep him from all such Food, as breeds naughty evil blood. As for his water, the more pure it is, the better; and the more muddy; thick, and pleasant, so much the more unhealthful.

Now for this Moving and Rest, that is, either his Travel or Standing still, which is the third thing not natural in a Horse's composition, doubtless they be great *Preservers* of a Horse's Health: for as moderate Exercises dissolve gross Humours, ingender Appetite, and add strength unto the Limbs, so likewise indifferent Rest causeth Digestion, comforteth the Sinews, and maketh the Heart cheerful against insuing Labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate Travel or Exercises, when a Horse is ridden beyond his strength, breedeth many dangerous and mortal sicknesses; as the Foundring in the Body, the Consumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten Grease, and such like, besides the pissing of Blood, *Manginess*, *Farcy*, and such like: All which inward Diseases crave strong Purges, and the outward Sharp and Corroding Medicines. Immoderate Rest, which is, when a Horse doth stand long still without any Exercise, Feeding foul and grossly, is as great an enemy to a Horse's health as the other: For it congregateth and bindeth together all sorts of ill humours, breeds corruption in the Blood, Rottenness in the Flesh, and generally as many Diseases as any ill Diet whatsoever.

The Sleep or Watch of a Horse, (which is the fourth thing in our Composition) is so necessary a comfort to a Horse, that he cannot live without it: it is the greatest mover of Digestion, and so consequently gives comfort to the whole Body. For whilst the Horse sleeps, the powers Animal do take their Rest, which otherwise would be over-wearied; and neither able to discharge their Duties nor to continue their Actions and Operations, which is the giving of feeling and moving only: and whilst a Horse doth sleep, the powers Natural have more Liberty to do their work, in Concocting the Meat and comforting the Body, insomuch as I account sleep to be the only quieting of the Senses, ordained by Nature to ingender strength. Sleep is begotten by sweet, fatty and gross Vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raised from the Heart to the Brain, with the Coldness of which Brain, those Vapours being congealed and thickned together, do stop the pipes of the Sensitive Spirits, so as they cannot resort to the Instruments of the Senses, to give the Body feeling and moving, whereby the Body at that time is deprived of those Motions.

And



And according as those Vapours do more or less fill the Pipes, so is the Horses sleep more or less sound and undisturbed; but when this sleep shall at any time grow into excess, and you shall perceive a Horse to sleep beyond both Nature and Custom, then you shall know that such sleep cometh from an evil habit of the Body, and is a sign either of a *Lethargy*, and a numness of the Spirits, or else that he hath some inward grief and pain in his Limbs, when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him cover a continual rest and sleeping. Now for the Watch of a Horse, because it is the meer contrary to sleep, there needs little to be said more than this; that as the excess of the one sheweth the want of the other, so the natural wanting of either shews the evil state of a Horses Body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect ensuing sickness.

Now for Emptiness and Fulness, (which is the fifth not natural Compositor) forasmuch as it is only in adding to, and taking away; some *Farriers* have held opinion, that all Physick belonging to a Horses body, consisteth in them two only; and truly I am of this mind, that whosoever can take away Corruption, and add Perfection, shall without doubt ever keep an able and substantial Body. But to our purpose, of this Fulness there are two sorts, the one fulness by excess of Humours, the other fulness by excess of Meat; either of which perturbing the Spirits, are the grounds of sickness. Again, excess of Humours are of two kinds, the one an equal encrease of all manner of Humours gathered together, and the other particular excess, either of too much *Melancholly Flegm*, or other Watrish Humours whatsoever, the first being termed an abundance of humours, the latter an excess of evil Juice or Nutriment. Lastly, there is fulness in quantity and fulness in quality. Fulness in quantity is, when a Horse is full of Blood, or any other simple Humour. Fulness in quality, is, when any of these humours are too hot, or too cold, too gross, or too thin. Now for emptiness, as all Diseases of Fulness must be cured by it only, so all Diseases of Emptiness must be healed by Fulness, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friction*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a World of such like, as shall be very largely set forth hereafter, in its proper place.

Lastly, Touching the affections of a Horses mind, you shall understand, that so far forth as the Sensitive Soul doth stretch, so far they have sense and feeling of Affections as namely, to Love, to Hate, to be Angry, to Rejoyce. to be sorry, and to Fear: For all which there  
needs



needs no great *Apology*, sith, we have it in dayly Experience: as who seeth not the love of some *Horses* to their keepers, their hate to Strangers, their Angers in their Sights, their joyes in their Prides and Wooings, their sorrows in their sickneses, and their fears unto their Riders; now these Affections, sith many times they are the grounds of strange Motions in the body; therefore they ought carefully to be looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the *Horse* be not overpressed with any of them; especially fear and hatred, the first whereof compelleth the blood and Spirits to fly to the inward parts, and to leave the outward without sense or feeling; and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce and raging; both together breed distemperature in a *Horse*, and those distemperatures ingender mortal sickneses. And thus much for these six things, being held not Natural in a *Horses* Composition.

## C H A P. X.

Of *Horses* Complexion.

**H**AVING spoken of those Thirteen Natural and not Natural things, whereof a *Horses* body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speak of the Complexions of *Horses*, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a *Farrier* can behold, both for the judging of a *Horses* Infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Disease: Therefore you shall first understand, that by the colour of the *Horse* you shall ever judge his Complexion: For, look which of the Elements is most predominant in him, from that Element we draw his Complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a *Cholerick* *Horse*, and his Colour is either a bright *Sorrel*, a coal *Black* without any white or an *Iron Gray* unchangeable, that is, such a *Gray* as neither will ever turn a *Dable-Gray*, a *White*, or a *Flea-bitten*, and these *Horses* are of Nature *Light*, *Hot*, *Fiery*, and seldom of any great strength; these *Horses* are much subject to pestilent *Feavers*, *Yellows*, and Inflammations of the *Liver*. Wherefore every *Farrier* shall be careful in his composing of any Medicine for such a *Horse*, to purge *Choler*, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary Strength in the *Potion* or *Drench*; because the *Horse* being in his best strength, not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing to him, that little strength



strength being abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole Body.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Air, than of the other Elements, then he is of Sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright Bay, or a dark Bay, which hath neither skouling Countenance, mayly Mouth, nor white Flank, or a white Flea-bitten, white lyard like Silver, or black with a white *Star*, white Rach, or white Foot. These *Horses* are of Nature *Pleasant*, *Nimble*, *Free*, and of good *Strength*. The Diseases to them most incident, is a Consumption of the Liver, Leprosie, Glanders, or any Disease that is infectious. They are of a good strong Constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the blood.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Water, than of the other Elements, then is he of a Flegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either milk white, or yellow dun, kite-glewd, or pideball in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours, that is as much white as of the other Colour. Otherwise if the Bay, the Black, or the Dun exceed the white, he is said to be of that Complexion of which the Colour is greatest. These *Horses* are of Nature slow, and apt to lose flesh: The Diseases which are most incident unto them, are *Colds*, *Head-ach*, *Rheumes*, *Staggers*, and such like. They are able to indure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of *Flegm* which is in them, sufficeth both Nature, and the Potion to work upon: All cold simples are to them exceeding hurtful, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree: The first; because it bindeth too soon; the latter because it disperfes too suddenly, therefore simples of a moderate mean are the best.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Earth than of the other Elements, then he is of a Melancholly complexion, and his colour a *Mouse-dun*, *Ruffet*, *Chesnut*, *Ashy*, *Gray*, *dark Bay*, with mayly Mouth, *Red* or *white* Flanks, or a *Reddish Bay*, having long white *Hair* like *Goats Hair*, growing on his Leggs. These *Horses* are of nature heavy and faint-hearted; The Diseases to them most incident, are Inflammations in the *Spleen*, *Frenzie*, *Dropsie*, and such like. They are commonly of better strength, than they will suffer to appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable Medicine: all cicatrizing and dry simples are hurtful unto them; the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Having thus shewed you these four Complexions, *Cholerick*,  
D *Sanguine*,



*Sanguine, Flegmatick and Melancholly*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall understand now, that amongst *Farriers* there is another complexion, or fifth constitution, which is called the Composition or mixture of Complexions: That is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser than another, and this Complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this complexion, is ever of one of these colours; that is to say, either a fair brown bay, Dabled or not dabled, a dabled gray, a Black full of Silver Hair, or a fair Roan, Red or Black. And these Horses are of *Nature* most excellent, most Temperate, Strongest, gentlest, and most *Healthful*: though they may have any *Disease*, yet are they *Naturally* inclined to no *Disease*: But what infirmity soever falleth unto them, is *meerly Accidental*, and not through any overflow of natural distemperature. All *Medicines* must be compounded for them according to the *Nature* of the *Sickness*, and the time of their *Languishment*. For if the *Sickness* be *Young* and new *Bred*, Then they are able to receive any well-composed *Receipt*; But if it be *Old*, and the inward *Powers* and *Faculties* feebled, then you must be careful to help *Nature*, by adding to every *Medicine* of what *Nature* soever, some *Simple* of *Comfort*, that, As ill *Humours* be cleansed, so *Strength* may still be repaired and maintained. And thus much for *Complexions*.

## C H A P. XI.

*Of Inward Sicknesses, the Causes and several kinds thereof.*

**S**ith I have already passed over all those things which have a natural and perfect working in a Horses Body, and do maintain, uphold and preserve the same in good state and Health, except accidentally they be encountred and crossed by some Excess, Either in Diet or in Exercise, it shall now be Meet, that we begin to speak of the Things which be contrary and against Nature, which are all those Things, whereby at any time the healthful Estate of the Horses Body is any way impeached: and they be three in number; that is, the Causes, the Sickness, and the Accidents which follow every Sickness.

Now the Causes of Sickness are all unnatural Affects, and evil dispositions, which going before, do as it were by Violence, bring Sickness after them: and of these Causes there be 2 Sorts, some Internal, some



some *External*: The *Internal* be those which breed within the Body of the *Horse*, as evil Humours, evil Obstructions, and evil Juyce, *External* are they which communicate with the outward parts of the Body, as Heat, Cold, Worms, and such like, of which I shall speak more in the second Book: And for so much as I intend at the beginning of every particular Disease, to shew the Cause of that Disease, I will at this time speak no more of that subject.

Now for *sickness* it self, which is any thing that is contrary to Nature, it is divided into three general kinds: the first an *Evil Temperature*, the second, an *Evil State and Composition*; and the Third, A *Loosing or Dividing of an Unity*. Now of these two latter, I intend not to speak in this place, because they appertain to Chirurgery, which I reserve for the second Book: But for the first kind, which is an evil Temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either simple, or compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moist, or too dry: Compound, when more qualities than one do grow into excess, as for a *Horse* to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moist. Again, sicknesses are said some to be long, as *Consumptions*, *Glanders*, and such like, which linger and wear a *Horse* away by small degrees; some short, as the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and such like, which as soon as they be perceived, so soon they be mortal.

Now of inward sicknesses, some do occupy all the whole Body, some but particular parts: those which occupy the whole Body, are *Feavers*, the *Pestilence*, *Convulsions*, and such like: those which occupy Parts or Members, are Colds which annoy the Head: Surfeits which perplex the Stomack: And so likewise all outward infirmities, proper to every particular Member; as *Spleens* upon the Leggs, *Spavens* on the Hoofs, *Pearls* in the Eyes, and such like; as shall be amply shewed hereafter, with their several Cures. And thus much for sickness, and the several kinds thereof.

## C H A P. XII.

*Of the signs of Sickness, and of what Nature it consisteth.*

THE Signs and Faces, by which sickness is discerned, are many, and almost numberless: yet in the best sort, that I may, I will shew you such, and so many, as shall amply serve for any man's understanding. Know then first that there be, according to the Rules



in Physick? four especial wayes to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First by accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity and place of the Member grieved, for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or less in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then questionless it is diseased. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when 'tis either too hot, too cold too moist, or too dry. Thirdly, when any Member of the Body is hindred from doing his Office, as when the eye cannot see, or the foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by Excrements, as by his Dung or Urine. But forasmuch, as in the speculation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, Distract or Deceived, and that my desire is to give an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of People, I will briefly, and plainly shew you the most undeceivable signs of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus: If a Horse be slower in labour, or Duller to the *Spurr* than he hath been accustomed; If he be shorter-breathed; If his Ears hang down more than they were wont; If his hair be more staring; If his Flank be more than usually hollow; If he burn betwixt his Ears, or about his Pasterns; If in Travel his stomach fail him, or his Mouth, that in labour was usually wont to be Foaming, become dry; all these are most apparent signs of inward Sickness.

When a Horse holdeth down his head, which was wont to be of cheerful Countenance, it is a sign either of a Fever, Head-ach, or else Foundering in the *Body*.

If a Horse be dimm of sight, which was clear sighted, it is a sign either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore-Eyes*.

When a Horse turneth his Head backward to the place grieved, if it be to the right side, it is a sign of *Obstructions* in the *Liver*; but if he turneth down to his Belly, then it is a sign either of *Cholick*, *Bots*, or *Worms*.

When a Horse hath water running from his mouth, it is a sign of the *Staggers*, or *Wet Cough*.

If a Horses breath stinks, or foul matter issues from his Nostrils, it is a sign of an *Ulcer* in the Nose or Head; but if the matter be white, then it is a sign of *Glanders*; if the matter be black, then it is a sign of the mourning of the *Chine*; but if the matter be yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the *Liver*; But if he cast little Lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or rottenness of the *Lungs*.

If a Horses Body and Breath be hot, It is a sign of a *Fever*, and heat



heat of the stomach; if therewithal he forsake his Meat, it is a sign of Inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moist *Yellows*.

If the Temple of a *Horses* head be very hollow, it is a sign either of the *Strangle* or Old Age.

Shortness of Breath, and a beating Flank, is a sign either of a *Feaver* or the *Strangle*, but if the passage of the Throat be stopped, it is a sign the film of the *Lungs* is broken, and the Spleen troubled, or else broken-winded.

If any thing lie on both sides the Fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a sign of the *Staggers*.

If there be any thing swelling about the Ears, it is a sign of the *Pole-evil*: swelling under the Ear, is a sign of the *Kives*; and swelling in the Mouth, a sign either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampasse*.

Swelling under the Throat is a sign of the *Glanders*; and swelling about the tongue roots, a sign of the *Strangle*: But if there be about the Tongue-roots, nothing but little small knots, like wax kernels, then it is but a sign of cold only.

Swelling on the left side is a sign of a sick *Spleen*. Swelling in the Belly and Leggs, a sign of the *Dropfie*, and swelling in the Flanck, of *Cholick* only.

To Cough, or to offer to Cough, is a sign either of the *Glanders*, or the Mourning of the Chine, of a Feather in the Wefand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the Film broken, of the dry malady, of a Consumption, or of Foundring in the Body.

*Staggering* is a sign either of a *Feaver*, of the *Staggers*, or of swaying in the Neck: But if he stagger or role behind only, then it is a sign either of Foundring in the Body, or of pain in the kidneys.

Trembling is a sign of a *Feaver*, or of a foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that a Horse which trembleth after the drinking of a cold water, hath during that time of trembling, a very certain fit of an Ague; and if any *Farrier* or other, will but observe it, he shall find that the Horse, after he hath done trembling, will burn and glow in as great Extremity, at least an hour and a half after; and some Horses after their burning will sweat also.

The hollowness of a Horses back is a sign of a dry Malady, or the *Dropfie*.

Hair staring is a sign either of a cold *Stomach*, or of foundring in the Body, but generally of a cold, or want of Cloaths.

If a Horse stale with much pain, it is a sign either of Foundring



in the Body, the wind *Cholick*, or the *Stone*; and if the Urine which comes from him be *Yellow*, it is a sign of the *Glanders*, but if it be blackish and thick, it is a sign of a pain in the Kidneys.

*Leanness* and *Gantiness*, is a sign of *Hide-bound*, or of a *Consumption*, of the dry *Malady*, of foundring in the Body, Inflammation of the *Liver*, the *Yellows*, *Cholick*, or *Worms*.

*Laxativeness*, or looseness of the Body, is a sign of a hot *Liver*.

Costiveness in the Body, is a sign of dry *Yellows*, or of Diseases in the *Gaul*.

If a *Horse's* Dung stink, it is a sign of a hot *Liver*; if it have no smell, then of a cold *Liver*; but if it be indigested, then either of a *Consumption*, or of a dry *Malady*.

If a *Horse* go stiff, it is a sign either of *Wrenching*, *Hipping*, *Stiffing*, or *Foundring* either in Body or Legs: If he go crouching behind, and stiff before, then the grief is in his *Fore-Legs*, but if he go only weak behind, then is the grief in his hinder Legs only.

If a *Horse* desire *Extraordinarily* to lye down on his right side, it is a sign of heat in the *Liver*. If on the left side, then of a *Diseased Spleen*. If he be oft up and down, finding no rest, then it is a sign of *Bots*, *Worms*, *Cholick*, or *Gripping* in the *Belly*, if when he is down, he spreads himself abroad, it shews the *Dropfie*; if he groan when he is down, it shews either a sick *Spleen*, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, *Bots*, or film broken; if he be not able to rise when he is down, then either mortal *Weakness*, or *Foundring* in the Body or Legs.

To be troubled with much *Wind*, is a sign either of grief in the *Spleen* or loss of much *Blood*.

If a *Horse* forsake his *Meat*, it is a sign either of a *Feaver*, *Head-ach*, *Strangle*, *Staggers*, *Consumption*, or dry *Malady*, *Anticor*, *Foundring* in the Body, a hot and consumed *Liver*, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, or the *Worms*; but if when he forsakes his *Provender*, he doth as it were *chattel*, or *chaw* a little *Hay*, and in his chawing doth make a certain sharp Noise in his *Mouth* as if his *Tongue* could not well part from the *Roof* without a kind of *chanking*, it is then a certain sign that the *Horse* is troubled with the falling of the *Pallet* of the *Mouth*, a Disease which only cometh by over-much *Travelling*, or too sore a *Burthen*.

If a *Horse* desire to eat much, and drink little, it is a sign of a cold *Liver*, but if he desire to drink much, and eat little, it is then a sign either of a *Feaver*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the *Stomack*, heat in the *Liver*, or the dry *Yellows*.

If



If a Horse both eat and drink with an *Extraordinary* greediness, it is a sign of rotten *Lungs*, or a diseased *Spleen*.

*Lazy*, heavy going, contrary to true *Nature*, is a sign either of a *Feaver*, *Sick Spleen*, *Yellows*, or else *Obstructions* of the *Liver*.

If a Horse strike with his Foot at his Belly, it is a sign of the *Cholic*, but if when he striketh, he *Fisk* with his Tail also, then it is either *Bots*, or rough *Worms*.

If a Horse be *Scabby* and *Ulcerous* all over his Body, and about his Neck, it is a sign of the *Mangy*: if it be an *Ulcer* full of knots creeping along a *Vein*, it is the *Farcy*, if spreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the *Ulcer* be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fistula*: But if it be a spongy Wart, full of Blood, it is then an *Anbury*.

If an Horse's Tongue hang out, and be swoln, it is a sign of the *Strangle*.

To conclude, if a Horse in health beat short, thick, and fast in the Flank, it is a sign of sickness in the *Lungs* and *Lights*, which we call *broken Winded*, with a world of other such like signs and tokens, as shall be more amply declared in every particular Chapter.

### CHAP. XIII.

#### *General Observations in the Physicking of Horses.*

**A**fter you can by these Signs and Characters, judge and approve either the health or sickness of a Horse, it is then necessary that you learn some *General Rules and Observations* which belong to the Physicking of a Horse; lest that either by your *Rashness*, *Unskilfulness*, or *Uncleanness*, in what you go about to do, you commit errors more gross than the *Medicine* you *Administer* hath *Power* to do good. Know then first, that whensoever you go about to give your Horse any *Inward Potion* or *Drench*, you must first take very careful heed, that your *Drink* be no more than *Milk* warm, for there is nothing more mortal to a Horse, than the scalding of his stomach. Next, you must be very careful that you give the *Drench* easily and gently, lest in making too much haste, the *Drink* pass into his *Wesand* or *Wind Pipe*, and so force him to an *extream Coughing*, and almost *suffocate* him; which if it do, you must then let his *Head* loose, and walk him up and down till the passion be past. Lastly, you



you shall observe in giving a Drench, to draw out the *Horses* tongue before you put in the *Horn*, and then presently let it loose again; for that will compelled him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be used, when you give your *Horse* Pills, as Butter and Garlick, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Savin: Also, every Drench will work the better, the longer you keep the sick *Horse* fasting both before and after his Medicine; wherein is likewise to be observed, that moderate Exercise, (as gently Walking, or Trotting up and down, according to the *Horses* strength, after his Drench received) is most wholesom, and maketh the Medicines work a great deal the better.

You shall likewise observe, if your *Horses* sickness be a Feaver, to mix always your simples either with warm Water, with Honey, or with Oyl; but if the Disease be Coughs, Rheums, or any thing that proceedeth of cold Causes, then you shall mix your simples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your *Horse* be brought low and weak with sickness, then you shall mix your Simples with Milk and Eggs.

You shall also observe, that in Blood-letting, you must take but half so much from a young Colt, as from an old *Horse*, and but the fourth part from a Yearling Foal: Also in letting blood you must carefully regard the Age and Strength of your *Horse*, Taking more or less according to his Ability of Body. Lastly, letting of Blood is either to divert sickness, and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool the Spirits, or to diminish Blood, or else to purge gross and bad Humours.

Observe before you let your *Horse* blood; first moderately to chase, or exercise him: then let him take rest a day before his letting blood, and three days after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seasons of the Year for that purpose, except urgent occasion be ministred.

Observe, whensoever you rake your *Horse* with your hand, (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot Dung) that then, first you anoint all your hands with Sallet Oyl, or Butter: the like you must ever do when you put up any Suppositary; but when you administer any Glisten, you shall then but anoint the Glisten-pipe only. Many other Observations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall find annexed to the several Cures of every Disease. Thus much then of these general Observations.



## C H A P. XIV.

*Of the Urine, and Excrements of a Horse.*

**A**fter you have made your memory acquainted with the sign and observations before specified, and so in the end find a Horse, which by the demonstration of some of these signs, appeareth most certainly to be sick and diseased: My advice is then, (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the sickness do not urge the contrary) that before you administer any thing unto him, in any case you see his Urine, from which Urine you shall reap these Knowledges.

First, If the Urine of a Horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour like unto Amber, and therewithal somewhat strong smelling, and not very clear, then you shall be assured that the Horse is in good state of Body, strong and healthful; but if it be extraordinary white, as it were creamy, then it is a sign the Horse hath weak Reins, and is subject to the *Stone*, and the *stopping of the Kidneys*.

If the Urine of a Horse be somewhat high coloured, bright and clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a Cup of strong *March Beer*; then it sheweth the Horse hath Inflammation in his Blood, and that he hath either a Feaver, or else some great *Surfeit*, but if it be red like Blood, then is his Inflammation more great, and his *Surfeit* is only an over-heat taken by over-riding; Infomuch, that if present Remedy be not applyed, either by scouring or other healthful Physick, the Horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortal sickness.

If the Urine of the Horse be of a pale greenish Colour, thick and slimy, it is a sign of a weak Back, and consumption of the Seed.

Lastly, If the Horses Urine be high coloured, yet therewithal cloudy, and full of blackness, then it is a sign that the Horses *sickness* is *Mortal*, and hardly to be preserved by any *Physick*; but if the *Blackness* and *Cloudiness* of the Urine do not remain, (as it were) bound up together in one body, but is broken and dispersed, shewing many Clouds in one Water, then it is a sign that the Violence of the sickness departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government that the Horse will recover his health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or dung of a Horse, which is no less worthy of Note than the Urine; you shall first understand, that if

E his



his Dung be ever of Alliance with his Food. I mean either in part or whole coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for Example ; if your Horſe go at Graſs, his Dung will ever be green, and the brighter ſuch *greenneſſ* is, and being in a mean between hardneſs and Softneſs the ſounder and in more perfect Eſtate the Horſe ſtandeth ; but if the *Greenneſſ* be bright, yet the Ordure ſo ſoluble and looſe, that it cometh from the Horſe like Water, then you ſhall underſtand, that either the Horſe hath eaten up ſome Feather, or elſe he hath an inward Coldneſs both in his Stomach and Bowels.

If a Horſes Dung be of a reaſonable thickneſs, neither too Coſtive, nor too Soluble, yet the *Greenneſſ* inclined to ſome *Blackneſſ*, it is a ſign that the *Horſe* hath a hot ſtomach, and is eaſily ſubject either to the *Yellows* or *Staggers*.

If the Horſes dung be in round hard Pellets, and of a *Blackiſh* green Colour, like the dung of *Sheep*, or a *Deer*, then it is without fail, that the *Horſe* hath had ſome great ſurfeit, either by over-riding, or by ill Food, or elſe is certainly poſſeſt either of the *Yellows*, or *Fever*, or Foundring in the Body.

Now if your Horſe be fed only upon Straw, then its Colour will be of a high-coloured Yellow, rather Coſtive than Soluble, and the Grain thereof long, and not well couched together : And all theſe be good ſigns of great healthfulneſs ; but if the Colour be inclined to Redneſs, or if it be exceeding dry without moiſture, or if it be Thin, like the dung of an Ox or Cow, they all be apparent ſigns of inward ſickneſs ; but if the Redneſs turn to Blackneſs, and that his Ordure doth loſe the ſtrength of its ſmelling, then it is a great ſign of Death and Mortality.

If your Horſe be fed with Hay and Provender, then your perfect and ſound Dung will be of a brown yellow Colour, the Grain ſomewhat long, yet moiſt and well fixt together ; but if the brownneſs turn to redneſs, it is a ſign of diſtemperature ; and if it turn to blackneſs, then of Death. Now for the ſmell of his Dung, you muſt underſtand, that the more Provender you give, the greater will be the ſmell, and the leſs Provender, the leſs ſmell.

Laſtly, If you feed your Horſe only upon Provender, as bread, Oats, and ſuch like, then the Dung which ſhews a perfect and a ſound Body, will be of a pale yellow Colour, like coarſe honey, firm, like a thick Salve, having within it when you tread upon it or break it, little white Grains, like thoſe which are in Sope ; or if the Dung  
be



be harder, like the ordinary Ordure of a Man, it is not amiss: For both be signs of health and strength; and if the dung look Red, then it is a sign that the Horse hath taken some inward heat, and his Stomach and Bowels do rest still inflamed.

If his Dung be brown and slimy, or if it shine and look greasie, it is a sign that he hath had some of his inward grease molten, and that it resteth and putrifieth in his Body; but if with his dung, you see him void great clods and lumps of Grease, then you may be assured that his Grease was molten, but Nature hath overcome infirmity, and the worst Danger is past already; but if the Dung be matter undigested, so that you may either perceive therein whole Corns, or whole bits of Bread, it is a sign the Horse hath either had a late Surfeit, or is entring into a Mortal Consumption. Lastly, if his dung be black, or have lost the Smell, it is an apparent sign of death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the several knowledges attained by them.

## C H A P. XV.

*Of Feavers in General, and the divers kinds thereof.*

**T**HAT *Horses* have Feavers, and those Feavers of divers and sundry Natures, there is nothing more certain, as by strict Observation may daily be perceived, especially when we use either much travel, or disorderly diet: for questionless from these two and none other Heads, do spring most Feavers whatsoever. But first, that I may give you an account what a *Horses* Feaver is, you shall know that it is an unnatural and immoderate heat, which proceeding first from the Heart, disperseth it self not only through all the Arteries, but even the Veins of a *Horses* Body, and thereby hindreth all the Actions and wholesome Motions of the same. Now of Feavers, some *Farriers* make three sorts. The first, those which breed in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of Nature: The second, those which breeds in the Humours, being likewise distempered by heat: And the third, those which breed in the firm parts of the Body, and are continually hot. Now I for your better Memory, will divide them only into two parts, that is to say, Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The Ordinary *Feavers*, are all those which are bred either in the spirits, or in the Humours; as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Feavers continual*, *Feavers hectick*, *Feavers in*



*Autumn, Summer or Winter.* And the Feavers extraordinary, are all those which are bred in the firm parts of the Body, and are ever hot as *Pestilent Feavers*, and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*; and the *Feaver accidental*, which proceedeth from the Anguish and pain of some mortal wound.

Now for the cause, from whence these *Feavers* do proceed, you shall understand, that all these which I call ordinary *Feavers*, do generally spring either from surfeit by extreme Labour, or some surfeit by naughty meat, as *Raw Pease*, *Raw Fitches*, *Raw Oats*, *Mouldy* and unwholsome *Bread*, and such like: Sometimes they do proceed from the extreme Violence and heat of the Sun Beams, when travelling with disorderly haste, in the extreamest heat of the Day, those two heats mixed together, *Labour* and the *Sun*, there cannot chuse but be bred in the Horse some *Mortal Inflammation*; and for my own part, I have seen Horses fall down dead in the High-way: For whose deaths, I could find no reason more than their Labours, and the heat of the *Sun*. *Feavers* sometimes spring from a contrary Cause, as from extreme cold, in this manner: When a Horse in the Winter time hath been Travelled fore all the Day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his blood and inward powers are settled and cooled, you then presently, or the same night give him cold Water as much as he will drink, you shall see him out of hand fall unto an extreme Quaking, and from that Quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Feaver.

Now for extraordinary Feavers, they ever proceed either from Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air: And albeit these Feavers are not usually known unto our *Farriers*, yet they are as common as the former; only the violence of them is so great, and the Poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other Mortal sickness, as namely the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and such like, which never are, but a Pestilent Feaver ever goeth before them: And they, like the Marks of the Plague, are seldom seen till the Cures be desperate; and then the unskilful *Farrier*, neither noting, nor knowing, if he did, the effects of the Feaver, doth ever mis-call the name of the Horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, fails many times to do the good Office and Cure, which he intendeth.

Now the signs to know the Feaver, be these: First, he will ever hold down his Head, he will quake and tremble; but when his trembling



trembling is past, then will his Body burn, and his Breath be hot, he will breath fast, and his Flank will beat, he will reell, he will forsake his Meat, his Eyes will be swoln and closed up, yet therewithal much Watering; his Flesh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down low, he will oft lye down and rise up again: as his desire will be to drink; yet at no time drink much, neither will he at any time sleep.

Now for the general cure of these general *Feavers*, you shall understand, that some *Farriers* use to let the Horse blood in the Face, Temples, and Palate of the Mouth, and the first day to give him no Meat, but warm drink only, by a little at a time: And after the finest Grass, or finest Hay wet in Water, keeping him warm, and often walking him up and down in a temperate Air; and giving him good store of Litter, then when he begins to mend, to feed him with Barley sodden, Huskt and beaten; as you do Wheat before you make Furmity, and this Cure is not amiss; for it agreeth with the Antient experience of the *Italians*: but in our English Horses, (through the *Clime*; as I suppose) it often faileth.

The best Cure therefore that I have found, is, as soon as you perceive him to begin to shake, to give him the yolks of three or four Eggs, beaten with seven or eight spoonfuls of *Aqua-vitæ* to drink, and then chafe him up and down till his shaking be past, and then set him up close and warm, and with many cloaths make him sweat an hour: Let his Food be Oats, very well dried and sifted, and once a day some wash'd in Ale. If his shaking fit be past, before you perceive his sickness, you shall only give him a pint of *Muskadine*, and an Ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and brewed together to *Drink*, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as aforesaid, and giving him no water but such as is warm: and this Order you shall observe at the beginning of every fit, if you can note them, or else every Morning, if his sickness hath no ceasing.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Of the Quotidian, or every days Feaver, and the Cure.*

**T**HE *Quotidian*, or every days *Feaver*, is that which takes a Horse and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at first appear somewhat *Violent*, but seldom or never endureth long, if  
the



the *Farrier* have any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreme Riding, either after water, or a full stomach; and then suddenly, after his heat, being thrust into a Stable, and neither stopt, nor rubbed, a suddain *Coldness* to that suddain Heat, begets a shaking, and so consequently, the effect of a *Feaver*.

The signs to know it, are Watrish and Blood-shotten eyes, short and hot breathing, Panting, Loathing of his Meat and Stiffness in his Limbs; but above these, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you shall observe, that these signs, together with the sickness, will not last above six or eight hours in one day, and then he will be cheerful and in health again, till very near the same hour of the next day, at what time his fit will begin again. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the hours, the more hope there is of his health; as if it takes him at seven of the Clock of the one day, and at three of the Clock of the other, and so forth. The cure is, you shall only during his fit, give him nothing but a sweet Mash made of Malt and Water being lukewarm, and walk him gently up and down in a Temperate Air; then as soon as his fit is past; you shall set him up, and rub his Body and Leggs exceedingly; then four hours after you shall give him this Drink: Take of strong Ale a quart, and boyl therein half a handful of Wormwood, of long Pepper and Grains two ounces, of the best Treacle two Ounces, and of the Powder of dried Rue one Ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the fire and strain it, then put therein three ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder; then when it is luke-warm give it him with a Horn to drink. Do this twice at the least, or thrice if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will Recover.

C H A P. XVII.  
*Of the Tertian Feaver.*

**T**HE *Tertian Feaver*, is that which cometh every other day, holding the Horse with one sick day, and one sound: it is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer lasting; it happeneth ofttest in the spring time of the year, when Blood begins to encrease, and most commonly to Colts and young Horses. It proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and sometimes of Rankness and ill Blood. The signs to know it, are all the signs formerly spoken of, and this is the chiefest, that the Horse will be apparently sick;



sick, as it were on the Monday, then apparently well on the Tuesday, and sick on the Wednesday following. This Feaver is never seen, but it beginneth with shaking. The Cure thereof is, as soon as you perceive the Horse begin to shake, you shall take a certain Herb, or rather a Weed called Stone-crop, and bruising it in a Morter, take some four spoonfuls of the Juice thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to drink: then walk him gently up and down in some temperate Air for an hour, then set him up, and with the help of Cloaths put him into a sweat for another hour, then cool him; and in any wise, till his fits leave him, let him Drink no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldest and driest Oats you can get, only upon his good daies before his fits come, keep him very long fasting and empty.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Quartan Feaver.*

THE *Quartan Feaver*, is that which some *Farriers* call a third daies sickness, as thus: If his fits begin on the Monday, he will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday, and sick again on the Thursday. It proceeds from the same Causes that the *Tertian Feaver* doth, yet in his working is not so apparently Violent, but of much longer Continuance: for if greater care and help be not, these *Feavers* will last some a quarter of a year, some half a year, and some a whole year. There needs no other sign to know it, then the coming and going of the fits, as hath been declared already. And for the Cure, it is the self same which is described in the former Chapters, for the *Tertian Feaver*: only if his fits doth not leave him at the first taking of the Medicine, you shall then give it him again the second time, but not above thrice at the most in any wise.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Of the Feaver continual.*

THE *Feaver Continual*, is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: For there is in it the effects of all the former *Feavers*, every one taking place as the other endeth: as the *Quotidian* beginning is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and those two supply so many hours till the



the *Quotidian* doth begin again. This kind of continual Feaver, most often springeth from some inflammation or Violent heat ingendred in the Principal Members about the Heart: and the signs thereof are Want of Rest, and falling away of the flesh, besides certain Inflammations or swellings, which will appear about his Withers and Flanks. The Cure is, first to purge his head by sneezing, the manner whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter hereafter: which done, you shall give him this Drink, take of Jermander two Ounces, of Gum Tragacant, and dried Roses, of each half an Ounce, beat them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of Ale, adding thereunto of Oyl-Olive two Ounces, and as much Honey; and when it is luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink: then walk him a little space, and after set him up close and warm, keep him from cold Water, and let his Provender be dry Oats.

## C H A P. XX.

*Of the Heetick Feaver.*

**T**HE *Heetick Feaver* in *Horses*, is a dangerous and mortal Feaver, being in a *Horse* the first Original breeder of a Consumption; it is a certain hot and dry Humour, which runneth between the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding from a sick Stomach, which having been scalded with hot Drinks, as those ill dieted running Horses be, which feed upon much Spice, (as those which take hot drenches upon every foolish and slight occasion) hath almost clean lost the power of Digestion: It sometimes happens to those Horses which Men too carefully teaching to Drink Beer and Wine, do so continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become subject to this sickness. The signs to know it; the horse will never eat with any appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue, you shall find it raw and almost scalded; his Flesh will be loose and flaggy, and his Body subject to a continual Trembling. The Cure is, first wash his Tongue either with the sirrup of Mulberries, or with Allom, running Water, Sage, and woodbine Leaves boyled together, then give him fasting in a morning this drink: Take of Aloes one Ounce, of Garlick half an Ounce, of Licoras and Anniseeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drink it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warm; and made sweet with Sugar-candy or Honey: let him drink



drink no drink, but warm mashes of Malt and Water, and let his meat be sweet Hay, or green Corn blades: and ever after his Medicine, let him be chafed a little, kept fasting two or three hours, and stand warm and well cloathed.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Of the Fever taken in Autumn, or the fall of the Leaf.*

ALL these Fevers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to *Horses* in the Spring-time of the year, by reason that the new Blood is ever aptest to be inflamed: yet notwithstanding, we find by experience, that Fevers will sometimes come at the fall of the Leaf, which we call *Autumn*, and they are of a longer continuance than the other. The signs are none other but such as I have already declared: For they are the same Fevers, only altering the time of the year. If therefore your *Horse* do chance to catch a Fever at the fall of the Leaf, you shall let him Blood on his Neck vein, and in the Palate of his Mouth, and you shall give him to drink the same drink which is formerly set down for the Fever-continual, and there is no doubt of his Recovery.

## C H A P. XXII.

*Of the Fever taken in the Summer-season.*

A Fever taken in the Summer season, is the worst of all Ordinary Fevers whatsoever, especially all such as are taken in the Dogdays; because according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then most furious: the especial signs of this Fever are that his Arteries will beat most palpably, and wheresoever he stalet there you shall perceive he sheddeth his Seed also. The Cure According to the Antients, is to let him Blood in the great Vein which he hath on his hinder haunch, almost four Inches beneath his Fundament; but for mine own part because that Vein is not easily found by every ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking, they may cut the Arterie, instead of the Vein, I hold it fully as good to let him Blood on the Neck-Vein, which done, give him this Drink two hours and a half after; Take the Juice of a handful of Purslane, and mix it with Gum-Tragacant, Anniseeds, and Damask-Rose-leaves,



leaves beaten to powder : then put them into a quart of Strong Ale; made sweet either with Sugar-candy, or Honey, and fail not to give him this Drink three mornings together, keep the Horse warm during his sickness.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Of the Feaver taken in the Winter season.*

A Feaver taken in the Winter, is not so dangerous to the Life of a Horse, as the Feaver before mentioned ; yet it is a Feaver which will continue long, and ask great Circumspection in the Cure : the causes thereof are the same which are formerly described ; and the signs are no other than hath been formerly declared. Touching the Cure, it is thus : you shall first purge his head by making him sneeze, that done, you shall let him Blood both in the Neck and the Pallat of the Mouth, and then two hours and a half after give him this drink : Take of Rue three Ounces, of round Pepper half an Ounce, of Bay-berries, and the seed of Smallage, each half an Ounce, boyl these in White Wine, and give it him to drink luke-warm. Other Farriers use to take a pint of new Milk, and to put therein two Ounces of Sallet Oyl, of Saffron one scruple, and of Myrrh two scruples, of the seed of Smallage a spoonful, and to make him drink it lukewarm ; but the Horse which taketh this Drink, must be good in strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The Antient *Italians* did use for this Fever, to give this Drink : Take of *Aristolochia* half an Ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hyssop, Worm-wood, of Southern-wort, of each half an Ounce, of dry fat Figs three Ounces, of the seed of Smallage an Ounce and a half, of Rue half an handful, boyl them all with running Water in a clean Vessel, till almost half be consumed ; then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, strain it, and give it the Horse luke-warm. Now there are not any of these Drinks but are sufficient for the Cure ; but the first is best. Now for his Diet, be sure to keep him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drink be only warm mashes of malt and water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue, and bring the Horse to any weakness, you shall then to comfort and quicken the natural heat of the Horse, rub and chafe all his Body over, either in the Sun, or by some soft Fire, with some wholesom Friction, of which Frictions you shall find choice in a particular Chapter here.



hereafter following together with their several natures and uses.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of the Feaver which cometh by Surfeit of meat only.*

**T**HE Feaver which cometh by Surfeit of Meat only, without either Disorder of travel or Corruption of Blood, is known by these signs: the horse will heave and beat upon his back, his breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his Wind will draw only at his Nose with great violence. The cure therefore is, you shall let him Blood in his Neck, under his Eyes, and in the Palate of his mouth, you shall also purge his head by making him sneeze, then keep him with very thin diet, that is, let him fast for more than half of the day, and let him not drink above once in four and twenty hours, and that drink to be warm water; you shall also once or twice chafe his Body with a wholsom Friction; and if, during his Cure, he chance to grow costive, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward give him either a Suppository, or a Clister, of both which, and of their several natures, you shall read sufficiently in a Chapter following.

## C H A P. XXV.

*Of Fevers extraordinary, and first of Pestilent Fevers.*

**W**E find by many Antient *Italian* Writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Countrymen, have by experience found many Horses subject to this Pestilent Fever, which is a most contagious and pestiferous Disease, almost incurable; and for mine own part I have seen it in many Colts and young Horses. Surely, it proceedeth as I judge, either from great corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air. The signs thereof be, the Horse will hold down his Head, forsake his Meat, shed much Water at his Eyes; and many times have swellings or Ulcers rising a little below his Ear-roots. The Cure is, first you shall not fail to let him Blood in the Neck-vein: then two or three hours after you shall give him a Clister, then make him this Plaister: Take of *Squilla* five Ounces, of Elder, of *Castoreum*, of Mustard-seed, and of *Enforbium*, of each two Ounces, dissolve the same in the Juice of Daffodil and Sage, And lay it all about the Temples of his Head, and between his Ears: then give him



him to drink for three or four days together, every Morning; two Ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a pint of good *Muskadine*.

The *Italians* use to give him divers Mornings, a pound of the Juice of elder roots, or instead of his *Hay*, a good quantity of that *Herb* which is called *Venus hair*; but if the time of the year be such that they cannot have it green, then they boyl it in Water, and strain it, and give it him to Drink, but I hold the first *Drink*, to be most sufficient, his *Diet* being thin, and his keeping warm.

#### C H A P. XXVI.

*Of the Plague and Pestilence in Horses, of some called the Gargil or Murrain.*

**T**HIS Pestilence, Murrain, or Gargil in Horses, is a contagious and most infectious *Disease*, proceeding either from Surfeit of Heat, Cold, Labour, Hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours in a *Horses* Body, as the holding too long of his Urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon gross, foul, and corrupt Foods, as in low grounds, after floods, when the Grass is unpurged and such like. Sometimes it springs from some evil Influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and Fruits of the Earth, and Cattel too sometimes, and from divers other such like Causes; but howsoever, when the Disease beginneth, certain it is, that it is most infectious, and if there be not care and prevention used, of multitudes, it will not leave one. Not any of the Antient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, do or can shew me any sign or token to know this Disease, more than that one or two must first die, and then by their Deaths I must adjudge and prevent what will follow; but they are mistaken: For this Disease is as easily known by outward signs, as any Disease whatsoever; as namely, the Horse will begin to lower and hang down his head; and within two or three days after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his Ear roots, or under the roots of his Tongue, and that swelling will run universally over all one side of his Face, being very extreme hard and great. Moreover all his Lips, Mouth, and Whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his Breath will be strong, and stink exceedingly.

The Cure of this Disease, according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French-men*, is first to separate the sound from the sick, even a far distance from that Air where the sick breatheth; then let him  
blood



Blood in the Neck veins, and give every one severally to drink, two spoonfuls of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pint of strong *Sack*, of the composition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular Virtues thereof, you shall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and dissolve into it two Ounces of the best Treacle, and it will serve the turn. Questionless these Medicines are both exceeding good; for they are great preservatives against all infections.

Now that which I have found far to exceed them, and to be most Excellent, not only for this Plague amongst Horses, but for the Plague or Murrain, (of some called the Mountains-evil) amongst Beasts, is this; Take a good quantity of Old Urine, and mix therewith a good quantity of Hens Dung, stir them well together till the Dung be dissolved: then with a horn give to every Horse or Beast a pint thereof lukewarm. This have I seen help hundreds.

## C H A P. XXVII.

*Of the Fever accidental, coming by some Wound received.*

**I**F a Horse shall receive any grievous and fore wound, either by stroke or thrust, by which any of the Vital Powers are let or hindered, certain it is, that the pain and anguish of such wounds will bring a Horse to a hot Fever, and then his Life is in great danger: Besides a Horse being naturally subject to moist Distillations in his throat, there will many times rise therein great swellings and Ulcers, through the pain whereof a Horse will fall into a burning Ague.

The signs whereof are, that he will covet much to drink, but cannot drink, and his flesh will fall away in much extraordinary fashion.

The Cure besides the Remedies before mentioned, is, to let him Blood under his Ears, and in the Mouth: and then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in slices, steep it in *Muskadine*, and compel him to swallow them: It shall also be good, if once in three days you steep your Manchet in Sallet Oyl, and make him eat it. As for his drink, let it be only warm Mash of Malt and Water, which if he cannot drink, you shall then give it him with an horn. And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.



## C H A P. XXVIII.

☞ *One general, certain, and approved Cure for all the Fevers and Sicknesses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Author's breast.*

**I** Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, Signs, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever: Now because I know the Ignorance of some so great that they cannot discern; the Sloth of others such, that they will not endeavour to discern: and the Folly of many so peevish, that they will mistake what they may discern: I will shew you here one general, certain, and approved Medicine, for all Fevers of what Nature or Violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signs formerly rehearsed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him Blood in the Neck vein, and let him bleed well, then three Mornings together after (the Horse being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder called *Diapente*, (the Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter, together with the Vertues,) and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pint of Muscadine, and so give it the Horse to drink with an Horn: then let him be ridden or walked abroad for an hour; after he cometh in, give him any meat whatsoever that he will eat. At noon give him a sweet Mash. In the evening perfume his head with a sweet perfume: The Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter; at Night rub all his Limbs well with hard Wisps, and his head and nape of the Neck with a coarse harden Rubber, then feed as aforesaid. And thus do three days together, and without doubt health will come suddenly.

## C H A P. XXIX.

*Of the Diseases in the Head.*

**A**S a Horses Head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances, as namely, the Panicles, or thick skins, which cleave to the Bones, and cover the whole Brain, are subject to Head-ach, Meagrim, Dizziness, and Amazes; the whole Brain it self is properly subject to breed the Frensie, Madness, sleeping evil, the taking and forgetfulness. And here is



to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approved good skill have strongly held opinions, that Horses have very little or no brains at all : And my self for my own part, being carried away with their Censures, did at last upon good consideration, cut up the heads of divers Horses, some Dead, some in dying, and could never find any Liquid or thin Brain, as in other Beasts, but only a very thick, strong, tough, and shining substance, solid and firm, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be only a Panicle, and so resolved with others, that a Horse had no Brain : But after, upon further Discourse with Men of better Learning, I had this Resolution given me : That a Horse being a Beast of extraordinary strength and ability, made even to endure the worst of all extremities, either by sore labour, or heavy Burthen, that Nature in his Creation had endowed him with Members answerable to such Vigour : As namely, that his Brain was not liquid and moist, as subject to fleet, or to be distempered with every small disorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierc'd by any reasonable motion. And for the Panicles, they shewed me those thin skins over and besides that great substance : so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a Horse hath both Brain and a Panicle, and in them two are bred the Diseases before mentioned. Now in the Ventricles, or Cells of the Brain, and in those Conduits by which the lively Spirits give feeling and motion to the Body, there do breed the Turnick, or Sturdy, the Staggers, the falling evil, the Night Mare, the Apoplexy, the Palsie and Convulsion, or Cramp, the Catarrh, or Rheum, and lastly the Glanders. And thus much of the Head in general.

## C H A P. XXX.

*Of Head-ach, or pain in the Head.*

**T**HE Headach is a pain that cometh either from some Inward cause, or of some Cholerick Humour gathered together in the Panicles of the Brain, or else of some extream heat or cold, or of some sudden blow, or of some noisome Savour. The signs are, the hanging down of the Horses Head and Ears, dropping of his Urine, dimnells of sight, swollen and watrish Eyes. The Cure according to the opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him blood in the Eye-veins, and to squirt warm water into his Nostrils ; and for that day give him no meat ; the next Morning fasting give him warm



warm Water, and some Grasse : at night give him *Barley* and *Fitches* mixt together, and so keep him warm till he be sound : But this Cure I do not fancy. The best help is, first to make him sneez by Fuming him, then let him Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, And keep him fasting at the least twelve hours after : Then pour into his Nostrils Wine, wherein hath been sodden *Euphorbium*, and *Frankincense*, and after feed him, and keep his head warm.

### CHAP. XXXI.

#### *Of the Frenzy, and Madnes in a Horse.*

THE madnes of a *Horse*, by the most antient and best approved Farriers, is divided into four Passions : The first is, when some naughty Blood doth strike the Panicle of the Brain but in one part only, it presently makes the *Horse* dull both in mind and sight, and you shall know it by this sign, the *Horse* will turn round like a Beast that is troubled with the Sturdy : the Reason being, Because the outside of the head is grieved only. The second is, when the Poyson of such Blood doth infect the middle part of the Brain : Then the *Horse* becometh Frantick, leaping against Walls or any Thing. The third is, when that Blood filleth the veins of the Stomach, and infecteth as well the Heart as the Brain : then he is said to be mad. But the fourth and last is, when that Blood infecteth not only the *Brain* and *Heart*, but even the Panicles also, and then he is said to be stark mad, which you shall know by his biting at every man which comes near him, by his gnawing of the Manger and the Walls about him. And lastly, by tearing his own skin in pieces.

Now for the Cure, you shall cause him to be let Blood in all the lower parts of his Body, to draw the Blood from his *Head* ; as namely, on the Shackle veins, the Spur-veins, the Plat-veins, and the Thigh-veins, and you shall let him Blood abundantly, then give him this Drink : Take the root of wild Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handful of Rue or Mints, and a handful of black Elleborus, and boyl them in strong Red Wine, and give it lukewarm to the *Horse* in a horn.

Some use to give Man's Dung with Wine, three Mornings together : And also to rub his Body over with a Friction at least twice a day, and not to fail to give him moderate Exercise.

Others



Others use to pierce the skin of his head, with a hot Iron, to let out the ill humours.

Others as the most certain of all Medicines, use to geld him of both, or one stone at the least, but I like it not for mine own part.

The Cure I have ever used for this grief, was either to make him swallow down hard Hens Dung, or else give him to drink, the Root of *Virga Pastoris* stamped in Water, and for his ordering during the Cure, I would have his Stable quiet, but not close, and his Food only warm Mashs of Malt and Water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest Diet is best.

## C H A P. XXXII.

*Of the Sleeping Evil, or Lethargy in a Horse.*

**T**HE Sleeping Evil, is an infirmity which maketh a Horse to sleep continually, depriving him thereby, both of Memory, Appetite, and all Alacrity of Spirit. It is most incident to White and Dun Horses, because it proceedeth only from *Flegm*, cold and gross, which moistneth the Brain too much, causeth heaviness and sleep: There needs no other sign more than his sleeping only. The Cure is, to keep him waking whether he will or no, with great noises and affright; then let him blood in the Neck, and the Palate of the Mouth, and give him to drink Water luke-warm, wherein hath been boyled Camomil, Motherwort, Wheat-Bran, Salt, and Vinegar: You shall also perfume his Head, and make him sneeze, and anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Mustard mixt together: It shall not be amiss, if with the ordinary Water which he drinketh, you mix either Parsley seed, or Fennel seed, for that will provoke Urine: you shall also bathe his Leggs, and stop his Hoofs with Bran, Salt, and Vinegar boyled together, and applied as hot as may be, and his Stable would be lightsom and full of noise.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Of a Horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running.*

**T**Hose Horses are supposed by Farriers to be taken, or as some call it Planet-strook, which are deprived of feeling or moving, not being able to stir any Member, but remain in the same Form as they were at their time of taking. Some hold it proceeding of Choler

G

and



and Flegm, when they are superabundantly mixt together, or of Melancholy Blood, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppress and ficken the hinder part of the Brain. Other antient Farriers hold, it cometh of some extreme cold, or extream heat, or raw digestion striking into the empty Veins suddenly: or else of extreme Hunger, caused by long fasting. The signs thereof are numbness, and want of motion before spoken of: As for the cause, it is diverse, for first you must note, whether it come of cold or heat: If it come of Cold, you shall know it by the stuffing and poze in the Head, which is ever joyned with the Disease: if of heat, by the hotness of his Breath, and clear fetching of his Wind. Now if it proceed from cold, you shall give him to Drink one ounce of *Laserpitium* mixt with Sallet Oyl and Muscadine lukewarm: if it proceed of heat, you shall give him one Ounce of *Laserpitium* with water and Honey luke-warm: But if it proceed of Crudity, or any raw digestion, then you shall help him by fasting: and if it proceed of fasting, then you shall heal him by feeding him often with good Meat, as with wholesome Bread and dry Oats; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eat with a good stomach.

Now for the *French* Farriers, as Monsieur *Horace* and the rest, who call this Disease *Surprius*, they hold, it cometh only from cold causes, following hot accidents, and they use for their Cure to let him blood on the Breast-veins, and then put him into a sweat, either by Exercise, or multiplicity of Cloaths, but many cloaths are better, Because the Horse is not capable of Labour: And sometimes they will bury him all save his head in an old Dunghil, till through the heat thereof his Limbs receive such feeling, that he begins to struggle out of the same. All which Cures are not much amiss; Yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way: First, to let him blood in the Neck and Breast, then to anoint all his Body with Oyl *Petroleum*, then give him this Drink. Take of Malmsey three pints, and mix it with a quartern of Sugar, Cinamon, and Cloves, and let him drink it luke-warm, then take old rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet Hay, and with Cloaths, Sur-fingles and Cords, swaddle all his whole Body over with the same of a good thickness, and renew it once in three days till he be whole; let his Stable be warm, his Exercise moderate, and if he grow costive, let him first be raked, and after give him either a Clister, or a Suppositary, according to his strength. There is also another kind of



of taking, and that is, when a Horse is Planet-strook, or stricken with Thunder : but it is utterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to speak further of it. The last kind of taking is when a Horse is shrow-run, that when a Horse lieth sleeping, there is a certain venomous field-Mouse called a Shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, and her feet shorter of the one side than the other. This Mouse if she happen to run over any of the Limbs of the Horse, presently the horse loseth the use of that Limb she ran over, and if she run over his Body, he commonly loseth the use of his hinder loins : and these accidents having been often found unexpected common Farriers have held the horse to be taken, or Planet-strook. As for the Cure thereof, the best is to seek out a Brier, which groweth at both ends, and take the Horse or Beast that is thus vexed, and draw him under the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine own part, I have heard much, both of the infirmity, and of the Cure, but I have had no experience of it, but only in one young Foal which being suddenly Lame, was as suddenly helped, to my much Contentment.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*Of the Staggers.*

**T**HE *Staggers* is a dizzy madness of the Brain, proceeding from corrupt blood, or gross, tough and heavy Humours, which oppress and make sick the Brain, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous Spirit, dissolved by a weak heat which troubleth all the whole head : it is almost of all Diseases the most common, yet very Mortal and dangerous ; it cometh many times from surfeit of Meat, surfeit of Travel, or from corruption of Blood. The signs to know it is Dimness of sight, swollen and watrish Eyes, a moist Mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beating of his head against the Walls, or thrusting it into his Litter. The Cure is divers : for almost every Smith hath a several Medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse, are the most approved. The Antient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, use to let the Horse-blood in the Temple-veins, and then with a knife make an hole an inch long over-thwart his fore-head, underneath his fore-top, and raising the skin up with a Cornet, some two or three inches about, stop the hollownes with a tent dipt in Turpentine and hogs grease molten together ; but some of our Smiths finding this Cure fail, except the Disease be very young, use to stop the



hollowness with Dock roots. Others with a Clove or two of Garlick. Others use for this Disease to take Selladine, and stamping it to stop it into his Ears, and so tye up his Ears, or stich the tips of his Ears together, that he may not shake the Medicine out. Others use to mix Salt and Water together thick, and to put it into his Ears. Others use to mix *Groundsel* and *Aqua-vitæ* together, and to put that into his Ears. Others use to take Garlick, Rue, and Bay-Salt, and beat them grossly, then mix Vinegar with them, and put it into the Horses Ears, then wet Wool or Tow in the Medicine, and stop that in his Ears also: let the Medicine rest so four and twenty hours, and if he forsake his Meat, wash his Tongue with Vinegar, and it will recover his Stomach. Others use first to perfume the horses head to make him sneeze, then to take half a handful of Selladine, and as much Herb-of-Grace, three or four Cloves of Garlick, and a little bay Salt, and stamp them together: then mix therewith two or three spoonfuls of Vinegar or Verjuice, and thrust it hard into the horses Ears: then tye up his Ears with a soft inkle string, that no Air may come in, and let this Medicine remain the space of a Day and a Night: then let him Blood in the Neck-vein, and give him a comfortable Drench, of which Drenches you shall find great plenty, together with their uses, in a Chapter following. There be some Smiths which only take Rue and Selladine, of each a like quantity, and stamping them with white Salt, thrust it into the Horses Ear, and it helpeth. Others take an Ounce and a half of the Oyl of bitter Almonds, two drams of Oxe-gall, and a half penny in black Ellebor stamped, and five drams of the grains of Castoreum, Vinegar, and Verjuice, seethe them altogether till the Vinegar be consumed, then strain them, and put it into the Horses Ears. All these Medicines have been divers times approved to be singular good, and for mine own part, I have found great effects in them: Yet that which I have found at all times most excellent, is, if the Disease be young and early taken, (that is, before the horse be grown into an extremity of Weakness) to take only Verjuice and Bay-Salt, and mixing them well together, to stop it into the horses Ears. But if the Disease be old, and the horse brought to a desperate state of Mortality, then you shall take *Affa fætida*, and having dissolved it in Vinegar, warm it upon a Chafingdish of Coals, and with round Balls of Tow, stuff it hard into the horses Ears, and so bind them up for four and twenty hours, after which time give him a comfortable drink. Now where-



as some Smiths do use to stamp Aqua-vitæ and Garlick together, and stop that into his Ears: I for my part, think it too stiong, except the horse be in great lust, and full of flesh, which if he be, doubtless it may do well enough; only for a general rule you must observe, ever to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, two or three Mornings together, and every time take a great abundance of Blood from him.

## C H A P. XXXV.

*Of the falling evil.*

**T**His Falling evil, or as the *Italians* call it, This *Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in Men the *Falling-sickness*, in Beasts the Falling evil: for it doth for a certain Season, deprive them of all sense whatsoever. It is a Disease not commonly incident to our *English* Races, but amongst the *Italian*, *Spanish*, and *French* horses, many times found.

Now considering that the most of our best *English* Stables are furnished even with some horses of these Countries, I think it good to write something touching the Disease. It proceeds from cold and gross Flegm, gathered together in the fore-part of the Head, betwixt the Panicle and the Brain, which being by any hot vapour dispersed over the whole Brain, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose it to be governed by the Moon; and that by a certain course thereof, both horses and other Beasts do fall, and as it were die for a small time. The sign to know the Disease, is, the horse will fall suddenly, both through the Resolution of his Members, and the Distension of his Sinews, all his Body will quake and quiver, and they will foam much at their Mouths, yet when you think them past all hope of Life, they will still start up suddenly and fall to their Meat. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often, or but seldom, you shall feel the Gristle betwixt his Nostriks, and if it be cold, he will oft; but if he be warm, he will fall seldom. The Cure is, you shall first let him blood in the Neck-vein, taking good store of Blood away: then within four or five days after, you shall let him Blood on his Temple-veins, and on his Eye veins: then anoint all his Body over with a comfortable Friction, then bathe his head and Ears with Oyl de Bay, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the same put some into his Ears: then



then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canvase, quilted with Wooll to keep his head warm: then give him a purgation or scouring, of which you shall find plenty in a Chapter hereafter: you shall also force him to sneeze, but if the Disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot Iron pierce the skin of his Fore-head in divers places, and after anoint it with sweet Butter, for thereby you shall draw out the gross humours which do oppress the Brain, and in any wise during the time that he remaineth in Physick, let his Stable be kept exceeding warm, and his Diet thin.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Of the Night-Mare.*

**T**His Disease which we call the Night-Mare, is an infirmity which only troubleth the horse in the Night-season, stopping the drawing of his Breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and striving he will be driven into a great sweat and faintness: It proceedeth, according to the opinion of antient Farriers, from a continual Crudity, or raw Digestion of the stomach, from whence gross Vapours ascending up into the head, do not only oppress the Brain, but all the Sensitive parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the Stomach and inward Bowels, which being cloyed with much Glut and Fat, doth in the Night season so hinder the Spirits and Powers from doing their Natural Office, that the Beast having, as it were, his breath strangled, doth with an unnatural struggling in his sleep, put his Body into an extreme sweat, and with that passion is brought to much faintness; of which I have had much and continual experience not only in horses, exceeding fat, and newly taken from the Grass, but especially from such Horses as are either fatted upon Eddish Grass, which in some Countreys is called after-Mathes; or such as are taken up fat in the Winter-season. The signs to know this Disease, is, that in the Morning when you come early to your Horse, you shall find him all of a great sweat, and his Body something panting; or perhaps you shall but only find him sweat in his flanks, upon his Neck, and at the Roots of his Ears: Either of both are signs of this sickness, especially if at Night when you litter him, if you find that he is dry of his Body, and giveth no outward sign of inward sickness. Now there be some that will Object against me, and say, that this infirmity is not the Night Mare, but



but an ordinary Infirmary ingendred by superfluity of cold, gross, and unwholsom Food, got in the Winter-season; which Nature, through the help of warm Cloaths, and a warm house, expells in this manner, in the night-season. To this Objection I answer, that if they do disallow this sickness to be the Night-mare, that then without Contradiction, there is no such Disease as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but only a name without any substance or consequence; but forasmuch as this sickness is not only very usual, but also carrieth with it all the Effects and Attributes ascribed unto the Night-mare, and that it is as yet a Disease unnamed, I do not think I can give it a more proper Term than to call it the Night-Mare. The Cure whereof is, every Morning and Evening, both before and after his water, to give the Horse some moderate Exercise, as to make him go at least a mile and more for his water; and after he is watered, to gallop him gently on the hand a good space; then when he is brought into the house, and well-rubbed, to give him his Provender, (being Oats) and to mix therewith a handful, or better of Hempseed, only in this Cure you must be careful, that your Exercise do not inforce him to sweat, nor shall you have need to use it longer, than you find that he sweateth much in the Night-season. This exercise and Medicine will not only cure this infirmity, but also any cold that is newly gotten whatsoever.

## C H A P. XXXVII.

*Of the Apoplexy, or Palsie.*

**T**Hese Palsies or Apoplexies which happen unto horses, are of two sorts: the one general, the other particular. The general Palsie is, when a Horse is deprived of all sense, and moving generally over his whole Body, which is seldom or never found out by our Farriers; because the Mortality and suddenness of Death which pursues the Disease, takes from them, all Notes and observations of the Infirmary: and indeed, for the general Palsie, there is no Cure, and therefore there needs no Description of sign or Cure. For this particular Palsie, that is when a horse is deprived but of some part or member of his Body, and most commonly it is but the Neck only, as both my self and others have found by daily experience. This Disease proceedeth from foulness of food, or from fen-feeding, which breedeth gross and tough humours, which joyned with Crudities  
and



and raw Digestions, oppress the Brain violently altogether : it also cometh many times by means of some Blow or Wound given upon the Temples of the Head. The signs to know the Disease, are, the gathering together of his Body, going crookedly, and not straight forward, but seldom and holding his neck awry without Motion : yet never forsaking his Provender or Meat, but eating it with greediness, and much flavering. The Cure is, to let him bleed on his Neck-vein, and Temple-vein, on the contrary side to that way he wryeth : then anoint all his Neck over with the Oyl Petroleum, and with wet hay Ropes swaddle all his Neck over, even from his Breast to his Ears, but having before splented his Neck strait with splents of Wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose : then for three Mornings together, give him a pint of old *Muskadine*, with two spoonfuls of this Powder to drink. Take of Opoponax two Ounces, of Storax three Ounces, of Gentian three Ounces, of Manna Succary three Ounces, of Myrrh one scruple, and of long Pepper two scruples, beat all these into fine powder.

Now there be some Farriers, which for this Disease use to draw the Horses Neck on the contrary side with a hot Iron, even from the Neck to the Shoulder, and on the Temple of his head of that side also, a long strike, and on the other a little Scar in this manner †, and from his Reins to his middle back, small lines in this manner :



But I that know this sickness proceedeth from the Brain and Sinews, cannot conceive how any help should come from burning of the skin, that is drawn up and straightned : And therefore I would wish every Farrier to forbear this tormenting, unless he apparently see, that the skin it self through dislike and weakness, is shrunk also, and then the Cure is not amiss.

#### C H A P. XXXVIII.

##### *Of the general Cramps, or Convulsion of sinews.*

These general Cramps, or Convulsion of sinews, are most forcible Contractions, or drawings together of the sinews, and muscles : and they happen sometimes generally into many parts of the Body, sometimes particularly, as but into one Member and no more : When they are generally dispersed in horses, they proceed commonly from some wound, wherein a sinew is half cut and no more, and so there runneth



runneth a general Contraction over the whole Body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one Member, then they proceed either from cold windy causes, or from the want of Blood. For the generall contraction which cometh by a wound, you shall read the Cure thereof in the Book of Chirurgery following, where the sinew being cut in two pieces, the contraction ceaseth. For this particular, where but one member is grieved, you shall know it by these signs: The Member will be stark and stiff, insomuch that neither the Beast, nor any man will be able to bow it: The sinews will be hard like sticks, and the Horse being down, is not able to rise during the time of the Contraction, he will also halt extreemly whilst the fit is upon him, and presently go well again, as it were in one moment. The Cure is, to chafe the Member exceedingly, either with Linseed Oyl, Sheeps-foot Oyl, or Neats-foot Oyl, and during the time of his Chaffing, to hold up the contrary foot that he may stand upon the Limb which is most pained. There is also another Cramp or Convulsion of sinews, which doth extend into the Neck and reins of the Horses back, and so almost universal over the horses whole Body: It proceeds ever, either from some extreme cold, as by turning a Horse suddenly out of a warm Stable, and warm Cloaths, into the piercing rage of the Cold Winter, or by the loss of Blood, whereby great windiness entreth into the Veins, and so benummeth the sinews: or else by too much Physicking and Drenching of a Horse, whereby the natural heat is much weakned or dried. The signs of this Convulsion be, his Head and Neck will stand awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot eat, and his back will rise up in the midst like the back of a Camel; the Cure hereof is, with great store of warm woollen Cloaths, as Blankets and Coverlids, some folded double about his body, and some girded all over from his Head to his Tail, to force him into a sweat; but if the Cloaths will not force him to sweat, then you shall either fold all his Body over with hot wet Horse Litter, or else bury him all save the Head in a Dunghil or Mixon; then when he hath sweat an hour or two, and is moderately cooled, you shall anoint him all over with this Ointment, (holding hot Barrs of Iron over him, to make the Ointment sink into his Body:) take of Hoggs-grease one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaten into powder half a dram, of old oyl Olives one pound, boyl all these together, and use it being

H made



made warm. There be other Farriers which use this Oyntment : Take of new Wax one Pound, of Turpentine four Ounces, of Oyl de Bay as much, Opoponax two Ounces, of Deers suet, and of Oyl of *Styrax* of each three Ounces, melt all these together, and use it warm.

There be others which use, after his sweat, nothing but Oyl of *Cypress*, or of *Spike*, and Oyl de Bay mixt together, and with it anoint his Body over. After this Uction thus applied, you shall take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two Ounces, of *Nitre* one Ounce, of *Laserpitium* as much as a Bean, and mingle all these together with a Gallon of white Wine, and give him a quart thereof to drink every morning for four dayes. Now for his Diet and Order, let his Food be warm *Mashes*, and the finest Hay, his Stable exceeding warm, and his exercise gentle Walking abroad in his Cloaths, once every day about high noon.

#### C H A P. XXXIX.

##### *Of the Cold, or Poze in the Head.*

**T**HE Cold or Poze in a *Horses Head* is gotten by divers sudden and unseen means, according to the Temper and Constitution of the *Horses Body*, insomuch, that the best keeper whatsoever cannot sometimes warrant his Horse from that infirmity. Now according as this Cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of Humours which abound in the Head, and as those Humours are of thickness or thinness, so is the Disease and the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall understand, that if the Horse hath but only a cold that is newly taken, the signs are, he will have many Knots like Wax Kernels between his Chaules about the Roots of his Tongue; his Head will be somewhat heavy, and from his Nostrils will run a certain clear Water; but if about his Tongue roots be any great Swelling, or Inflammation like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the *strangle*; but if from his Nostrils do issue any thick, stinking, or corrupt matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we shall speak hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary Cold, which is ordinarily taken, (the signs whereof, besides his much Coughing, are before declared) you shall understand; that for the Cure being very easie, it is helped fundry ways: Some cure it only by purging his head with Pills of Butter and Garlick,



lick, the manner whereof you shall find in the Chapter of Purgations. Other Farriers cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to sneeze, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of Neesing; which done, you shall give him to drink Water wherein hath been sodden *Fenugreek*, Wheat-meal, and Anniseeds; and then to trot him up and down half an hour after. Others use to give him Neesing powder, blown up into his Nostrils; and then this drink: take a pint of *Malmsey*, and the whites and yolks of four or five Eggs, a head of Garlick bruised small, Pepper and Cinnamon, and Nutmegs, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a pretty quantity of sweet Butter mix them together, and give it lukewarm with a horn three days together: then keep him fasting at least two hours after. Others use to let the Horse blood in the vein under his Tail, and to rub all his Mouth over with a Bunch of Sage bound to a sticks end, and then to mix with his Provender the tender crops of black Berries; but I take this Medicine to be fittest for such Horses, who with the cold Rheume are troubled with pain in their Chaps, and not with stuffing in their head.

Now albeit none of these Medicines are faultworthy, yet some for mine own part, I have ever found to be most Excellent for these slight colds, moderate Exercise, both before and after a Horses water in such sort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-Mare, without any other fuming or drenching except I found the cold to be more than ordinary, and that for want of heed taking it was like to grow to some Ulcer about the Roots of the Tongue. In this case I would for one time and no more, give the Horse a pint of Sack, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl made lukewarm, and well brewd with good store of *Sugar candy*, to drink in the Morning fasting, and then exercise him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any sweat, and it hath never failed to work the effects I wished in ample sort, without hindring meat any time of my Travel or Journey, but if you cannot conveniently come by this Medicine, and you must notwithstanding Travel your Horse, then take a spoonful of *Tarr*, and folding it in a fine Cloath, fix or tye it fast to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffel, and so Travel your Horse therewith, and it will take his cold clean away. But yet it will a little abate and lessen his stomach.



## C H A P. XL.

*How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Ratling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any Inward Medicine.*

☞ **I**F your Horse have taken any extreme Cold, or Poze in his head, and being matcht either to hunt, or to run for any great Wager, the day is so near that you dare not give him any inward Drench, without which, none of our Farriers know how to cure any Cold; you shall then, or at any other time, (for there is no Medicine in the World more Sovereign) take as much sweet Butter as a big Wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searst, work them either with your Knife, or a Splatter together, till the Butter be brought to a high cold Colour; then take two clean Goose-feathers, the longest in all the Wing, and first at the Quills ends, with a Needle, fasten two long Threds: Then with your Salve anoint all the Feathers clean over; which be done in the dry powder of Brimstone, role them over and over; then putting the Feathers ends foremost, open the Horses Nostrils, and thrust them up into his Head: then take the Threads which are at the Quills ends, and fasten them on the top of the Horses Head; which done, Ride him abroad for an hour or two, airing him in this manner Morning and Evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath stood tied up a pretty Season, untie the Threds, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This Cure of all others is most certain, and taketh away any stopping in the Head how extreme soever.

## C H A P. XLI.

*The Perfection and best of all Medicines for Poze or Cold.*

☞ **T**AKE (if you can get it) an Ounce of the fine and pure paste of Elicampane. which hath the strings at the Roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an ounce of the Conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in a pint and a half of Sack, and so give it the Horse with a Horn in the Morning fasting, and then ride him half an hour after it, and let him fast two hours more, then feed him as at ordinary times: and thus do for two or three Mornings together.

C H A P.



C H A P. XLII.  
*Of a Horse that is Hide-bound.*

**T**His Disease which we call Hide-bound, is, when a Horses skin cleaveth so hard to his Ribbs and Back, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from poverty and ill keeping, sometime from surfeit of over Riding; especially if when he is extreme hot, he be suffered to stand long in the Rein or wet-Weather: And lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt driness of the Blood, which wanting his Natural course, forceth his skin to shrink up, and cleave to the Bones. The signs, besides the cleaving of his skin, is, leanness of Body, gauntness of Belly, and the Standing up of the Ridgebone of his Back: It drieth up the Entrails, torments the Body, and makes his Dung stink extraordinarily: and if he be not remedied, Manginess will presently follow after it. The Cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers Workmen: The most antient Farriers did use to let him blood on the Spur-veins, of both sides his Belly, somewhat toward his flank, which done, they give him this *Drink*: Take of white wine, or strong Ale a Quart, and add thereunto three Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, of *Cummin* one Ounce, of *Anniseeds* two Ounces, of *Licoras* two Ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and give it him luke-warm with a horn; when he hath Drunk, let one chafe his Back, from the Huckle-bone upward, for the space of an hour or more; then set him in a warm Stable, with good store of Litter; then fold about his Body a thick Blanket, soaked in Water, and wrung; then over it a dry Blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the fursingle about with great Wisps, for the wet Blanket will put him into a great heat, and for want of a wet Blanket, if you fold his Body in wet Hay, it will do the like, and loosen his skin; this you shall do the space of a Week, during which time he shall drink no cold Water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet Blanket will anoint all the Horses Body over with Wine and Sallet Oyl, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this Disease, use to let the Horse blood in the Neck, then bathe his sides with warm Water, wherein hath been sodden Bay-Leaves: then anoint him all over with the Oyl of Rue or Camomile, holding a hot Iron  
over



over him to make the Oyl Sink into his Skin, then give him this Drink: Take of Carrets, Rue Wild Mint, of each an Ounce and a half, of Wormwood two Ounces; dry them, and beat them to Powder, then give two spoonfuls thereof in a pint of Malmsey. There be other Farriers, which take Ferugreek, Turmerick, Anniseeds, Bay, Licoras, and Cumin, of each a like quantity, dry them, and beat them to powder, and give the Horse two spoonfuls thereof with a quart of Ale or Beer luke-warm: Use this at least three Mornings together, and it will not only help the Disease, but if it be formerly used, it will prevent the coming thereof: This drink is also good for a Cold. Now although every one of these Medicines are very good, yet for my own part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

First, Let him bleed in the Neck-vein, then give him this Drink: Take two handfals of Celladine, if it be in the Summer the Leaves and Stalks will serve, but if it be in Winter, take Leaves, Stalks, Roots and all, chop them small, then take a handful of Wormwood, and a handful of Rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three quarts of strong Ale or Beer, and boyl them till it come to a quart; then take it from the fire, and strain it till you have left no moisture in the herbs; then dissolve it in three ounces of the best Treacle, and give it the Horse luke-warm to drink: then for a Week together, once a day, rub all the Horses Body over with Oyl and Beer, or Butter and Beer, against the Hair, and feed him with warm mashies of Malt and Water, and for his Provender, let him have Barley sodden till it be ready to break, provided that you keep it not until it fower.

C H A P. XLIII.

*Of the Glanders.*

**T**ouching this Disease which we call the *Glanders*, My Masters, the old Farriers and I, are at much difference: for some of them do hold opinion, that it is an inflammation of the Kernels, which lie on each side of the Throat, underneath the Roots of the Tongue near the swallowing place; and their reason is, that because those Kernels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandula*, that thence we borrow this word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a Horse which is troubled with this Disease, hath great Kernels underneath his Jaws, easie



easie to be felt, paining him so, that he cannot eat, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling upon the Jaw Bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot. But both these Opinions I hold in part erroneous: For although our old Farriers might (according to the Custom of our Nation, which loveth imitation of Strangers) borrow this word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandula*; yet these Inflammations under the Chaps of the Tongue Roots, is that Disease which we call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereas they could call the *Strangle*, the *Quinsie*, or *Squinnancy*, there is no such matter, neither hath an Horse any such Disease, except they will call the *Vives* by that name, which is far more fitter for the application.

Now for the *Glanders*, you shall understand that it is a Running Imposthume, engendred either by cold, or by Famine, or by long Thirst, or by eating corrupt or musty meat, or by being kept in Unfavoury Places, or is taken by standing with infected *Horses*. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt *Humours*, which runneth at the Nose; or may be said to be a flux of Rheum, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the Nostrils: the cause being, the Wideness of the passage, so that the Cold liberally entring into the Brain, bindeth it and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the humours there to distill; which descending to the spiritual parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the Horse, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principal parts; or else by congealing there by little and little, over-runne the natural heat. Now that distillation, that by cold cometh from the Brain and breedeth this *Glanders*, is of three sorts. The first is a cold, which maketh indigested Humours to pass from the Brain, which cometh by taking off the Saddle suddenly when the horse is hot, or by letting him drink before he be inwardly cooled, or before his Body be dried: This distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells not, and is easie to be cured; for it is no inward Ulcer, but only abundance of Humour, the substance whereof is gross and white. The second is a great cold ingendred and congealed, causing *Humours* something thin and slimy, of the colour of *Marrow*, or the White of an Egg: this descendeth to the Throat, and lyeth there till it be discharged through the *Nostrils*. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured; if the Colour thereof be yellow like a Bean, then is the *Glanders* most desperate, and lyeth also in his Throat,



Throat : but if it be a brown or darkish yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the Disease. To these three distillations, there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is *Dark, Thin, and Reddish*, like little sparks of blood, but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the Mourning of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he shall take this Cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issueth from the Horses Nose : For if the humour be clear and transparent, so that it may be seen through, then it is not greatly hurtful, or of much moment. If it be White it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it be yellow, separate him from the Sound Horses, for he is infectious yet to be cured : If that Yellow be mixed with blood, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the matter stink, or have lost the smell ; The first is the sign of an Ulcer, the latter of Death : Also whether he cougheth with straightness in his Chest or no ; for that also is a sign of an inward Ulcer, and that the Disease is past Cure. Now for the Cure of these three Distillations, which are all that make up a compleat Glanders, you shall understand, that when the Glanders is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and warm keeping : but if it be of the second sort, you shall give him warm Mashies of Malt and Water and perfume his Head well, and purge it by sneezing ; and into his Mashies you shall put Fennel seed bruised. Others will take a pint of white-Wine, and a handful of Soot, a quart of Milk, and two heads of Garlick bruised ; brew them together, and give it the Horse to drink. Others will take a pottle of Urine, a handful of Bay-Salt, and a good quantity of brown Sugar-candy, boyl it to a quart ; then add Licoras and Anniseeds beaten to fine powder, and give it luke-warm to Drink. Others will take Lard, or Swines Grease and boyl it in Water : Then take the Fat from the Water, and mingle it with a little Oyl Olive, and a good quantity of Urine, and half as much white-Wine, give a quart, of this lukewarm to drink. Others use to give of Ale a quart of grated bread one Ounce and an half, the yolks of two Eggs, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cardamomum, Spikenard, or Lavender, Galingal, and Honey, of each a pretty quantity, mix these together, and give it to Drink. Now if the Distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst



worst of the three, you shall take half a pound of Swines Blood, and melt it at the fire, add to it a pound of the juice of Beets, with three Ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and add another Ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keep this Oyntment, and anoint therewith two very long Feathers or little Rods, lapt with linnen about, and so anointed, put them into his Nostrils, and after rubbing them up and down, tye them to the nose-band of the Bridle, and walk him abroad: Do thus three days together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the Eye-fore. Others use to take a quart of Ale, an half penny worth of long Power, a little Brimstone, a penny worth of *Galungal*, two penny worth of Spikenard of *Spain*, two penny weight of Saffron brayed, with two Ounces of Butter boyled in the Ale: When it is luke-warm, cast the Horse, and holding up his head, pour it equally into his Nostrils; then holding his Nostrils close, till his Eyes stare, and that he sweate; which done, give him Bayes and Ale to drink; then let him rise, and set him up warm; feeding him with warm Grains and Salt, or with sweet Mashies; but the best is, if the Weather be warm, to let him run abroad at Grass. Other Farriers use to dissolve in Vinegar three Drams of Mustard-seed, and as much *Euforbium*; then to give him one Dram at his Nostrils every day before he drink. Others use to take of *Myrrh*, *Indie*, *Illyrica*, seeds of Smallage, *Aristolochia*, of each three Ounces, *Salniter*, *Brimstone*, of each five Ounces, Bayes two Ounces, Saffron one Ounce; make this into Powder, and when you give it, give part in Pills, made with Paste and Wine, and part by the Nostrils with strong Ale: do this for the space of three days at the least. Others use to take of Malmsey a pint, of strong Ale a pint, of *Aqua-vitæ* four spoonfuls, and brew them together, with a pretty quantity of Anniseeds, Licoras, Elicampane Roots, long Pepper, Garlick, and three or four new laid Eggs, and a little Butter; give this luke-warm to Drink; then walk him abroad, and set him up warm; do this every other day for a Week together. Others use to take stale Urine that hath stood three or four days, and ten Garlick heads, and seething them together, give it the Horse to Drink. Others use to take Swines grease well clarified, and as much Oyl de Bay as a Walnut, and give it the Horse to drink, with fair Water luke-warm.

But better than all these it is, to take of Elicampane, Anniseeds, and Licoras, of each one penny worth, boyl them in three pints of Ale



Ale or Beer till one pint be consumed, then add unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet Oyl, and give it him to drink luke-warm, then with a quill blow *Enforbium* up into his Nostrils, and within three days after, take of Mustard four spoonful, Vinegar a pint, Butter three Ounces, boyl them together, then add thereunto half an Ounce of Pepper, and give it the Horse luke-warm to drink; use this Medicine a Fortnight. Others use to take a handful of pill'd Garlick and boyl it in a quart of Milk till a pint be consumed, then add thereto two Ounces of sweet Butter, and a pint of strong Ale; stir them well together, and give it the Horse fasting to drink luke-warm, which done, Ride him a little up and down, and use this the space of nine days.

Thus I have plainly shewed you the Opinion and Practice of all the best *Farriers* both of this Kingdom and of others, and they be all very good and effectual; yet for mine own part, that which I have found ever the best in my practice, is, if the Disease be of the first or second sort, to give the Horse to drink fasting every morning for a fortnight together, a pint of strong Ale, and five spoonful of the Oyl of Oats, the making of which Oyl, you shall read in a particular Chapter following; but if the Disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate, you shall then take of Tanners ouse a pint, and of new Milk a pint, and of Oyl Olive half a pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlick bruised, and a little Turmeric, mix these well together, and give it the Horse to drink: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will help if any help be to be had,

#### C H A P. XLIV.

*Two most certain and lately found out Medicines, which will without all fail Cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impossible.*

**I**F your Horses could be come to the worst Glanders, which is a continual running at the Nose, and hath run by the space of divers Months so that your Farriers can do you no good; you shall then take better than two handful of the White Cankerous Moss which grows upon an old Oken pale, and boyl it in two quarts of Milk, till one quart be almost consumed; then strain it, and squeeze the moss well, which done, give it the Horse luke-warm to drink: then take the Goose-feathers, Brimstone, and Butter, in such manner as is set down in the new Additions for the Cold, or Poze in a Horses head, before



fore and having put them up into his Nostrils, Ride him forth an hour or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the Feathers, and keep his Body warm. This Disease you shall understand cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leisure; therefore you must continue your Medicine as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at least thrice a Week, if it be for four or five months together, and be assured in the end it will yield your desire.

Now the second certain and well approved Medicine is, to take Elicampane Roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap: Then with a horn give them to the Horse, together with the Milk luke-warm, being no more than will make the Roots liquid: then having anointed your Goose-feathers, put them up into his Nostrils, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

## C H A P. XLV.

*Of the Mourning of the Chine.*

**T**He Disease which we call the *Mourning of the Chine*, or as some Farriers term it, the *moist Malady*, is that fourth sort of corrupt Distillation from the Brain, of which we have spoken in the Chapter before, shewing from whence it proceeds, and the signs thereof: *to wit*, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his Nostrils will be dark, thin, and reddish, with little streaks of Blood in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this Disease is a foul Consumption of the Liver, and I do not derogate from that opinion: For I have found the Liver wasted in those Horses which I have opened upon this Disease: And this Consumption proceeds from a Cold, which after grows to a Poze, then to a Glanders, and lastly to this Mourning of the Chine.

The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the eldest Farriers, is, to take clear Water, and that Honey which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, and pour it into his Nostrils each Morning, the space of three days: and if that help not, then give him to drink every day, or once in two days at the least, a quart of old Wine, mingled with some of the sovereign Medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almost



of every *Apothecary*. Others use to take *Garlick*, *Houslick*, and *Chervil*, and stamping them together, thrust it up into the Horses Nostrils.

Others use to let the Horse fast all night, then take a pint and an half of Milk, three heads of *Garlick* pill'd and stamped, boyl them to the half, and give it the Horse, some at the Mouth and some at the Nose, then Gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him; then gallop him half a mile, then rest him again: thus do twice or thrice together, then set him up vvarm, and give him no Water till it be high-noon; then give him a sweet Mash: Use this Cure at least three days together, Others use to take half a peck of Oats, and boyl them in Running Water till half be consumed, then put them into a Bag, and lay them very hot upon the Navel place of his Back, and there let it lye thirty hours, using thus to do three or four times at least. Others use to take *Wormwood*, *Peucedanum*, and *Centory*, of each a like quantity: boyl them in Wine, then strain them, and pour thereof many times into his Nostrils, especially in that vvhich most runneth. Others use to take Hare hound, Licoras, and Anniseeds, beaten to powder; then vvith sweet Butter to make Pills thereof, and give them fasting to the Horse. Others use to take Wheat-flower, Anniseeds, and Licoras stamped in a Mortar, five or six Cloves of *Garlick* bruised; mix all these together, and make a past of them; then make it into Pills as beg as Wall-nuts, and taking out the Horses tongue, cast the Balls down the Horses throat three or four at a time, then give him two newv laid Egg-shells and all after them.

Now after all these, the best and most approved Medicine, is, to take as much of the middle green bark of an Elder Tree growing on the Water side, as vvill fill a reasonable Vessel, putting thereunto as much running Water as the Vessel vvill hold, and let it boyl till half be consumed, and then fill up the Vessel again vvith Water, continuing so to do three several times together; and at the last time vvhen the one half is consumed, take it from the fire, and strain it exceedingly through a Linnen cloath; then to that decoction add at least a third part of the Oyl of Oats, or for vvant of that, of Oyl Olive, or of Hogs grease, or sweet Butter; and being vvarmed again, take a quart thereof, and give it the Horse to drink, one hornful at his Mouth, and another at his Nostrils, especially that vvhich casteth out the matter. And in any case, let the Horse be fasting vvhen he taketh this Medicine; for it not only cureth this, but any sickness



sickness proceeding from any Cold whatsoever. It shall be also good to use to his Body some wholesome Friction, and to his head some wholesome Bath, of which Baths you shall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his Diet, his Meat would be sodden Barley, and sweet Hay, and his Drink warm Water, or Mashies: but if it be in the Summer-season, then it is best to let him run at grass only.

## C H A P. XLVI.

*A most Rare and Certain approved Medicine, to Cure any High Running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all Men incurable.*

**T**HIS Disease to my Knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdom, can tell how to cure; for it comes not to the extremity, till the Horse have run at his Nose a year or more; and have at the Roots of his Tongue, a hard lump gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine own part, it is well known I have cured many with this Medicine only. Take of *Auripigmentum* and *Tussilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them four Drams: then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paste, then make of it little Cakes, or Troches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them on a Chafing dish of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the smoak may come out only at the end thereof, and so without any loss ascend up into the Horses head through his Nostrils; then Ride the Horse till he begin to sweat; do this once every Morning before water, till the running be stopt, which will be in a very short space, considering the greatness of the Disease.

## C H A P. XLVII.

*Of the Cough.*

**C**oughing is a Motion of the Lungs, raised naturally from his Expulsive Power, to cast out the hurtful cause, as Neesing is the Motion of the Brain. Now of Coughs, there be some outward and some inward: those are said to be outward, which proceed of outward causes, as when a Horse doth Eat or Drink too greedily, so that his Meat goeth the wrong Way, or When he Licketh up a Feather,

or



or eateth dusty or sharp-bearded straw, and such like, which tickling his Throat, causeth him to cough; those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speak more hereafter. Now of these outward Coughs, they may proceed from the corruption of the Air, which if it do, you shall give him half an Ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of Sack, and it will help. It may also proceed from dust, and then you must wash it down by pouring into his Nostrils Ale and Oyl mingled together. It may come by eating sharp and sowre things; and then you must put down his Throat Pills of sweet Butter, whose softness will help him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken Cold, and then you shall take the whites and yolks of two Eggs, three Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, two handful of Bean Flower; one Ounce of Fenugreek, mix them with a pint of old Malmsey, and give it the Horse to drink three days together: or else take Tarr and fresh Butter, mix them together, and give Pills thereof to the Horse four times in seven days: that is, the first, the third, the fifth, and the seventh day. There be others which use to take a Gallon of fair water, and make it ready to see the; then put thereto a peck of ground Malt, with two handful of Box leaves chopt small, and a little Groundsel, mix them all together, and give him every morning and evening a pint for a week together. If to the Box leaves you add Oats and Bettony, it is not amiss so you keep the Horse warm. Others use to give the Horse a pint of Swines blood warm. Others use to boyl in a Gallon of Water one pound of Fenugreek, then straining it, give the Water Morning and Evening by a pint at a time to drink, then drying his Fenugreek, give it the Horse with his Provender. Others use for all manner of Coughs, to take a quartern of White Currants, and as much clarified Honey, two Ounces of sweet Marjoram, with old fresh Grease, and a head of Garlick; melt that which is to be molten, and pun that which is to be beaten; mix them together, and give the Horse a pint thereof, better than three Mornings together. Others use to give the Horse the gut of a young Pullet dipt in Honey, and being warm; and certainly, there is not any of these Medicines, but are most Sovereign and well approved. Now whereas some Farriers use to thrust down the Throat of the Horse a Willow Wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and anointed all over with Honey, (I for my part) do not like it; for it both torments the Horse, more than there is occasion, and doth but only go about to take



take away that which is gone in the struggling, before the Medicine can be used, for it is only for a Cough, which cometh by a Feather, or some such like matter.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Of the inward, or wet Cough.*

**T**Ouching inward Coughs, which are gotten and engendred by Colds and Rheumes of long continuance, being not only dangerous, but sometimes mortal, you shall understand, that they are divided into two kinds, the one wet, the other dry; the Wet cold proceedeth from cold causes taken after great heat; which heat dissolving humours, those humours being again congealed, do presently cause Obstructions and stopping of the Lungs. Now the signs to know this Wet Cough, is, the Horse will ever after his Coughing, cast out either water or matter out of his Nostrils, or champ or chaw with his Teeth the Thick matter which he casteth out of his Throat, as you shall easily perceive, if you heedfully note him; he will also Cough often without intermission, and when he Cougheth, he will not much bow down his head, nor abstain from his meat: and when he drinketh, you shall see some of his Water to issue out at his Nostrils. The Cure is, first to keep him exceeding warm; then forasmuch as it proceedeth from cold causes, you shall give him hot drinks, and Spices, as Sack, or strong Ale brewed with Cinnamon, Ginger, Cloves, Treacle, long Pepper, and either Swines grease, Sallet Oyl, or sweet Butter; for you shall know, that all cold Causes are cured with Medicines that open and warm; and the hot vvith such as cleanse and cool. Some use to take a pretty quantity of *Benjamine*, and the yolk of an Egg, vvich being vvell mixt together, and put into an Egg-shel cast all down into the Horses throat, and then moderately Ride him up and down for more than a quarter of an hour: And do this three or four Mornings together. Others use to keep him Warm, and then to give him this Drink. Take of Barley one peck, and boyl it in two or three Gallons of running Water, till the Barley burst, together vvith bruised Licoras, Anniseeds, and Raisons, of each a pound; then strain it, and to that Liquor put of Honey a pint, and a quartern of Sugar-candy, and keep it close in a pot to serve the Horse therewith four several Mornings, and cast not away the Barley, nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot every day to perfume  
the



the Horſe withal in a cloſe Bag; and if he eat of it, it is ſo much the better; and after this, you ſhall give the Horſe ſome moderate Exerciſe; and for his Diet, let him drink no cold Water till his Cough abate, and as it leſſeneth, ſo let the Water be the leſs warmed.

Now for mine own part, though all theſe Receits be exceeding good, and very well approved, yet in this caſe, thus have been and ever ſhall be my practice; if I found either by the heavineſs of the Horſes head, or by the ratling of his Noſtrils, that the Cough proceeded moſt from the ſtopping of his Head, I would only give him four or five mornings together, three or four good round Pills of Butter and Garlick, (well knodden together) faſting, then Ride him moderately an hour after; but if I found that the ſickneſs remained in the Cheſt or Breſt of the Horſe, then I would give him twice in four days a pint of Sack, half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and two Ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made luke-warm, and then Ride him half an hour after, and let him up warm, ſuffering him to drink no cold Water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all Wet Coughs, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any ſuch moiſt Diſeaſe, ſee the new Additions for the *Mourning of the Chine*, and it is a certain Cure.

#### C H A P. XLIX.

##### *Of the Dry Cough.*

**T**His Diſeaſe which we call the dry Cough, is a groſs and tough Humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which ſtoppeth the Wind-pipes, ſo that the Horſe can hardly draw his Breath. It doth proceed by ill Government, from the Rheume, which diſtilleth from the head, falleth down to the Breſt, and there inforceth the Horſe to ſtrive to caſt it out.

The eſpecial ſigne to know it, is, by eating hot Meats, as Bread that is ſpiced, Straw dry, Hay, or ſuch like, his extremity of Coughing will increaſe, by eating cold and moiſt Meats, as Graſs, Sorage, Grains, and ſuch like, it will abate and be the leſs: he cougheth ſeldom, yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently, long time together, and drily, with a hollow ſound from his Cheſt: he alſo boweth his head down to the ground, and forſaketh his meat whiſt he



he Cougheth, yet never casteth forth any thing either at his Mouth or Nostrils.

This Cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time is incurable: For it will grow to the Purfick or broken-winded altogether. The cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, that forasmuch as it proceedeth from hot humours, therefore you shall perfume his head with cold Simples, as Camomile, Mellilot, Licoras, dried red Roses and Camphire boyled in water, and the Fume made to pass up into his mouth and Nostrils.

Others use to take a close earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the strongest Vinegar, and four Eggs, shells and all, unbroken and four heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and set the pot being very close covered in a warm dunghill or a horse mixen, and there let it stand 24 hours, then take it forth and open it, and take out the Eggs which will be as soft as silk, and lay them by until you have strained the Vinegar and Garlick through a linnen Cloath: then put to that Liquor a quartern of Honey, and half a quartern of Sugar-candy, and two ounces of Licoras, and two ounces of Anni-seed beaten all into fine powder, and then the horse having fasted all the night early in the morning, about seven or eight a Clock, open the horses mouth with a drench-staff and a Cord, and first cast down his throat one of the Eggs, and then presently after it a Horn full of the aforesaid drink, being made luke-warm: then cast in another Egg, and another Hornful: and thus do till he hath swallowed up all the Eggs, or three at the least; then bridle him and cover him warmer than he was before, and set him up in the Stable, tying him to the bare Rack for the space of two hours: then unbridle him, and give him either some Oats, Hay, or Grass: yet in any case give him no Hay, until it hath been somewhat sprinkled with water: For there is no greater enemy to a dry cough than dry Hay, dry Straw, or Chaff; then let him have cold water the space of nine days. Now if you chance the first morning to leave an Egg untaken, you shall not fail to give it him, and the remainder of the drink the Morning following. If you find by this practice that the Cough weareth not away, you shall then purge his head with Pills, of which you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations: after his Pills received, you shall let him fast three hours, standing warm cloathed and littered in the Stable: you shall also now and then give him a warm Mash, and once a day trot him moderately abroad.



There be other Farriers which for this dry Cough take only the Herb called Lyons Foot, Ladies Mantle, Spurge, and Smallage, of each a like quantity, seeth them in a quart of old Wine, or a quart of running Water till some part be consumed, and give it the horse to drink; if instead of the herbs themselves, you give the juice of the herbs in Wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currants, and as much honey, two ounces of Marjoram, one ounce of penyrial, with five pound of fresh Grease, and nine heads of Garlick, beat that which is to be beaten, and melt the rest; give this in four or five days like pills dipt in honey. Others use to take Myrrh, Opoponax, Iris, Ilerica, and Galbanum, of each two ounces, of red Storax three ounces, of Turpentine four ounces, of Henbane half an ounce, of Opium half an ounce, beat them to fine powder, and give two or three spoonful with a pint of old Wine, or a quart of Ale.

Others use to take forty grains of Pepper, four or five roots of radish, four heads of Garlick, and five ounces of sweet Butter; stamp them all well together, and give every day a ball of it to the horse for a week together, making him fast two hours after his taking of it: and surely it is a most excellent approved Medicine for any old over-grown cold, or Cough. Other Farriers use to take of oyl de Bay and sweet Butter, of each half a pound, Garlick one pound, beat it together unpilled, and being well beaten with a pestle of Wood, add your oyl and butter unto it: then having made it unto Balls, with a little Wheat-flower, give your horse every morning for a week and more three or four balls as big as Walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meat three hours, and from drink till it be night, provided that still his Drink be warm, and his meat, if it possible may be, Grafs or Hay sprinkled with water: as for his Provender, it would be Oats and Fenugreek sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a fort-nights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another week give him again the same Physick and Diet; but truly for my own part, I have never found it to fail in any horse whatsoever; yet I will wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward Medicines, except they be well assured that the cold hath been long, and that the cough is dangerous.



## C H A P. L.

*Two Excellent true and well approved Medicines for any Co'd, dry Cough, shortness of Breath, purpsiness or Broken-winded.*

**T**HE first is, take of Tarr three spoonful, of Sweet Butter as much, beat and work them well together with the fine powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugar-Candy, till it be brought to a hard paste; then make it in three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and so give them to the Horse, and warm him with Riding both before and after he hath received the pills, and be assured that he be fasting when he takes it, and fast at least two hours after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a piece four fingers long, and almost two fingers thick both ways; then with your knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many Cloves of garlick as you can conveniently get into it, then rolling it in the powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, Sugar-candy and Brimstone, all equally mixt together, give it your horse fasting in a morning at least twice a week continually, and ride him after it, and be sure that all the Hay he eats be finely sprinkled with water.

## C H A P. LI.

*The best of all other Medicines for a dry-Cough never before mentioned, nor revealed.*

**T**AKE of the Sirrup of Colts-foot two ounces, of the powder of Elicampane, of Anniseeds, and of Licoras, of each half an ounce, of Sugar-candy divided into two parts, two ounces, then with sweet Butter work the Sirrup and the powders, and one part of the Sugar-candy into a stiff-paste, and thereof make Pills or small Balls, and role them in the other part of the Sugar-candy, and so give it to the Horse fasting, and exercise him gently an hour after it: and thus do for divers mornings till you find amendment.



## CHAP. LII.

*Of the Frettized, Broken, and Rotten Lungs.*

**C**oughs do many times proceed from the corruption and putrefaction of the Lungs, gotten either by some extream Cold, Running or Leaping, or by over-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the Lungs being inclosed in a very thin film, they are therefore the much sooner broken; and if such a breach be made, without instant cure, they begin to inflame and Aposthume, oppressing and sickning the whole Lungs. Now the signs to know this disease, is, the horses flanks will beat when he Cougheth, and the slower they beat, the more old and dangerous is the disease: He will also draw his wind short, and by little at once: he will groan much, be fearful and loath to Cough; and often turn his head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never cough but he will bring up something which he will champ in his mouth after. The Cure is, give him two or three ounces of Hogs-grease, and two or three spoonful of Diapente brewed in a quart of Barly-water, wherein Currants have been foddren. Other Farriers use to take a pound of Licoras, and being scraped and sliced, to steep it in a quart of water four and twenty hours; then to strain it, then to boyl three or four ounces of Currants in it, and so give it the horse to drink and keep him fasting three or four hours after. There be other Farriers which use to take of Fenugreek and Linseed, of each half a pound, of Gum dragant, of Mastick, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of fitch-flower, of each one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warm water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two ounces of the Oyl of Roses, and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease be new it will certainly heal; if it be never so old it will assuredly ease him, but in any case let him drink no cold Water: And for his food, Grass is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best Cure) to take of Malmsey a pint, of Honey three spoonfuls, mix them together, then take of Myrrh, of Saffron, of Cassia and Cinnamon, of each a like quantity, beat them to a fine powder, and give two spoonfuls thereof in the Wine to drink, do this at least a fort-night together, and it is certain it will help these frettized and broken Lungs, but for the putrified and rotten Lungs, we will speak more in this next Chapter.

CHAP.



## CHAP. LIII.

*Of the Putrefied or Rotten Lungs.*

**T**HIS disease of Rotten and Exulcerate Lungs, you shall know by these signs : he will cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his Coughing he will cast little Reddish lumps out of his Mouth, he will decay much in his flesh, and yet eat his Meat with more greediness than when he was sound : And when he cougheth, he will cough with more ease and clearness, than if his Lungs were but only broken. The cure whereof, according to the practise of our ordinary English Farriers, is, to give the horse divers Mornings together a pint of strong Vinegar warm, or else as much of mans Urine, with half so much Hogg-grease brewed warm together:

But the more antient Farriers take a good quantity of the juice of Purslain mixt with the oyl of Roses, adding thereunto a little Tragacanthum, which hath before been laid to steep in Goats milk, or for want thereof in Barly, or Oaten Milk strain'd from the Corn, and give him a Pint thereof every morning for seven days together. This Medicine is but only to ripen and break the Impostume, which you shall know if it hath done, because when the sore is broken, his breath will stink exceedingly : Then shall you give him the other seven days this drink. Take the Root called Castus, two ounces, and of Cassia, or Cinamon, three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raisins, and give it him to drink, with a pint of Malmsey. Others use to take of Frankincense and Aristolochia, of each 2 ounces, beaten into fine powder, and give the Horse two or three Spoonfuls thereof with a pint of Malmsey. Others take of unburnt Brimstone two ounces, of Aristolochia one ounce and a half beaten to powder, and give it the Horse with a pint of Malmsey.

## CHAP. LIV.

*Of shortness of Breath, or Purpsiness.*

**T**HIS disease of short Breath or Purpsiness, may come two several ways, that is, naturally, or accidentally : Naturally, as by the straightness of his Conduits, which convey his Breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed up with fat, force stoppings and obstructions in his Wind-pipe, and thereby  
make



make his Lungs labour and work painfully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after drinking, or upon full stomach, by which humors are compelled to descend down into the Throat and Lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the breath. The signs of this disease are continual panting and heaving of his body without any Coughing, great heat of breath at his nostrils and a squeezing or drawing in of his nose when he breatheth; besides a coveting to hold out his head whilst he fetcheth his wind. The cure, according to the opinion of some of our best Farriers, is, to give him in his Provender, the Kirnels of Grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must give them plentifully. The warm blood of a sucking Pigg is excellent good also. Other Farriers use to take Venus hair, Ireos, Ash-keys, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raisins, of each a dram and a half: Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle-seed, Aristolochia, and Colloquintida, of each two drams, Algaritium one dram and a half, Honey two pound, dissolve them with water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, and give him one pint every Morning for three or four Mornings. Others use to take Molline or Long-wort, and make a powder thereof and give two spoonfuls thereof with a pint of running water, or else powder of Gentian, in the afore-said manner, and do it for divers Mornings.

Others use to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, grains of Paradise, of each three drams, Carraway-seed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and half an ounce of Licoras; beat them all into fine powder, then put two or three spoonfuls thereof to a pint of white-wine and the yolks of four Eggs, and give it the horse to drink; then tye his head up high to the Rack for an hour after: that done, either ride him, or Walk him up and down gently, and keep him fasting four or five hours after at the least, the next day turn him to grass, and he will do well. There be others which use to let the Horse blood in the Neck-vein, and then give him this drink: Take of Wine and Oyl, of each a pint, of Frankincense half an ounce, and of the juice of Hare-hound half a pint, mix them well together and give him to drink.

Others use to give him only somewhat more than a pint of Honey, Hoggs Grease and Butter molten together, and let him drink it luke-warm. Eggs made soft in Vinegar, as is shewed in the Chapter of the dry Cough, is Excellent for this shortness of breath, so you give the Eggs increasing, that is, the first day one, the second day three



three, and the third five: and withal, to pour a little Oyl and Wine into his Nostrils is very good also. There be other Farriers which use to take a Snake, and cut off her head and tail, and then take out the guts and entrails, boyl the rest in Water till the bone part from the flesh: then cast the bone away, and give every Third day of this decoction more than a pint, till you have spent three Snakes and this is excellent good for the dry cough also.

Now the last and best Medicine for this shortness of breath, (for indeed in this Case I do not affect much Physicking) is only to take Anniseeds, Licoras, and Sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder, and take four spoonfuls thereof, and brew it well with a pint of White-wine, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl: and use this ever after your horses travel, and a day before he is travelled.

## CHAP. LV.

*Of the Broken winded, Pur-sick Horse.*

**T**HIS Disease of Broken-winded, I have ever since I first began to know either Horse or Horse leach-craft, very much disputed with my self: and for many years did constantly hold (as I still do) that in truth there is no such disease; only in this I found by daily experience, that by over-hasty or sudden running of a horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the Stable with no exercise and foul Food, that thereby gross and thick humours may be drawn down into the horses body so abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of his Lungs, and stopping up the wind-pipes, the Wind may be so kept in, that it may only have its resort backward, and not upward, filling the guts, and taking from the Body great part of his strength and Liveli-hood: which if from the corruption of our old inventions, we call broken-winded then I must needs confess, that I have seen many broken-winded Horses. The signs of which disease are these, much and violent beating of his flanks, especially drawing up of his belly upward, great opening and raising of his Nostrils, and a continual swift going to and fro of his Tuel: besides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow cough. The cure, I must needs say in so great an extremity, (for it is the worst of all the evils of the Lungs, which are before spoken of) is most desperate, but the preservations and helps both to continue the horses health and his daily service, are very many



many, as namely, (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) to purge your Horse by giving him this drink. Take of Maiden-hair, Ireos, Ash, Licoras, Fenugreek, Basnis, of each half an ounce, of Cardanum, Pepper, bitter Almonds, borage, of each two ounces, of Nettle-seed, and of Aristolochia, of each two ounces, boyl them all together in a sufficient quantity of water, and in that Decoction dissolve half an ounce of Agarick, and two ounces of Colloquintida, together with two pound of Honey, and give him a pint and a half of this at a time, for at least a week together; and if this Medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you shall make it thin with Water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden; and some Farriers also besides this Medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the Flanks of the Horse to restrain their beating, and slit the horses Nostrils to give the wind more liberty, but I do not affect either the one or the other: The best diet for a horse in this case, is Grass in Summer, and Hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There be other Farriers, which for this infirmity hold, that to give the Horse three or four days together sodden Wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet Wine, or other good Wine, mixt with Licoras Water, is a certain remedy. There be other Farriers, which for this Disease take the guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warm Oven till they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them: then give your horse two or three spoonfuls thereof with a pint of Wine or strong Ale: Then the rest mixt with Anniseeds, Licoras, and sweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give the Horse two or three after his Drink: and so let him fast at least two hours after. Now when at any time you give him any Provender, be sure to wash it in Ale, or Beer; then take Cummin, Anniseeds, Licoras, and Century, of each a just quantity, make them being mixt together into fine powder, and strew two spoonfuls thereof upon the Provender being wet. This Physick must be used for a fortnight at least. Others use to take of Cloves and Nutmegs three drams, of Galingale and Cardamomum three drams, of Soot, of Bay-seeds, and Cummin of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white-Wine being well tempered with a little Saffron, then put to so many Yolks of Eggs as may countervail the other quantity: then mix them with water wherein Licoras hath been sodden, making it so thin that the Horse may drink it, and after he hath drank the quantity of a pint and a half of this drink, tye up his head to the rack, and let him

so



so stand at least an hour after, that the drink may descend unto his Guts, then walk him gently abroad that the Medicine may work; and in any case give him no water for the space of four and twenty hours after: The next Morning give him some Grasse to eat, and the branches of Willows or Sallow, which will cool the heat of the Potion.

Now there be other Farriers which take of *Pances*, *Long-wort*, *Maiden-hair*, the crops of *Nettles*, *Carduus Benedictus*, herb *Fluetin*, the roots of *Dragonus* bruised, the roots of *Elicampane* bruised, of *Water-hemp*, of *Penyryal*, of *Light-wort*, of *Angelica*, of each of these a good handful, or so many of these as you can conveniently get: bruise them, and lay them all night in two or three Gallons of water, and give it a boylin the Morning, and let the Horse drink thereof as much luke-warm as he will, then after this Drink, give him a pretty quantity of sodden wheat; use this diet for a week or more at the least; and then if the Season be fit, put him to Grasse. This Cure is of great Reputation, and thought to help when all other fail: for mine own part, I wish every man to judge it by the practice.

There be others, which only for nine or ten dayes together, will give their horse water, wherein *Licoras* hath been sodden, mixt with Wine, and hold it a most soveraign help.

There be others, which will only give new Milk from the Cow: but I despair of that Cure, because Milk being only *Flegmatick*, *Flegm* is the only substance of this Disease. Other Farriers use to keep the Horse fasting four and twenty hours, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of *Fenugreek*, half a quarter of Bayes, of the green bark of Elder trees, of Sugar-candy, of *Water-crelles*, of red Mints, of red Fennel, or Haw-tree leaves, and of *Primrose* leaves, of each half an ounce, the whites of six Eggs; beat these in a Mortar and seeth them in the Ale, give it him to drink, then let him fast after it two hours; Then give him meat and Provender enough, yet but a little drink. Others use to give him wet Hay, and moderate Travel: Then take twenty Eggs, steep them in Vinegar four and twenty hours, giving the Horse two every morning, and after the Eggs are spent, a pottle of new Milk from the Cow.

Now there be other Farriers, which only will dissolve in Vinegar fifteen Eggs, and give the horse the first day three, the second day five, and the third day seven, and hold it a good help. Others will



take an ounce of Frankincense, two ounces of Brimstone, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and half a pint of Honey. Others will take Sal Nitre, burnt with the powder of Pitch and give it with the same quantity of Wine and Honey. Others will only give Sal Nitre mingled with his meat, provided always, that in every Cure you keep your horse from cold and labour, and daily chafe his head with Oyl and Wine. But of this, look in the last new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus ☞.

## CHAP. LVI.

*Of the dry Malady or Consumption.*

**T**His disease of the dry Malady, or as the Antient Farriers term it, a general Consumption, is nothing but a meer Exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a Cankorous fretting and gnawing Humour ingendred by cold and Surfeit, which descending from the head, sickneth and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant Farriers will call it the mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived, that the mourning of the Chine doth ever cast some filthy Matter from the Nose, and the dry Malady never casteth forth any thing.

The signs to know this dry Malady or Consumption, are these: His flesh, and strong estate of body will consume and waste away, the belly will be gaunt, his back-bone hid, and his skin so stretched or shrunk up, that if you strike on him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a Tabor: his hair will hardly shed, and either he will utterly deny his Meat, or the meat he eateth will not digest, prosper or breed any flesh on his Body; he will offer to Cough, but cannot except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten small bones; and truly, according to the opinion of others, so I find by mine own practice of fifty years, that it is incurable, yet that a horse may be long preserved to do much service, I have found it by these helps: First, to purge his head with such Fumes and Pills, as are good for the Glanders, which you may find in the Chapter of Purgations, then give him Colewarts small chopt with his Provender, and now and then the blood of a sucking Pig warm.

There be other well experienced Men, that instead of the blood, will give either the juyce of Leeks mixt with Oyl and Wine, or else Wine and Frankincense, or Sallet oyl and the juyce of Rue mixt together:



gether ; but in my conceit, the best Cure, is, to purge his Body clean with comfortable and gentle purges, and then to be suffered to run at grafs, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no question, but he must necessarily end or mend, for languish long he cannot.

## CHAP. LVII.

*Of the Consumption of the Flesh.*

**T**HIS disease which we call the Consumption of the Flesh, is an unnatural or general dislike, or falling away of the whole body, (or, as we term it,) the wasting of the flesh, which proceedeth from divers grounds: as namely, from inward Surfeits, either by naughty Food, or ill Diet, or from unclean, moist and stinking Lodging, but especially from disorderly Labour, as by taking great and suddain Colds after violent heat, or such like; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signs whereof are these: first, an unnatural and causeless leanness, a dry and hard skin cleaving fast to his sides, want of Stomach or Appetite to his Meat, a falling away of his Fillets, and a general Consumption both of his Buttocks and shoulders: The Cure whereof, according to the Antients, is, to take a Sheeps Head unflayed, and boyl it in a Gallon and a half of Ale, or running water, until the flesh be consumed from the Bones; then strain it through a cloath, and put thereto of Sugar half a pound, of Cinnamon one ounce, of Conserve of Roses, of Barbaries, and of Cherries, of each one ounce; mingle them together, and give the Horse every morning a quart thereof luke-warm, till two Sheeps-heads be spent; and after every time he drinketh, let him be gently walked or ridden up and down according to his strength, that is, if the weather be warm, abroad, if it be cold and windy, then in the Stable, or some close house, suffering him neither to eat nor Drink for two hours after his Medicine; and from cold water you shall keep him the space of fifteen dayes. Now for his ordinary Food or Provender, you shall repute that best which he eateth best, whatsoever it be; and that you shall give him by little and little, and not any gross or great quantity at once, because the abundance and glut of Food taketh away both the Appetite and Nutriment which should proceed from wholesome Feeding.



## CHAP. LVIII.

*How to make a lean Horse fat.*

BESIDES this general Consumption of a Horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from sickness; there is also another Consumption, or want of flesh, which proceedeth from Neshness, Tenderness, Freeness of Spirit, and the Climate under which the Horse is bred: as namely; when a Horse that is bred in a warm Climate comes to live in a cold; or when a Horse that is bred upon a fruitful and rich Soil, comes to live in a Barren and dry place. In any of these cases, the Horse will be lean without any apparent sign of grief or disease, which to recover, there be many Receipts and Medicines, as namely; the Ancient Farriers did use when a horse either grew lean without sickness or wound, or any known distemperature, to take a quarter of a peck of Beans, and boyl them in two gallons of Water till they swell or burst, then to mix with them a peck of Wheat Bran, and so to give it the horse in manner of a Mash, or instead of Provender: for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Coleworts, and having sodden them, mix them with Wheat Bran, and Salt, and give them instead of Provender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoises being well sodden, (their Heads, Tails, Bones, and Feet being rejected) and giving it the Horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly; or if you mix the flesh of the Tortoise so sodden with your Horses provender, that is good also. But as the simples are Italian, and not English, so I for mine own part, refer the use rather to them than to my Country-men. There be others which use to fat up their Horses, by giving them a certain grain which we call Bock, in the same manner as we give Oats or Pease. There be others, which to fat a Horse will give him only parched Wheat, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary Provender always some Wheat Bran; and be exceeding careful that the horse be clean drest, well rabbed, and soft littered; for without such clean keeping, there is no Meat will injoy, or do good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There be other Farriers, which to feed up a lean horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth Nuts, Bears grease, to drink with a quart of Wine. Others will give the Entrails of a Barbil or Tench



Tench with white wine ; others will give new hot draff, and new Bran, and twenty hard roasted Eggs, the shells being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mix all together, and give a good quantity thereof to the Horse at Morn, Noon, and at Evening for his Provender ; and once a day (which will be at high Noon) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale, and when the Horse beginneth to be gluttoned upon this Meat, then give him dried Oats : if he be gluttoned upon that then give him Bread, if he leave his Bread, give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite, observing ever to keep the Horse very warm, and with this Diet in fourteen days the leanest Horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other Farriers which to make a Horse fat, will take a quart of Wine, and half an Ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a penny weight of the powder of Myrrh ; mix altogether, and give it the Horse to drink many mornings together. Others will take three-leaved grass, half green, and half dry, and give it the Horse instead of Hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddenly, only it will breed much Rank Blood. Other Farriers use to take two penny worth of Pepper, and as much Saffron, Anniseeds and Turmeric, a pennyworth of long Pepper, two penny-worth of Treacle, a penny-worth of Licorice, a good quantity of Penirial and Arch-Angel : give the Horse these with the yolks of Eggs in Milk to drink. Others use to take Wheat made clean, and sod with Salt and Lard dried in the Sun, and give it twice a day before each watering. Others strong Ale, Myrrh, Sallet Oyl, and twenty grains of white Pepper, and instead of the Ale you may take the Decoction, that is, the water wherein Sage and Rue hath been sodden, it will soon make the Horse fat. Others take sodden Beans well bruised and sprinkled with Salt, adding to the water four times so much Bean-flower, or wheat Bran, and give that to the Horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the Blood of a sucking Pig, made luke warm, or Wine with the juyce of Feather-few, or an Ounce of Sulphur, and a penny-weight of Myrrh well made into powder, together with a new laid Egg, will raise up a horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or Barley boyled till it burst, either will fatten a Horse.

But the best way of fattening a horse, (for the most of the ways before prescribed are not to breed fat that will continue) is, first to give your Horse three Mornings together a pint of sweet wine and two spoonfuls



full of Diapente brewed together : for that drink will take away all infection, and sickness from the inward parts ; then to feed him well with Provender at least four times a day, that is, after his water in the morning, after his water at noon, after his water in the Evening, and after his water at 9. of the Clock at Night. Now you shall not let his Provender be all of one sort, but every meal, it may be changed as thus : If in the morning you give him Oats, at Noon likewise you shall give him Bread, at Evening Beans or Pease mixt with Wheat Bran, at night sodden Barly, &c. and ever observe, of what food he eateth best, of that let him have the greatest plenty, and there is no question but he will in short space grow fat, sound, and full of Spirit, without either dislike or sickness.

## CHAP. LIX.

*The Mirror and Master of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leanest and unsoundest Horses that may be, fat, sound, and fit either for Market or Travail, in the space of fourteen days.*

*Iff* IF your Horse be full of all inward diseases that may be, and brought to that dislike and poverty that you are desperate of his life, you shall take of Anniseeds, of Cummin-seeds, of Fenugreek, of Carthamus, of Elicampane, of the flower of Brimstone, of Brown Sugar-candy, of each of these two ounces beaten and searst to a very fine powder, then take an ounce of the juyce of Licoras, and dissolve it in half a pint of White-wine, then take three ounces of the Syrrup of Colts-foot, of Sallet-Oyl, and of live Honey, of each half a pint, then mix all this with the former powders, and with as much Wheat-flower as will bind and knit them altogether, work them into a stiff paste, and make thereof Balls as big as French Walnuts, Hulls and all, and so keep them in a close Gally-pot, and when you have occasion to use them, take one and anoint it with sweet Butter, and give it the horse in the manner of a Pill, and Ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, and thus do (if it be to prevent sickness) for three or four mornings together.

But if it be to take away infirmity, as glanders, &c, then use it at least a week or more.

But if to take away molten-grease, then instantly after his heat, and in his heat.

But if it be to fatten a Horse, then use it at least a fortnight : now

as



as you give them thus in the manner of a Pill, so you may give them dissolved in sweet Wine, Ale, or Beer.

Lastly, if it be to fatten a horse, then you shall take the second Balls: That is to say, of wheat-meal six pound, or as Physicians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Anniseeds two Ounces, of Cummin-seeds six drams, of Carthamus one dram and a half, of Fenugreek-seeds one ounce two drams, of Brimstone one ounce and a half, of Sallet Oyl one pint two ounces, of honey one pound and a half, of white wine four pints: This must be made into paste, the hard simples being pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into Balls as big as a Mans fist, and then every Morning and Evening when you would water your Horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these Balls, by lathering and chafing the same in the water, and then give it him to drink. The Horse it may be will be coy at the first to drink, but it is no matter, let him fast till he take it: for before two Balls be spent, he will refuse all waters for this only, This is the Medicine above all Medicines, and is truly the best scouring that can be given to any horse whatsoever: for besides his wonderful Feeding, it cleanseth the Body from all bad Humours whatsoever.

## CHAP. LX.

*Of the Breast-pain, or pain in the Breast.*

**T**Hough most of our Farriers are not curious to understand this disease, because it is not so common as others: yet both myself and others find it is a disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the Horse with Death. The *Italians* call it *Grannezza di petto*, and it proceedeth from the superfluity of Blood and other gross humours which being dissolved by some extreme and disorderly heat, resorteth downward to the Breast and paineth the horse extreamly that he can hardly go. The signs are, a stiff staggering, and weak going with his fore-legs, and he can very hardly, or not at all bow down his head to the ground, either to eat or drink, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The Cure is first to bath all his breast, and fore-booths with the Oyl of Peter, and if that do not help him within three or four days, then to let him blood on doth his breast-veins in the ordinary place, and then put in a Rowel either of hair, Cork, Horn, or Leather, of all which, and the manner

of



of Rowelling, you shall read in a more particular Chapter hereafter in the Book of *Chirurgery*.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this sickness, will first give the Horse an inward Drench, as namely, a pint of sweet Wine, and two spoonful of Diapente, then bathe all his Breast and Legs with Wine and Oyl mingled together, and in some ten or twelve days it will take away the grief.

### CHAP. LXI.

#### *Of the sickness of the Heart called the Anticor.*

**T**His sickness of the Heart, which by the Ancient Farriers is called *Anticor*, as much as to say, against or contrary to the Heart, is a dangerous and mortal sickness, proceeding from the great abundance of Blood which is bred by too Curious and proud keeping, where the horse hath much meat, and little or no labour, as for the most part your Geldings of Price have, which running all the Summer at Grass, do nothing but gather their own Food, and such like, where the Masters too much Love and Tenderneſs is the means to bring the Horse to his Death, as we find daily in our practice: for when such naughty and corrupt Blood is gathered, it resorteth to the inward parts, and so suffocateth his heart. The signs whereof are the horse will many times have a small swelling rise at the bottom of the breast, which swelling will increase and rise upward even to the top of the neck of the horse, and then most assuredly it kills the Horse; He will also hang his head either down to the Manger, or down to the Ground, forsaking his Food, and groaning with much painfulness. This Disease is of many an ignorant Smith taken sometimes for the Yellows, and sometimes for the Staggers, but you shall know that it is not by these observations: First, neither about the whites of his Eyes, nor the insides of his Lips shall you perceive any apparent Yellows, and so then it cannot be the Yellows, nor will he have any great swelling about his Eyes, nor dizziness in his Head, before he be at the point of Death; and so consequently it cannot be the Staggers. The Cure whereof is twofold; the first a prevention, or preservative before the Disease come; the second, a Remedy after the Disease is apparent.

For the prevention, or preservative, you shall observe, that if your horse live idly, either at grass or in the stable, and withal grow  
very



very fat, which fatness is never unaccompanied with corruptness, that then you fail not to let him blood in the Neck-vein before you turn him to Grass, or before you put him to feed in the Stable; and likewise let him blood two or three months after, when you see he is fed, and at each time of letting blood, you must make your quantity according to the goodness of the blood: for if the blood be black and thick, which is a sign of Inflammation and Corruption, you shall take the more: if it be pure red, and thin, which is a sign of strength and healthfulness, you shall take little or none at all. There be others which use for this prevention, to give the horse a Scouring or purgation of Malmsey, Oyl, and Sugar-candy, the making and use whereof you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your horse to feed, and as soon as you see his skin full swoln with fatness.

Now for the Remedy, when this disease shall be apparent; you shall let him blood on both his plat-veins, or if the Smiths skill will not extend so far, then you shall let the horse blood on the Neck-veins and that he bleed abundantly, then you shall give him this Drink. Take a quart of Malmsey, and put thereunto half a quartern of Sugar, and two Ounces of Cinnamon beaten to powder, and being made warm give it the horse to drink: then keep him very warm in the stable, stuffing him round about with soft Wisps very close, especially about the stomach, lest the wind do annoy him: and let his ordinary drink be warm Mashs of malt and Water, and his Food only that, whatsoever it be, which he eateth with the best stomach.

Now if you see any swelling to appear, whether it be soft or hard, then besides letting him blood, you shall strike the swelling in divers places with a Fleam or Launcet, that the corruption may issue forth, then anoint it with hogs-grease made warm: For that will either expel it, or bring it to a head, especially if the swelling be kept exceeding warm. There be other Farriers which for this disease use to let the horse blood as is aforesaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmsey, well brewed with three spoonfuls of the powder called *Diapente*, and if the Swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but Hay well sodden in old Urine, and then keep the same Diet as is aforesaid: Others use after the letting of blood, to give the horse no Drink, but only ten or twelve spoonfuls of that water which is called Doctor Stephens Water, and is not unknown to any Apothecary:



thecary: and then for the rest of the cure to proceed in all things as is before specified, and questionless I have seen strange effects of this practice.

## CHAP. LXII.

### *Of tyred Horses.*

**S**INCE we are thus far proceeded into the inward and vital parts of a horses body, it is not amiss to speak something of the Tying of horses, and of the Remedies for the same, because when a horse is truly tyred (as by over extream Labour) it is questionless that all his Vital parts are made sick and feebled. For to tell you in more plainness what tying is, it is when a horse by extream and uncessant Labour, hath all his inward and vital powers which should accompany and rejoyce the heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward parts, and less deserving Members, leaving the heart forlorn and sick, insomuch that a general and cold faintness spreadeth over the whole body, and weakneth it, in such sort that it can indure no further Travail, till those lively heats, Faculties and Powers be brought unto their natural and true Places back again, and made to give comfort to the heart whom their loss sickned.

Now for the tying of Horses, though in truth proceeded from no other cause but this before spoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, we say every horse that giveth over his Labour is tyred, you shall understand that such giving over may proceed from four causes: the first, from inward sickness: the second from some wound received either of body or Limbs: the third from dulness of Spirit, cowardliness, or restiness; and the fourth from most extream labour and Travail, which is true tyredness indeed. Now for the first, which is inward sickness, you shall look into the general signs of every disease, and if you find any of those signs to be apparent, you shall straight conclude on that disease, and taking away the cause thereof, have no doubt but the effect of his Tying will vanish with the same: for the second, which is by some wound received, as by cutting or dismembring the sinews, Ligaments, Muscles, or by straining or stooming any bone or joynt, or by pricking in Shooing, or striking Nail, Iron, Stub or Thorn into the sole of the horses foot, and such like.

Sith, the first is apparent to the Eye, by dis-joyning the skin, the  
other



other by halting, you shall take a survey of your horse, and finding any of them apparent, look what the grief is, repair to the latter part of this Book, which treateth of Chirurgery, and finding it there, use the means prescribed, and the tiring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which is dulness of Spirit, cowardliness or restiness, you shall find them by these signs, if he have no apparent sign either of inward sickness, or outward grief, neither sweateth much, nor sheweth any great alteration of countenance, yet notwithstanding tyreth, and refuseth reasonable labour, then such tiring proceedeth from dulness of Spirit; but if after indifferent long Travail the horse tyre, and then the man descending from his back, the horse run or trot away, as though he were not tyred, the man then mounting again, the horse utterly refuse to go forward, such tiring proceedeth from cowardliness; but if a horse with one, two, or three miles Riding being temperately used, and being neither put to any trial of his strength, nor, as it were, scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tyre, it proceedeth only from restiness and ill conditions. Then for the Cure of any of all these proceeding from Dulness, fearfulness, and unwillingness, you shall take ordinary Window-glass, and beat it into fine powder. Then take up the skin of each side the spur-vein between your finger and your thumb, and with a fine Nail or Bodkin, make divers small holes through his skin, then rub glass-powder very hard into those holes; which done mount his back, and do but offer to touch his side with your heels, and be sure, if he have Life in him, he will go forward, the greatest fear being that he will still but go too fast: but after your journey is ended, and you alighted, you must not fail, (because this powder of Glass will corrode and rot his sides) to anoint both the sore places with the powder of Jet and Turpentine mixt together, for that will draw out the Venom, and heal his sides again. There be others which use when a horse is tyred thus through dull cowardliness or restiness, to thrust a burning brand or Iron into his Buttocks, or to bring bottles of blazing straw about his Ears, there is neither of the cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tyred horse, which tyreth through a natural faintness, drawn from exceeding labour, the signs to know it, being long Travail, much sweat, and willingness of Course during his strength: the cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to pour oyl and Vinegar into his nostrils, and to give him the drink of sheeps-



heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the Consumption of the flesh, being the 57 Chapter of this Book, and to bathe his Legs with a comfortable bath, of which you shall find choice in the chapter of baths, or else charge them with this charge: Take of Bole-armony, and of Wheat-flower, of each half a pound, and a little Rosin beaten into fine powder, and a quart of strong Vinegar, mingle them well together, and cover all his Legs therewith, and if it be in the Summer, turn him to Grass and he will recover his weariness, others use to take a slice of fresh Beef, having steeped it in Vinegar, lap it about your bit or snaffle; and having made it fast with a Thred, ride your horse therewith and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, be sure to give your horse rest, much warmth and good feeding, that is, warm mashes and store of Provender, or else he will be the worse whilst he lives.

Now if it be so that your horse tire in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before the value of your horse, and that you must seek unnatural means to controul Nature: In this case you shall take (where the powder of Glass before spoken of cannot be had) three or four round Pebble stones, and put them into one of his ears, and then tye the Ear that the stones fall not out, and the noise of those stones will make the horse go after he is utterly tyred; but if that fail, you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the horses ear, and thrust a long rough stick, full of nicks through the same; and ever as the horse slacks his pace, so saw and fret the stick up and down in the hole, and be sure whilst he hath any life he will not leave going.

Many other torments there are which be needless to rehearse, only this is my most general advice, if at any time you tyre your horse, to take of old Urine a quart, of Salt-peter three Ounces, boyl them well together, and bathe all the horses four Legs in the same, and without question it will bring the sinews to their natural strength and nimbleness and for other defects, warm and good keeping will cure them.

And although some of our Northern Farriers do hold, that Oaten dough will prevent tiring, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any Horse that would eat it, the dough will so stick and clam in the horses mouth. Therefore I hold the Cures already recited to be fully sufficient. But for farther satisfaction use these, which I reserved for mine own privacy.

☞ Take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the powder



powder of Elicampane, and brew them well together, and give it the horse with a horn.

Take a bunch of Peneral, and tye it to the mouth of your Bit or Snaffle, and it will preserve a horse from tiring. Now if all these fail, then take off your horses Saddle, and rub his back all over very hard with the herb called Arsemart, and lay Arsemart under his saddle, and so ride him.

## CHAP. LXII.

*Of the Diseases of the Stomach, and first of the loathing of Meat.*

**T**HIS disease of the loathing of Meat, is taken two ways; the one a forsaking of Meat, as when a Horses mouth, either through the inflammation of his Stomach, doth break out into Blisters, or such like venomous sores, or when he hath the Lampass, Gigs, Wolfs-teeth, and such like. The Cure of all which, you shall readily find in the second part of this Book, which treateth of Chyrurgery: the other dislike of his meat through the intemperature of his Stomach, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankness of blood, or extremity of travail, as you may perceive by daily experience, when a horse is set up in his Stable very hot, and meat instantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I do ever hate the Noon-tide baiting of Horses, because mens journeys commonly crave haste, the Horse cannot take such a natural cooling as he ought before his meat, and thereby breeds much sickness and disease: for meat given presently after Travail when a horse is hot, is the mother of all infirmity: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the Stomach, being too cold, as being caused by some natural defect. Now if it proceed from heat only, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his Meat, or the extream heat of his Mouth and breath: Then to cool his Stomach again, you shall either wash his Tongue with Vinegar, or give to him drink cold water mingled with Oyl and Vinegar. There be other Farriers which use to give this drink: Take of Milk and Wine, of each one pint, and put thereunto of Mel Rosatum three ounces, and having washed his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, give him the drink luke-warm with a Horn. But if the loathing of his meat proceed from the coldness of his stomach, which only is known by the standing up and staring of the hair, Then by  
the



the opinion of the antient Farriers, you shall give him Wine and oyl mixt together divers mornings to drink : but others of our late Farriers give Wine, Oyl, Rue, and Sage boyl'd together by a quart at a time to drink. Others to the former compound will add white Pepper and Myrrh. Others use to give the Horse Onions pilled and chopt, and Rocket seed boyled and bruised in Wine. Others use to mix Wine with the blood of a Sow-pig. Now to conclude, for the general forsaking or loathing of meat, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the Stomach, there is nothing better than the green blades of Corn, (especially Wheat) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the year serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the horse sweet wine and the seeds of Gith mixt together, or else sweet Wine and Garlick well peel'd and stamp'd, being a long time brewed together.

## CHAP. LXII.

*Of the casting out of the Horses drink.*

THE antient Farriers, especially the *Italians*, constantly do affirm, that a horse may have such a Palsie, proceeding from the coldness of his stomach, that may make him unable to retain and keep his drink, but that many times he will vomit and cast it up again : for mine own part from other causes, as from cold in the head, where the Rheum bindeth about the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, hath as it were strangled and made straight the passages to the stomach : There I have many times seen a horse cast his water that he drank, in very abundant sort back again through his Nostrils, and sometimes strive with great earnestness to drink, but could not at all, The signs of both (from which cause soever it proceed) is only the casting up of his drink or water, and the cure thereof is only to give him Cordial and warm drinks, as is Malmsey, Cinnamon, Anniseeds, and Cloves, well brewed and mixed together, and to anoint his breast, and under his shoulders, with either the Oyl of Cypress, Oyl of Spike, or the Oyl of Pepper, and to purge his head with fumes or Pills, such as will force him to sneeze, of which you may see store in a chapter following : for such Fumigations joyning with these hot Oyls, will soon dissolve the humours.



## CHAP. LXV.

*Of Surfeiting with glut of Provender.*

**T**HERE is not any disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horse, than the Surfeit which is taken by the glut of Provender, it cometh most commonly by keeping the horse extream sharp and hungry, as either by long Travail, or long standing empty: and then in the height of greediness, giving him such super-abundance of Meat, that his stomach wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driven into an infinite great pain and extremity. The signs are great weakness and feebleness in the horses Limbs, so that he can hardly stand, but lieth down oft, and being down, walloweth and tumbleth up and down as if he had the Bots.

The Cure thereof, according to the common practice of our common Farriers, is, to take half a penny-worth of black Soap, and a quart of new Milk, and as much sweet Butter as Sope, and having on a Chafing-dish and Coals, mixt them together, give it the horse to drink: this will cleanse the horses Stomach, and bring it to it's strength again.

But the antient Farriers did use first, to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, (because every Surfeit breeds distemperature in the blood) then trot the horse up and down an hour or more, and if he cannot stale, draw out his Yard, and wash it with white-Wine made luke-warm, and thrust into his yard either a Clove of Garlick, or a little Oyl of Camomile, with a piece of small Wax-Candle. If he cannot dung, first with your hand rake his Fundament, and then give him a Clister, of which you shall read hereafter: when his Clister is received, you shall walk him up and down till he have emptied his belly, then set him up, and keep him hungry the space of two or three days, observing ever to sprinkle the Hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drink be warm water and bran made mash wise: After he hath drunk the drink, let him eat the Bran if he please, but from other Provender keep him still fasting, at the least ten days.

There be other Farriers, that in this case, use only to take a quart of Beer or Ale, and two penny-worth of Sallet-Oyl, and as much Dragon-water, a penny-worth of Treacle, and make all these warm  
upon



upon the coals, then put in an ounce of Cinnamon, Anniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the horse luke-warm to drink.

☞ All these receipts are exceeding good, yet for mine own part, and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, I think there is nothing better for this disease than moderate Exercise, much Fasting, and once in four or five days a pint of sweet Wine, with two spoonfuls of the powder of *Diapente*.

#### CHAP. LXVI.

*Of Foundring in the body, being a surfeit got either by Meat, Drink, or Labour.*

**T**HIS disease of Foundring in the body, is of all Surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to horses that are daily Travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much Provender suddenly after Labour; The horse, being then, as it were, panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilful horse-men do at this day) whereby the meat which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evil and gross humours, which by little and little spread themselves through the Members, do at length oppress and almost confound the whole Body, absolutely taking away from him all his strength, insomuch that he can neither go nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to rise again: besides it taketh away from him his iultrumental powers, as the office both of Urine and Excrements which cannot be performed but with extream pain. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather lean, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to drink too much in his Travel being very hot, whereby the Grease being suddenly cooled it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulness, that without speedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of Death only. Now whereas some Farriers do hold, that this Foundring in the body, should be no other than the Foundring in the Legs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of evil humours which resort down-ward, they are much deceived: for it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of humors, but rather a binding together of Corporal and Substantial evils, which by an unnatural accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawn from the French word

*Fuadu,*



*Fundu*, signifying melting, truly I think it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers which knew not how to entitle the disease, than any coherence it hath with the name it beareth: for mine own part, I am of opinion, that this disease which we call foundring in the body, doth not only proceed from the causes aforesaid, but also and most oftest by suddain washing horses in the Winter-season, when they are extream fat and hot with instant Travail, where the cold Vapor of the Water striking into the body, doth not only astonish the inward and vital parts, but also freezeth up the skin, and maketh the blood to lose his Office. Now the signs to perceive this disease are, holding down of his head, stairing up of his hair, coughing, staggering behind, trembling after water, dislike of his meat, leanness, stiff going, disability to rise when he is down: and to conclude, which is the chiefest sign of all other, his belly will be clung up to his back, and his back risen up like a Camel.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the Farriers, is, first to rake his fundament, and then to give him a Clister: which done, and that the horses belly is emptyed, then take of Malmsey a quart, of Sugar half a quartern, of Cinnamon half an ounce, of Licoras and Anniseeds, of each two spoonfuls beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmsey, warm them together at the fire, so that the Honey may be molten, then give it the horse luke-warm to drink which done, walk him up and down either in the warm Stable, or some warm Road the space of an hour, then let him stand on the Bit fasting two hours more, only let him be warm cloathed, stopt, and littered, and when you give him hay, let it be sprinkled with Water, and let his Provender be very clean sifted from dust, and given by a little at once; and let his drink be warm mashies of Malt and Water. Now when you see him recover and get a little strength you shall then let him blood in the Neck-vein, and once a day perfume him with Frankincense to make him sneeze, and use to give him exercise abroad when the weather is warm, and in the house when the Weather is stormy.

Now there be other Farriers which use for this disease, to take a half penny-worth of garlick, two penny-worth of the powder of pepper, two penny-worth of the powder of Ginger, two pennyworth of grains bruised, and put all these into a pottle of strong Ale, and give it the horse to drink by a quart at a time, dieting and ordering him as aforesaid; And when he getteth strength, either let him blood in



the Neck-vein, or the Spur-veins, or on both: to conclude, there is no Drink nor Diet which is comfortable, but it is most Sovereign good for this infirmity.

## CHAP. LXVII.

*Of the greedy Worm, or hungry Evil in Horses.*

**T**His hungry Evil is a disease more common, than found out by our Farriers, because the most of our Horse-Masters being of great ignorance, hold it a special vertue to see a horse eat eagerly, whereas indeed this over hasty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and sickness of the inward parts; and this disease is none other than an insatiate and greedy eating, contrary to Nature and old custom, and for the most part, it followeth some extream great emptiness or want of natural food, the beast being even at the pinch, and ready to be chap-faln. There be some Farriers which suppose that it proceedeth from some extream cold outwardly taken by travelling in cold and barren places, as in the frost and Snow, where the outward cold maketh the stomach cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The signs are only an alteration or change in the horses feeding, having lost all temperance, and snatching and chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger: The cure according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, first to comfort his stomach by giving him great slices of white-bread toasted at the fire, and steeped in Muscadine, or else bread untoasted, and steeped in Wine, and then to let him drink Wheat flower and Wine brewed together. There be others that use to knead stiff Cakes of Wheat-flower and Wine, and feed the horse therewith. Others use to make him bread of Pine-tree nuts and Wine mingled together, or else common Earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine own part, I hold nothing better than moderately feeding the Horse many times in the day with wholesome Bean-bread, well baked or Oats well dried and sifted.



## CHAP. LXVIII.

*Of the Diseases of the Liver in general, and first of the Inflammation thereof.*

**T**Here is no question but the Liver of a horse is subject to as many Diseases, as either the Liver of a man or any other Creature, only through the ignorance of our common Farriers, (who make all inward diseases one sickness) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let pass, and many times poysoned with false potions; but true it is, that the Liver sometimes by the intemperateness thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by means of evil humours, as Choler, or flegm overflowing in the same, heat ingendring choler, and coldness flegm, the Liver is subject to many sicknesses, and is diversly pained, as by Inflammations, Apostumation, or Ulcer, or by obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs: or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signs to know if the disease proceed from hot causes, is leanness of body, the loathing of Meat, voiding dung of a strong scent, great thirst, and looseness of belly. The signs to know if the disease proceed from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite of Meat, dung not stinking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceed to the particular diseases of the Liver, and first of the inflammation, you shall understand that it cometh by means that the blood through the abundance, thinness, boyling heat, or sharpness thereof, or through the Violence of some outward causes breaketh out of the veins, and floweth into the body or substance of the Liver; and so being dispossessed of his proper Vessels, doth immediately putrifie, and is inflamed corrupting so much of the fleshy substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it cometh, that for the most part, the hollow side of the Liver is first consumed, yea, sometimes the full side also: This Inflammation by a natural heat is sometimes turned to putrefaction, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of nature or art, it doth break and run, then it is called an Ulcer or filthy sore. Now the signs of an inflammation on the hollow side of the Liver, (which is the least hurtful) is loathing of meat, great thirst, looseness of belly, and a continual unwillingness to lye on the left side: but if the



Inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signs be short breathing, a dry Cough, much pain, when you handle the horse about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingness to lie on the right side. The signs of Apostumation is great heat, long fetching of breath, and a continual looking to his side. The signs of Ulceration, is continual coldness, starting up of the hair, and much feebleness and fainting, because the filthy matter casting evil vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart and occasion death. Now for the Cure of these Inflammations, some Farriers use to take a quart of Ale, an Ounce of Myrrh, an ounce of Frankincense, and brewing them well together, give it the horse divers mornings to drink. Others use to take three ounces of the seeds of Smallage, and three ounces of Hyssop, and as much Southern-wort, and boyl them well in Oyl and Wine mingled together, and give the horse to drink; keep the Horse warm, and let him neither drink cold water, nor eat dry dusty Hay.

## CHAP. LXIX.

*Of Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard Knobs on the Liver.*

**T**Hese Obstructions or Stoppings of a horses Liver, do come most commonly by Travelling or Labour on a full stomach, whereby the meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth gross and tough humours, which humours by the extremity of Travel, are violently driven into the small veins, through which the Liver ought to receive good Nutriment, and so by that means breedeth obstructions and stoppings. Now from these Obstructions. (when they have continued any long time) especially if the humours be Cholerick, breedeth many times hard knobs on the Liver, which knobs maketh the horse continually lye on his right side, and never on the left. because if he should lye on the left side, the weight of the knob would oppress the stomach, and even sicken all the vital parts in him.

The signs of these Obstructions or stoppings, are heaviness of Countenance, distention or swelling, great dulness and Sloath in the horse when he beginneth his Travail, and a continual looking back to his short Ribs, where remaineth his greatest pain and torment. Now the cure thereof, is, to seeth continually in the water which he drinketh, Agrimony, Fumitory, Camomil, Worm-wood  
Licoras



Licoras, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupins, the Virtues whereof are most comfortable to the Liver. But forasmuch as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smiths, whose capacities are unable to dive into these several distinctions, and that this Work (or Master-piece) is intended for the weakest brain whatsoever: You shall understand, that there be certain general signs to know when the Liver of a horse is grieved with any grief, of what nature or condition soever it be; and so likewise general Receipts to cure all the griefs, without distinguishing or knowing their Natures: You shall know then if a horse have any pain or grief in his Liver by these signs. First, by a loathing of his meats, next by the wasting of his flesh, driness of his mouth, and roughness of his Tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lie on the side grieved: and lastly a continual looking backward.

Now the general cure for the sickness of the Liver, is, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, to give the horse Aloes dissolved in sweet Wine, for it both purgeth and comforteth the Liver. Others use to give him to drink Ireos stamp and mixt with Wine and Water together, or instead of Ireos, to give him Calamint, called of the Latins Polimonia. Others give Savory with Oyl and Wine mixt together. Others use Liver-wort and Agrimony with Wine and Oyl. Others use comfortable Frictions, and to steep his provender in warm water, and to mix with his Provender a little Nitrum, not forgetting to let him stand warm, and lie soft: but that which is generally praised above all Medicines, is, to give the horse a Wolfs Liver beaten to powder, and mixt either with Wine, Water, Oyl, or any other Medicine.

Now for a conclusion of this chapter. If the Farriers skill be so good that he can distinguish the nature of each several infirmity about the Liver; then I would have him for to understand, that for Inflammations (which are the first beginners of all diseases) would be used simples that mollifie and disperse humours, as by these, Linseed, Fenugreek, Camomil, Anniseeds, Mellilot, and such like; to which mollifying simples, would be ever added some simples that are astringent or binding, as are these, red Rose leaves, Bramble leaves, Worm-wood, Plantain, Myrrh, Mastick, Storax, and such like. Now for Apostumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and Ulcers must be cleansed and scoured downward, either by excrement or Urine, and therefore the use of such simples as provoke either the one



or the other, of which you shall find plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

## CHAP. LXX.

*Of the Consumption of the Liver.*

**O**F the Consumption of the Liver, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the Mourning of the Chine: yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers opinions. First, some hold it cometh only from sudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it cometh of any humour, especially of cholerick matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the Liver, which rotting by leasurable degrees, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the Liver, proceeding, as they think, from corrupt meats and sweet drinks. And the last thinketh it cometh by extreame heat gotten in Travail, which inflaming the blood, doth afterward putrefie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver: because the Liver is spongius like the Lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity: For the Liver being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the body for want of good Nutriment, doth in time consume. The signs of this disease is a loathing of Meat, and a stretching forth of the horses body at length as he standeth, he will seldom or never lye down, his breath will stink marvellously, and he will continually cast exceeding foul matter, either at one nostril, or both, according as one side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he casteth, he will ever have betwixt his neather jaws, about the midst of them, a hard knob or kernel about the bigness of a Walnut. Now the perservative of this disease, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take half a pint of Malmsey, and as much of the blood of a young Pig, and to give the horse luke-warm to drink. Other Farriers use to give the horse no other Food for the space of three dayes; then warm wort, and Oats baked in an Oven, being sure that the horse be kept fasting the first Night before he receive his Medicine. Others suppose, that if into the Wort which he drinketh, you do put every Morning two or three Spoonful of the powder made of Agrimony, red Rose leaves, Saccharum



charum Rosaceum, Diarrhadon Abbatis, Disantelon, Licoras, and of the Liver of a Wolf, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goats milk lukewarm, is very good. Others hold that Malmsey, and the juyce of Featherfew given to drink is also good.

Others use (and hold it equal with the best) to take an ounce of Sulphur Vive beaten into fine powder, and a penny-weight of Myrrh beaten to fine powder, mix them together with a new laid Egg, and give them to drink with half a pint of Malmsey; use this divers times, and keep the Horse fasting, yet separate him from other horses, for this disease is infectious.

## C H A P. LXXI.

*Of the Diseases of the Gall.*

**A**S is the Liver, even so the Gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many infirmities, as to Obstruction, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulness and emptiness of the bladder, and Stone in the Gall. And these obstructions do chance two several ways: First, when the passage by which choler should pass from the Liver unto the Bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper Receptacle, is stopped, and so the bladder of the gall remaineth empty: for you are to understand, that the gall is none other thing than a long, slender, little greenish bladder fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholerick bitter moisture, which would otherwise offend not only the Liver, but the whole body also. Now if the passage of this necessary Vessel be stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities, as either Vomiting, the Lax, the bloody-flux, or the Yellows.

Secondly, when the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the bladder of the gall, down into the guts and Excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulness of Spirit, suffocating, belching, heat, thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truly to any beast there is not a more dangerous disease, than the overflowing of the Gall: but our latter experience findeth that a horse hath no Gall at all; but that filthy and corrupt matter is wasted and spent, either by Sweat, Exercise, or else doth turn to infirmity. The signs of both these kinds of evils, or obstructions, are yellowness of the skin, infected



infected with the yellow Jaundise, and a continual costiveness of the body : and the cures of them are, according to the most antient Farriers, to give the horse Milk, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or instead of Milk, to give Ale, Saffron, and Anniseeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold, that Selladine roots and leaves chopt and bruised, and boyled in Beer ; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or Herb of Grace, and given the horse luke-warm to drink, is most soveraign.

Now for the Stone in the Gall, which is of a blackish colour, it comes from the Obstruction of the Conduits of the bladder, whereby the Choler being too long kept in, becometh dry, and so converteth first into gravel, and after into a solid and hard Stone, of which both the signs and the cures are those last before rehearsed.

#### CHAP. LXXII.

*Of all such diseases as are incident to the Spleen.*

THE Spleen is a long, narrow, flat, spongy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the Receptacle of Melancholy and the dregs of the blood, and is as subject to infirmity as any inward Member whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, Knobs and Swellings ; it is through the Sponginess, apt to suck in all manner of filth, and to dilate and spread the same over the whole body : The appearance thereof is on the left side under the short ribs, where you shall perceive some small Swelling, which swelling gives much grief to the Midriff, especially after a full stomach, taking away much more of the horses digestion than his Appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob, or Stony Substance.

This disease, or diseases of the Spleen, are incident to Horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit or greedy eating of green Meats. The signs of which diseases are these, heaviness, dulness, pain on the left side, and hard swellings, short breath, much groaning, and an over-hasty desire to his Meat. The Cure according to the opinion of our best Farriers, is, to make the horse sweat either by labour or Cloaths, then to give him to drink a quart of White-Wine, wherein hath been boyled the leaves of Tamarisk bruised



bruised, and a good quantity of Cummin-seed beaten to powder, and give it lukewarm. Others use, after the horse hath sweat, to pour into his left Nostril every day the juyce of Myrabolans, mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a pint. Others take Cummin-seed and honey, of each six ounces, of Laserpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a pint, and put all these into three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night, and give the horse a quart thereof next Morning, having fasted all Night. Others make the horse to drink of Garlick, Nitrum Hare-hound, and Worm-wood sodden in a sharp Wine, and to bath all the Horses left side with warm water, and to rub it hard. There be others which use to Cauterize or scarifie the Horses left-side with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgment in the practice.

## CHAP. LXXIII.

*Of the Yellows or Jaundise.*

AS before I said, from the Obstructions or Over-flowings of the Gall and Spleen, doth spring this disease which our common Smiths call the Yellows, and our better Farriers the Jaundise: and you shall understand, that of this Yellows or Jaundise, there are two kinds, the first an overflowing of Choler, proceeding from the sickness of the Gall, and it is called simply the Yellows, or yellow Jaundise; because the outward parts of the body, as Eyes, Skin, Mouth, inside of the Lips, and the like, are dried and coloured Yellow: the other an over-flowing of Melancholy, proceeding from the sickness of the Spleen, and is called the black Yellows, or black Jaundise, because all the outward parts are black. Now both these Jaundise, or Yellows, have their beginnings from the evils of the Liver; the Yellow Jaundise, when the Liver by inflammation hath all his blood converted into Choler, and so overwhelms the body: and the black Jaundise, when some obstructions in the Liver-vein, which goeth to the Spleen, hindreth the Spleen from doing his Office, and receiving the dregs of blood from the Liver, or else when the Spleen is surcharged with such dregs of blood, and so sheddeth them back again into the Veins.

Now although this distinction of the black Jaundise, or black Yellows, will appear strange unto our common Farriers, yet it is most certain, that whensoever a horse dyeth of the Yellows, he dieth only



of the black Yellows: For when it cometh unto the case of Mortality, then are all the inward powers converted to blackness, and the Yellow substance is clean mastered; but whilst the matter is yellow, so long the Horses Body is in good state of recovery. Besides, these Yellows do ever follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got preheminance, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward Diseases in a horses body, that is most common, oftneft in practice, and yet most mortal, if it be not early prevented. The signs of this disease of yellow Jaundise, are yellowness of his Eyes, Nostrils, inside of the Lips, the Skin, the Yard, and the Urine: his Ears and his Flank will sweat, and he will groan when he lyeth down, and he will not only be faint, but utterly forsake his meat also. The cures which are at this day in practice for this disease, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and poysonous: Every Smith almost making a Medicine of his own invention, God knows weak, and to little purpose, but for the best Receipts, which at this day are used by any good Farriers whatsoever, I will deliver you the whole Catalogue.

First, For the antient Farriers, both *Italian* and *French*, they did use to take of Thyme and Cummin, of each a like quantity, and stamping them together, to mingle it with Wine, Honey, and Water; and then to let him blood in the Pasterns.

But now the Farriers of later days use, first to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, suffering him to bleed, till you perceive the blood to grow pure, then to give this Drink: Take of white-Wine, or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron and Turmerick, of each half an ounce, and the juyce that is wrung out of a great handful of Selladine, and being luke-warm give it the horse to drink, then keep him warm the space of three or four dayes, giving him warm water with a little Bran in it. Others use after the Horse is let blood in the Neck-vein, First to Rake him, then to give him a suppository made of Salt, Honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drink half an ounce of Myrrh dissolved in a quart of Wine or Ale. Others use to give after blood-letting, only cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others which after blood-letting will only stop his Ears with Selladine, and then bind them fast up and let him have no exercise for twelve hours after. Others use, after the letting him blood, to give him a Clister, then to take Saffron, and Turmerick, and mixing them with a quart of Milk, give it him to



to drink luke-warm. Others use to let the Horse blood in the third barr of the Roof of his Mouth, with a sharp knife and after he hath bled well, to take an half penny worth of English Saffron, and a penny worth of Turmerick, and a new laid Egg, with the shell and all small broken, and mix it in a quart of stale Ale or Beer, and so set him up warm.

Others use to take after Blood-letting, of Turmerick, and Saffron, alike quantity, and two or three Cloves, and six spoonfuls of Vinegar and Verjuice, and to put into each Ear of the Horse three spoonfuls thereof, and then stop his Ears with black Wool, and so tye them up for seven or eight days after. Others take long Pepper, Grains, Turmerick, and Licoras, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong beer or Ale, and give it the Horse to drink. Others use after taking and blood-letting, to take the juyce of Ivy-leaves, and mingling it with Wine, to squirt it into the horses nostrils; and to let him drink only cold water mixt with Nitrum, and let his Food be grass, or new Hay sprinkled with water.

Thus you have seen, I dare well affirm, all the best practices which are at this day known for this disease, and where they all fail, there is no hope of cure, as the (old Farriers affirm) yet let me thus far further inform you, This disease of the Yellows, or Jaundise, if the Keeper and Master be not a great deal the more skilful and careful, will steal upon you unawares, and (as I have often seen) when you are in the midst of your journey, remote and distant far from any Town that can give you succour, it may be your horse will fall down under you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour questionless he will be dead.

In this extremity you have no help, but to draw out a sharp pointed Knife, Dagger, or Rapier for a need, and as near as you can, opening the horses mouth, strike him blood about the third Bar of the Roof of his mouth, and so letting him eat and swallow his own blood a good while, then raise him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to a place of rest, then be sure to blood him, and give him half an ounce of the powder of Diapente in a pint of Muskadine well brewed together, and thus do three or four Mornings together, and let him be fasting before, and fast two hours after; and after the potion give him a little moderate Exercise, or else there will a worse fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the black Jaundise, which of some Farriers



is called the dry Yellowes, though for mine own part, I hold it to be incurable, yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary Humour, and prescribe this Physick for the Cure thereof: First, to give the Horse a Clister made of Oyl, Water, Milk and Nitrum, after his Fundament is raked, then to pour the decoction of Mallows, mingled with sweet Wine in his Nostrils, and let his Meat be grasse or Hay sprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried Oats: he must rest from labour, and be often rubbed Now there be other Farriers, which for this disease would only have the horse drink the decoction of Wild Coleworts sodden in Wine; the effects of all which I only refer to experience.

## CHAP. LXXIV.

*Of the Dropsie or Evil Habit of the body.*

**W**Hereas we have spoken before of the Consumption of the Flesh, which proceedeth from Surfeits, ill Lodging, Labour, Colds, Heats and such like: you shall also now understand, that there is another driness or consumption of the flesh, which hath no apparent cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropsie, or evil habit of the body, which is most apparently seen, when the horse by dislike doth lose his true natural colour, and when Bayness turns to dunness, blackness to duskishness, and whiteness to Ashiness, and when he loseth his Spirit, Strength and Alacrity. Now this cometh not from want of Nutriment, but from the want of good Nutriment, in that the blood is corrupted either with flegm, Choler, or Melancholy, (coming according to the opinion of our best Farriers) either from the Spleen, or the weakness of the Stomach or Liver, causing naughty digestion.

Others think it cometh from foul feeding, or much idleness, but for mine own part, albeit I have had as much tryal of this disease, as any one man, and that it becometh not me to controul men of approved judgment; yet this I dare aver, that I never saw this disease of the evil habit, or evil colour of the body, spring from any other grounds, than either disorderly or Wild riding, or from hunger, or barren woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropsie, there is small or no difference. For the Dropsie being divided into three kinds, this is the first thereof, as namely, an universal swelling of the body, but especially the Legs. through the abundance of  
water



water lying between the skin and the flesh. The second, a swelling in the covering or bottom of his belly, as if the horse were with foal which is only a watrish humour abiding betwixt the skin and the Rim: And the third, a swelling in the same place by the like humours abideth betwixt the great bag and the Kell.

The common signs of this disease, are shortness of breath, swelling of the body or legs, loss of the horses natural colour, no appetite unto Meat, and a continual Thirst; his Back, Buttocks and Flanks will be dry, and shrunk up to their bones: his Veins will be hid that you cannot see them, and wheresoever you shall press your finger any thing hard against his body, there you shall leave the print behind you, and the flesh will not arise of good space after: When he lyeth down he will spread out his Limbs, and not draw them round together, and his hair will shed with the smallest rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but only two Dropsies, that is a wet Dropsie, and a Windy Dropsie, but being examined, they are all one with those recited, have all the same Signs and the same Cure, which according to the ancient Farriers is in this sort: first, to let him be warm covered with many Cloaths, and either by exercise, or otherwise drive him into a Sweat; then let his back and body be rubbed against the hair, and let his Food be for the most part Coleworts, Smallage and Elming Boughs, or whatsoever else will keep his body soluble or provoke Urine, when you want this food, let him eat Grass or Hay sprinkled with water, and sometimes you may give him a kind of Pulse called ciche, steeped a day and a night in water, and then taken out and laid so as the water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which only would have the horse drink Parsley stamp and mixt with Wine, or else the root of the Herb called Panax stamp and mixt with Wine. Now whereas some Farriers advise to slit the belly a handfull behind the Navel, That the wind and water may leisuely issue forth, of mine own knowledge, I know the Cure to be most vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter spoiling and killing of the horse, for the horse is a beast and wanting knowledge of his own good, will never be drest but by violence, and that violence will bring down his Kell, so as it will never be recovered. Now for these Dropsies in the belly, although I have shewed you the signs and the Cures, yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other Dropsie, which is the swelling of the legs, and the loss of the colour of the  
hair



hair, it is very ordinary and in hourly practice : the best cure whereof, that ever I found amongst the Farriers is this.

Take of strong Ale a gallon, and set it on the fire, and then skum off the white froth which riseth, then take a handful of Wormwood with stalks, and put them into the Ale, and let them boyl till it be come almost to a quart: then take it off, and strain it exceedingly, then dissolve into it three ounces of the best Treacle, and put in also an ounce, and a half of long Pepper and grains beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it be no more but lukewarm, and so give it the Horse to drink; the next day let him blood on the Neck-vein, and anoint his Fore legs with train Oyl, and so turn him into good grass, and fear not his Recovery.

#### CHAP. LXXV.

*Of the Diseases in the Guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholick.*

**A** Horses Guts are subject unto many and sundry infirmities : as namely, to the Wind Cholick, fretting of the Belly, Costiveness, Lax, Bloody-flux, and Worms of divers kinds. Now for the Cholick, it is a grievous and tormenting pain in the great Gut or Bag, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receive divers offensive matters, which do breed divers infirmities, especially Wind, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the Body, as it were, swell, and offendeth both the stomach and other inward Members. This disease doth not so much appear in the Stable, as abroad in Travail, and the signs are these: the Horse will often offer to stale, but cannot; he will strike at his belly with his hinder foot, and many times stamp; he will forsake his Meat, and towards his Flank you shall see his Belly appear more full than ordinary, and he will desire to lie down and wallow. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is, only to give him a Clister made either of Wild Cucumbers, or else of Hens-dung, Nitrum, and strong Vinegar, the manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of Clisters, and after the Clister labour him.

Others use to give the Horse the Urine of a Child to drink, or a Clister of Sope and Salt water. Others use to give him five drams of Myrrh in good Wine and then gallop him gently thereupon. Others use to give him Smallage and Parsley with his Provender, and then



then to travail him till he sweat. But for my own part, I hold it best to take a quart of Malmsey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, of each half an ounce, of Sugar half a quartern, and give it the horse lukewarm, and then ride him at least an hour after; but before you Ride him, anoint all his Flanks with Oyl de Bay, or Oyl of Spike. Now if whilst you ride him he will not dung, you shall then Rake him, and if need be, enforce him to dung, by thrusting into his fundament a pill'd Onion Jagged cross ways, that the tickling of the Joyce may inforce Ordure: And by no means, for 4 or 5 dayes, let him drink no cold water, or eat any Grasse or green Corn, but keep him upon wholsom dry meat in a warm Stable.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Belly-Ake, or fretting in the Belly.*

BESIDES, the Cholick, there is also another grievous pain in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or Fretting in the belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of green Pulse, when it grows on the ground, or raw undried Pease, Beans or Oats, or else when sharp fretting humours, or Inflammations, or abundance of gross matter is gotten between the great Gut and the Pannicle. The signs are much wallowing, great groaning, and often striking at his Belly, and gnawing upon the Manger. The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, first to anoint your hand with Sallet-Oyl, Butter or Grease, and then thrusting it in at the horses Fundament, pull out as much dung as you can reach, which is called raking a Horse; then give him a Clister of water and Salt mixt together, or instead thereof, give him a suppository of Honey and Salt, and then give him to drink the powder of Centuary and wormwood brewed with a quart of Malmsey. Others use only to give the Horse a Suppository of New-castle Soap, and for mine own part, I hold it only the best.

## CHAP. LXXVII.

*Of the Costiveness, or Belly-bound.*

COSTIVENESS, or Belly-bound, is, when a Horse is so bound in his Belly that he cannot Dung, it is a disease of all other most incident



incident to Running horses, which are kept in a dry and hot Diet. Now my Masters, the great Farriers, affirm, that it proceedeth from Glut of Provender or over-much Feeding, and Rest; or from wind, gross humours, or, cold, causing Obstructions, and stoppings in the Guts; but I suppose (and imagine that all the best keepers of hunting or running horses will consent with me) that it rather proceeds from much fasting, whereby the Gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of its own great heat, bake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certain Rule, that nothing can overflow before it be full. Or else it may proceed from eating too much dry and hot food, which sucking up the slegm and moisture of the body, leaves not sufficient whereby it may be digested; however it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The signs are only abstinence from the office of Nature, (I mean Dunging) which is most usual in all Beast. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the antientest Farriers, is, to take the water wherein Mallows have been long boiled, to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto half a pint of Oyl, or instead thereof, half a pint of Butter very sweet, and one ounce of Benedicte Laxatu, and pour that into his Fundament Clisterwise: then with a string fasten his Tail hard to his Tuel, and then trot the horse up and down a pretty while, that the Medicine may work so much the better; then let his Tail loose, and suffer him to avoid all that is in his belly; then bring him into the Stable, and having stood a while, give him a little well-clarified honey to drink; then cover him and keep him warm, and let his drink for three or four days be nothing but sweet warm Mashcs of Malt and Water. Other Farriers use to take eleven leaves of Laurel, and stamping them in a Mortar, give it the horse to drink with one quart of good strong Ale.

Others use to take an ounce of brimstone finely beaten to powder and mixing it with Sugar, to give it the horse in a Mash to drink. Now for mine own part, I could wish you, if the Disease be not very extreamly violent, only but to rake the horses Fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloaths till he sweat, and then give him a handful or two of clean Rye, and a little brimstone mixt with it: for brimstone being given with Provender at any time will scour; but if the disease be raging and violent, take a quarter of a pound of white Soap, a handful of Spurge, and a handful of Hemp-feed, bray them very well together, and give it the horse to drink



drink with a quart of Ale luke-warm, then let him fast, and Exercise him more than half an hour after; and be sure to keep him very warm, and let his drink be only warm mash. A World of other Scouring Receipts there be: but you shall find them more at large in the chapter of Purgations, Clusters, and Suppositories.

## CHAP. LXXVIII.

*Of the Lax or too much scouring of Horses.*

THE Lax, or open flux of a Horses body, is a dangerous disease and quickly bringeth a horse to great weakness and faintness; It proceedeth sometimes from the abundance of Cholerick humours, descending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold water immediately after his Provender, sometimes by suddain Travelling upon a full stomach before his Meat be digested; sometimes by hasty running or Galloping presently after Water; and sometimes by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens-dung: there is no disease that taketh more sore upon a Horse in a short time than this, and yet, sith nature her self in this disease seemeth to be a Physician to the Horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to go about too suddenly to stop it; but if you find that by the continuance, Nature both loseth her own strength and the Horse the good estate of his body, then you shall seek remedy; and the Cure thereof, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, is this: Take of bean-flower, and Bole-Armonick, of each a quartern, mix them together in a quart of red Wine, and give it the horse luke-warm to drink, and let him be kept very-warm, and have much rest: also let the water that he drinketh be luke-warm, and mixt with bean-flower; yet by no means let him drink above once in four and twenty hours, and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pint of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, half an ounce of Cinamon, and as much of the rind of Pomegranet, and mixing them together, give it the horse lukewarm to drink, & let him not drink any other drink, except it be once in four and twenty hours, half a horses draught of warm water mixt with bean-flower. Others take a half penny-worth of Allom beaten into fine powder, and Bole-Armony beaten small, and a quart of good Milk, mingle them together till the Milk be all on a Curd, & then give it the horse to drink, observing the Dyet before rehearsed: But if this disease shall happen to a sucking



Foal, as commonly it will, and I my self have seen many that for want of experience have perished thereby, you shall then only give it a pint of strong Verges to drink, and it is a present Remedy. For the Foal only feeding upon Milk, and that milk avoiding in as liquid from as it was received, The Verges will curdle it, and so make it void in a grosser and more tougher substance.

## C H A P. LXXIX.

*Of the Bloody-flux in Horses.*

**I**T is not to be doubted, but that a horse may have the Bloody-flux, for in my Experience I have seen it, besides the confirmation of all my Masters, the old Farriers. Now of the Bloody-flux they make divers kinds, for sometimes the fat of the slimy filth which is avoided, is sprinkled with a little blood; sometimes the Excrements is watrish blood, like the water wherein bloody flesh hath been washed; sometimes blood mixed with Melancholy, and sometimes pure blood: but all these proceeding from one head, which is the Exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by the cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Guts, or in the outward great Gut, you shall observe if the matter and blood be perfectly mixt together, then it is the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thick outward Guts. Now this bloody-flux cometh most commonly of some sharp humours, ingendring either by a naughty raw food, or unreasonable Travel, which humours being violently driven, and having passed through many crooked and narrow ways, do cleave to the Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them and cause Exulcerations and grievous pains. Sometimes this Bloody-flux may come from extream cold, extream heat, or extream moistness, or through the Violence of some extream scouring formerly given, wherein some poisonous simple as Siomony, Stibium, or such like, may be applied in too great a quantity, or it may come from the weakness of the Liver, or other members, which serve for digestion. The sign of this Disease, is only the avoiding blood with his Excrements, or blood instead of Excrements: And the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take Saffron one ounce, of Myrrh two ounces, of Southern-wood three ounces, of

Parfle:



Parsley one ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittle-wort, and Hyssop of each two ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cinnamon, one ounce, let all these be beaten into fine powder and mingled with Chalk and strong Vinegar wrought into a paste, of which paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dried dissolve some of them in a pint and a half of Barley-Milk, or for want thereof, in that juyce which is called Crimor Prisame, and give it the horse to drink: for it not only cureth the Bloody flux, but being given with a quart of warm water, it healeth all grief and pain either in the belly or bladder, which cometh for want of staling.

Now for mine own, I have ever used for the bloody-flux, but this Medicine only. Take of red wine three pints, half a hand-ful of the Herb called Bursa Pastoris, or Shepherds purse, and as much Tanners bark taken out of the Fat and dried, boyl them in the wine till somewhat more than a pint be consumed, and then straining it very hard give it the horse luke-warm to drink, if you do add unto it a little Cinnamon it is not amiss. There be other Farriers which use to dissolve in a pint of red wine, four ounces of the conserve of Sloes, and give it the horse to drink: but either of the other Medicines are fully sufficient.

## CHAP. LXXX.

*Of the falling down of a Horses Fundament.*

**H**Orses sometimes, by means of the disease formerly spoken of, which is the Bloody-flux, and sometimes by a natural weakness in the inward Bowels, coming through the Resolution of the Muscles, serving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their Fundaments fall down in great length, both to the much pain of the horse, and great loathsomeness to the beholders. Now the resolution or falling down, may come partly by over-much straining to dung when a horse is costive, and partly by over great moisture, as it happens in young Children: For, than a Horse, no creature hath a moister body. Now the signs are apparent, hanging down of the Fundament, and the cure is this. First, you shall look whether the Fundament be inflam'd, that is whether it be much swell'd or no, if it be not inflam'd, then you shall anoint it with oyl of Roses warmed on a Chafing-dish and coals, or for want of such



Oyl, you shall wash it with warm red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft sponge, dipt in the decoction, of Mallows, Camomil, Linseed, and Fenugreek, and also you shall anoint it well with Oyl of Camomil and Dill mingled together, to assuage the swelling, and then with a gentle hand, and warm Linnen cloths, thrust it fair and softly up into his true place; that done, bathe all the Tuel with red Wine, wherein hath been sodden Acatium, Galls, Achron Cups, and the pairing of Quinces: Then throw upon it either the powder of Bole-Armonick, or of Frankincense, or Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, or such like, and then give him to drink the dry Pills of Pomegranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warm water, and be sure to keep the horse very warm, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costive or hard bound, but of a mean and soft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtful.

## CHAP. LXXXI.

*Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in a Horse's Body.*

**M**Y Masters, the old antient Farriers, are of opinion, that the Guts of a Horse do breed three sorts of Worms, that is to say, little short Worms with great red heads, and long small white tailes, which we call Bots: short and thick Worms all of a bigness like a mans Finger, which we call Truncheons, and great long worms as big as a mans finger, and at the least six inches in length, which we call by the Simple name of Worms only.

Now in mine own Experience, and all other Mens, I find a fourth sort, which is of a middle size, and are red and fiery, with thick, short, sharp heads, and are called poysonous red Worms, and are of all other most poysonous and dangerous, for they will ascend up even to the Throat of the Horse, and will choak and kill him, and sometimes they will eat through his stomach, and so confound him.

Now for mine own part I am of opinion, that the first which are Bots, are not bred in the Guts, but the Stomach only, because having cut up many horses, I never could yet find any one Bot in the Guts, yet great store of both the other Worms, nor ever cut up the stomach of a Horse, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Worms: whence I am confidently opinionated, that Bots are ever bred in the stomach, and both the other sorts of Worms in the

Guts:



Guts : Truth it is, that all three do proceed from one self-same cause, which is a raw, gross, and flegmatick matter, apt to putrefaction, and ingendred by foul and naughty feeding, and as they proceed from one self-same cause, so have they all one sign and all one Cure. The signs then are, the horse will forsake his Meat, and not stand upon his legs, but wallow and tumble, and beat his Belly with his feet, and sometimes the pain will be so extream, that he will beat his head against the ground, and truly, the Violence of the red Worms are wonderful, for I have seen Horses whose stomach have been eaten quite through with them, so that the meat which they eat, could not abide in their stomach, but fell upon the swallowing into the Body making the Body swell like a Tun, and so have died with huge torment. Now the Cure according to the antient Farriers is, to take a quart of sweet Milk, of Honey a quartern, and give it him luke-warm : then walk him up and down for the space of an hour after, and so let him rest for that day, with as little Meat and Drink as may be ; and by no means suffer him to lye down. Then the next day when the Horse is fasting, take of Rue a handful, of Savin as much, and being well stampd, put thereunto a little Brimstone, and a little Soot of a chimney beaten into fine powder, put all these things together in a quart of wort, or new Ale, and there let them ly in steep the space of an hour or two ; then strain it hard through a fair cloth, and give it the horse to drink luke-warm, then bridle him, and walk him abroad the space of an hour, then set him up, and let him stand on the Bit two or three hours after, and then give him a little Hay.

Other antient Farriers use only to give the horse for this disease the warm Guts of a new slain Hen or Chicken, being thrust down the horses throat, and sure it is passing good, especially if a little salt be mixed with them : and this must be done three mornings together fasting, keeping the horse from drinking three or four hours after. Others use to take three ounces of the Roots of Caphers, beaten with half so much Vinegar, and put it down the horses Throat : or else a pint of Milk, and a spoonful of Sope given the horse to drink : or Brimstone and Milk given to drink, all very soveraign. Others use to bind about the Snaffle or Bit, Mans-dung new made, and so ride him therewith.

Others take of Gentian, Aloes, and Savin, of each half an ounce, and brew them together with Honey and strong Ale. Others use to take only a quart of cold sweet Wort. Others take Savin and Southern-



Southern-wort, or else Worm-wood, and the tops of Broom small chopt, and mix it with the horses Provender. Others use to give the horse to drink luke-warm Elder-berries sodden in Milk. Others use to give the horse with his Provender, his own hair chopt small, and mixt with Bay-Salt. Others put hot Embers in water, and presently strain it, and give the horse to drink. Others make little round balls of Honey, and the fine powder of Chalk, and putting them into Ale, make the Horse swallow them. Others use to take, especially for the long Worms, a half penny worth of Fennugreek, of Anniseeds a quarter of a pound, half a penny worth of Bay-berries, as much Licoras, and as much Turmerick, and a little quantity of Brimstone, beat them into powder, put them into a quart of Ale, and give it the horse fasting luke-warm to drink: then ride him an hour after, then set him up warm four and twenty hours after. Others use, especially for the Truncheons, to take two spoonfuls of the powder of Wormwood, finely searst, and put it in a pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while, let it stand and soak all night, and then give it the horse in the morning fasting, then keep him without meat or drink four hours after. Others use to give the horse to drink, two spoonfuls of Wormseed, and as much Brimstone as powder of Savin, with a quart of Malmsey, Ale, or Beer. Others use to take as much black Soap as a Walnut, and as much brimstone beaten to powder, and a head or two of Garlick pill'd and bruised, and put into a quart of good Ale, and give it the horse luke-warm to drink.

This Medicine may also be administred to a Mare great with Foal, if she be troubled with the Bots or other Worms, so that the black Sope be left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foal in the Mares belly; yet for mine own part, I never give any inward Physical Medicines to a Mare great with Foal, but if I find her troubled with Worms, as is easie to be done by the stinking of her breath, by the sliminess of her Mouth, and by the greatness of the worm-veins under her Lips, then presently I do nothing but let her blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own blood; for that I know will both kill worms, and help most inward Maladies. But leaving Mares with Foal, let us return again unto Horses. There be other Farriers which use to take a handful of new hens dung, and a quart of stale Ale, and bray them well together; then take a handful of Bay Salt, and put two Eggs



Others use, (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new Milk, and a quartern of Sugar, and brewing them well together, give it the horse to drink six mornings together, observing to keep the horse from all sharp meats, as Mow-burnt Hay, Bran, and such like.

## CHAP. LXXXIV.

*Of the Pain-piss, or pissing with pain.*

**T**His Disease of Pain-piss, is, when a Horse cannot piss but with great pain and labour, and doth proceed sometimes from the weakness of the Bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof; and sometimes through the abundance of Flegm and gross humours, stopping the neck of the Bladder. The signs whereof are, the horse will stretch himself out as though he would stale, and thrust out his Yard a little, and with a pain clap his Tail betwixt his Thighs to his belly, and having stood so a good while, in the end he will stale a good quantity.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of Farriers, is, to take the juyce of Leeks, sweet Wine, and Oyl, and mingling them together, to pour it into his right Nostril, and walk him a little up and down upon it: or else to give him to drink Smallage Seed, or else the Roots of wild Fennel sodden with Wine. Others use to put fine sharp Onions clean pill'd, and a little bruised into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediately upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a man's hand: or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses own Hoofs, beaten into powder, and mingled with Wine, and pour it into his right Nostril, and then ride him upon it. Others use to lead the horse to Sheep coats, or Sheep-pens, where great store of sheep are wonted, and making the horse to smell of the dung, and piss of the Sheep, it will provoke him to stale presently. Others use to give the horse white dogs dung dried and mingled with Ammoniacum, Salt, and Wine to drink: or else hogs dung only with Wine, or the dregs of horse piss and Wine.



## CHAP. LXXXV.

*Of the Stone, or Piss suppress in a Horse.*

**T**HE Stone or Piss-suppress in a Horse, is, when a Horse would faine stale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well be called the suppression of the Urine. It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Masters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the weakness of the Bladder, when the water conduit is stopped with gross humors, or with matter descending from the Liver, or from some Inflammation or hard Knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit, or for that the sinews of the bladder are numbed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horse being long in Travel, and not suffering him to stale; but most commonly and oftentimes it cometh from obstructions in the Kidneys, where, by the causes aforesaid, a certain red Gravel being bred, and falling down into the conduits, by mixture of flegm and other gross humours, is there brought to be a hard stone, and stoppeth the passage of the Urine. For the signs there needeth no more but this, that he would faine piss, but cannot.

The cure, according to the opinion of the most antientest Farriers, is first to draw out his yard, and bathe it well with white wine, and pick it, and scour it well, lest it be stopped with dirt and filthiness, then put a little Oyl of Cammomil into his yard with a wax candle, and a bruised clove of Garlick: but if that will not force him to stale, then take of Parsley a handful, of coriander one handful, stamp them and strain them with a quart of white wine, and dissolve therein one ounce of Cake Sope, and give it lukewarm unto the horse to drink & see that you keep him as warm as may be, and let him drink no cold water for the space of five or six days, and when you would have him to stale, let it either be on good plenty of straw or upon the grass, or in a Sheep Coat. Others (and those of the best esteem for horse-leach-craft at this day) use only to give white-wine, Cake-sope, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horse drink it warm.

Others use to annoint the Horses belly first with warm water, then when it is dried, to anoint it again with Sallet-Oyl, Hogs-grease and Tar mixt together and made warm, and so hold a hot Iron against his belly whilst it is anointing, that the Oyntment may the better



better enter the skin : But I hold this Medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other pain in the belly, than for the Stone ; yet it is approved good for all. Others use to take a pint of white-wine or Ale, and mix it with a little Garlick, and the whites of ten Eggs, and give it the horse to drink : or else give him the juyce of red-Colewarts mixt with white-wine, or the root of Alexanders bruised and sodden in wine to drink, and wash his yard with Vinegar. Others use to take either Worm-wood, Southernwood or Galingale, or Mallows, or Pimpernel, some of these, or any one of those, stamp and strained, and give it the horse with Ale to drink. Others use to take a pint of white-wine, half a pint of Burr seed beaten very small, two ounces of Parsley-seed, half a handful of Hyssop, half an ounce of Black sope, mix them all well together, and warm it and give it the horse to drink : or else take un-set Leeks, and stamp them small, and Sope, Milk, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drink. Others use to take a Nutmeg, and a handful of Parsley-seed, beat them to powder, then take as much Butter, and mix them all together in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the horse lukewarm to drink : or else take the seed of Smallage, Parsley, Saxafras, the Roots of Philupendula, Cherry-stone Kirnels, Grummel-seeds, and Broom-seed, of each a like Quantity, beat them into fine powder, and give it the horse with a pint or a quart of white-wine.

Now albeit, these Medicines before rehearsed, are daily in practice, and approved very soveraign, yet for mine own part, I have found none more soveraign than this : Take a quart of strong Ale, and put it into a pottle pot ; then take as many keen Raddish Roots, clean washed, being slit through and bruised, as will fill up the pot ; then stopping the pot very close that no Air may come in, let it so stand four and twenty hours, then strain the Ale and the Roots very hard into a clean Vessel, and give it the horse fasting in the Morning to drink : then ride him a little up and down, and so set him up warm, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must do divers Mornings together.



## CHAP. LXXXVI.

*Of a Horse that pisseth Blood.*

**T**Here is nothing more certain, than that a horse many times will piss blood instead of Urine, the cause (as the most Antient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these Grounds; either over-much Labour, or too heavy a burthen, especially when the horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to break some vein in his Body, and then you shall see clear blood come out and no Urine at all; but if the blood be mixt with Urine, then they suppose it cometh from the Kidneys, having some ragged Stone therein, which through great Travel doth fret the veins of the Kidneys, and make them bleed, through which as the Urine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine own part I have not found any greater cause for the pissing of blood than the taking up of a horse from Grass in the strength of Winter, (as about *Christmas*) and presently, without a days rest in the Stable, to thrust him into a long and weary Journey; from this cause I have seen many Horses after two or three dayes Journey, to piss blood in most grievous manner. The signs are needless. The cure according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is this: First, let the horse blood in the palate of the mouth, to convert the blood the contrary way; then take of Tragagant which hath been steeped in White-Wine half an ounce, of Poppy seed, one dram and one scruple, and of Storax as much, and twelve pine Apple Kernels; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the horse thereof every morning the space of seven days, the quantity of a Walnut, infused in a quart of sweet Wine. Other latter Farriers use to let the horse blood in the Neck, and boyl that blood with Wheat, and with the powder of dried Pomegranate Pills; then strain it, and give it him three or four mornings together to drink and let him by no means travel thereupon: or else give him of husked Beans boiled with husks of Acorns beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a drink with the Roots of Daffodil mingled with Wheat-flower, and Summach sodden long in Water, and so to be given to the horse with sweet Wine: or else to make him drink of Goats Milk and Sallet-Oyl, straining thereunto a little Frumenty: or else to give him sodden Beans and  
Deers



Deers suet in Wine, each of these are of like force and goodnes. Now there be others which use for this Disease to take Barley, and seeth in the juyce of Gum-folly, and give him the Barly to eat, and the juyce to drink : or else take the powder of Licoras and Anniseeds rouled up in Honey, and make round Balls thereof, and cast down the horses Throat two or three of them : Lastly, and the best take Licoras, Anniseeds, and Garlick bruised together with Sallet-Oyl and Honey, and give it in a quart of new Milk to the horse to drink, it is very soveraign also ; and these two Medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any Cold or Glanders.

## C H A P. LXXXVII.

*Of the Colt Evil.*

**T**HE Colt Evil by the most ancient Farriers, especially the *Italians*, whose hot Countrey affordeth the Beasts of more hot and strong Natures than ours doth, is thought to be a continual standing Erection, together with an unnatural Swelling of the Yard, proceeding either from some Wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinews, or Pipes of the Yard, or else through the abundance of feed, provoked by the natural heat of the horse ; but our Farriers, who have not seen that experience, because our horses are of a colder temper, say, it is only a swelling of the sheath of the Yard, and of that part of the Belly about the Yard, together with the cold also proceeding from corrupt feed, which cometh out of the Yard, and remaining within the sheath, there Putrifieth : and this judgment we find by experience to be most true. Now you shall understand, that Geldings as well as horses are subject thereunto, because they want natural heat to expel feed any further.

The signs are only the outward Swelling of the sheath and Cod, and none other : and the best cure is, first to wash the sheath clean with luke-warm Vinegar, then draw out the yard and wash it also ; which done, ride the horse twice every day, that is, Morning and Evening, into some deep running water up to the Belly, tossing him to and fro, to allay the heat of his Members, till the swelling be vanished, and if you swim him now and then it will not do amiss. Others use to bath his Cods and yard with the juyce of House-lick, or with the water wherein Kinholm hath been sod. Now this Colt-Evil will sometimes stop the horses urine that he cannot piss : then you shall



shall take new Ale, and a little black Sope, and give it the Horse to drink. Others use to wash the Horses Cods and sheath with butter and Vinegar made warm. Others use to wash his yard and Cods with the juyce of Hemlock, or else take bean-flower, Vinegar, and Bole-Armonick, and mixing them together, lay it plaisterwise to his sheath and Cods. Others make him a plaister of Wine-lees, House-Leek, and Bran mixt together, and laid to his sheath and Cods: But if the first receipt will serve, I would not wish you to use any other medicine.

## CHAP. LXXXVIII.

*Of the Mattering of the Yard.*

**T**His Disease of the Mattering of the Yard, is seldom seen but amongst the hot Races or Breeds of Horses, as the Jennet, the Barbary, and such like; and it hapneth ever at covering time, when the horse and Mare both being too hot, do burn themselves, by which means there issueth forth of the Horses yard much filthy matter. The signs are the falling down of the Matter, and a swelling at the end of the yard, and the horse can by no means draw up his yard, or cover it within his sheath. The cure is, to take a pint of white-Wine and boyl therein a quartern of Roch Allom, and with a large Serringe or Squirt, squirt in three or four squirtsfulls into his yard one after another, and be sure that your squirt go home unto the bottom, that the Liqueur or Lotion may scour the bloody matter away: this do five or six times every day till the horse be whole.

## CHAP. LXXXIX.

*Of the shedding of the Seed.*

**T**He shedding of the Seed, or the falling away of the Sperm in Horses, is none other than that which we call in Men the running of the Reins: it cometh, as our old Farriers say, either by abundance and rankness of Seed, or by the weakness of the Stones, and Seed-Vessels, not able to retain the Seed until it be digested and thickned; but truly for mine own part, I think it cometh oftner (especially among our English horses) by some great strain in Leaping, or by teaching a horse to bound, and making him bound  
above



above the compass of his natural strength. The signs are only the shedding of his seed, which will be white, thin, and waterish. The cure, according to the antient Experiments, is, first to ride the horse into some cold Water up to the belly, insomuch that his stones may be covered with water; which done, bathe his Fundament with Water and Oyl, then cover him exceeding warm, and give him every day to drink of red Wine, and hogs-dung, till the flux of his seed stay; but latter experience hath found this Receipt better. Take of red Wine a quart, and put therein a little Acatium, the juyce of Plantain, and a little Mastick, and give it him to drink; and then bathe all his back with red wine, and Oyl of Roses mixt together, but other Farriers take Venice-Turpentine, and being washt, beat it well with half so much Sugar, and then make round balls as big as walnuts, and give the horse five every morning till the flux stay.

## CHAP. XC.

*Of the falling of the Yard.*

**T**He falling down of the Yard, is when a horse hath no strength to draw up his yard within the sheath, but lets it hang down between his legs ill-favouredly: it cometh (as our best Farriers suppose) either through the weakness of the Member, by means of some Resolution in the Muscles and Sinews, serving the same, caused by some great strain or stripe on the back; or else through extream weariness and Tying. The sign is only the apparent hanging down of the Member: and the cure is, (according to some opinions) to wash the horses yard in Salt water from the Sea, or for want thereof with Water and Salt: but if that will not prevail, then prick all the outmost skin of his yard with a sharp needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deep; and then wash all the pricks with strong Vinegar, and this will not only make him draw up his yard again, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it up again. There be other Farriers which for this disease will put into the pipe of the Horses yard, honey and Salt boyled together, and made Liquid, or else a quick flye, or a grain of Frankincense, or a Clove of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and bathe his back with Oyl, Wine, and Nitre made warm and mingled together.

But the best cure, according to our English practice, is, first, to wash all the yard with white-wine warmed, and then anoint it with Oyl



Oyl of Roses and Honey mixt together, and so put it up into the sheath, and with a little Bolster of canvas keep it from falling down, and dress him thus once in four and twenty hours, until he be recovered, and in any case let his back be kept as warm as is possible, both with cloth and a charge of Plaister made of Bole Armonick, Eggs, Wheat-flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine, and Vinegar; or else lay next his back a wet Sack, or wet Hay, and a dry cloth over it, and that will keep his back exceeding warm.

## CHAP. XCI.

*Of the Diseases incident to Mares, and first of the Barrenness of the Womb.*

**T**HE only Disease incident to the Womb of a Mare, (as far forth as our Farriers are experienced) is barrenness which may proceed from divers causes, as through the intemperance of the Matrix, being either too hot and fiery, or too cool and moist, or too dry; or else too short, or too narrow, or having the neck thereof turned awry, or by means of some obstruction, or stopping in the matrix, or in that the Mare is too fat or too lean, and divers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, to take a good handful of Leeks, and stamp them in a mortar with four or five spoonfuls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flies, called Cantharides, then strain them all together with a sufficient quantity of water to serve the Mare therewith two days together, by pouring the same into her nature with a Clyster-pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three days next following, offer the horse unto her that should cover her, and after she is covered, wash her Nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which use to take of Nitrum, of Sparrows dung, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity well wrought together, and make a suppository, and put that into her Nature, and it will cause her both to desire the horse, and also to conceive. There be some of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the horses mouth that should cover her. Of all which, let only experience be your warrant.



## CHAP. XCII.

*Of the Pestilent Consumption in Mares.*

**T**Here is a certain pestilent consumption incident to Mares when they are with Foal, proceeding from cold flegm, gathered by raw foggy food in the Winter-season, which descending from the Kidneys, doth oppress the Matrix, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that, if she be not holpen, she will want strength to foal her foal. The signs are, sudden Leanness, and a Drooping of Spirit, with much dislike of meat, a continual desire to be laid. The cure is, to pour into her Nostrils three pints of fish brine, called Garume, three or four mornings together, and if the grief be very great, then take five pints, and it will make her vent all flegm at her Nostrils.

## CHAP. XCIII.

*Of the rage of Love in Mares.*

**I**T is reported by some of our English Farriers, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the year, when their Blood begins to wax warm, if they chance, when they go to the water, to see their own shadows therein; that presently they will fall into extream love therewith, and from that love into such a hot rage, that they will forget either to eat or drink, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The cure of this folly, is, presently to lead the Mare to the water, and there to let her see her self as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and so take away her folly.

## CHAP. XCIV.

*Of Mares which cast their Foals.*

**T**He occasion why Mares cast their Foals, that is, to foal them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as strains, strokes, intemperate riding, rushings, hard wintrings, or too great fatness, and such like. Now you shall understand, that this aborishment, or untimely casting of a Foal, is most dangerous to the life of

R

a Mare



a Mare: For Nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect custom, which is the preservation of health, cannot chuse but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the body and pores being set open to the Air, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot chuse but be suffocated with unwholsom Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foal, and withall falleth sick upon the same, you shall presently take her into the house, and set her up very warm, then give her two spoonful of the powder of Diapente well brewed in a pint of Muscadine, and feed her with sweet Hay, and warm mashies, for at least a week after.

## CHAP. XCV.

*Of Mares that are hard of Foaling.*

**I**F it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduits, which lead from the Matrix, be so straightned that the Mare cannot Foal, and so be in danger of her life: then it shall be good that you help her by holding and stopping her Nostrils with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not have passage, and she will Foal with a great deal the more ease, and much sooner; and sure the pain is nothing, because a Mare always Foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath Foaled, she cannot void her Secundine, which is the skin wherein the Foal is wrapped, in that natural manner as she ought, you shall then take a good handful or two of Fennel, and boyl it in water: then take half a pint of that, and another half pint of old Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of Oyl, and mingle them all together over the fire, and being but lukewarm, pour it into the Mares Nostrils, and hold her Nostrils close with your hand, to keep it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will avoid her Secundine presently.

## CHAP. XCVI.

*Of Making a Mare to cast her Foal.*

**I**F at any time you would have your Mare to cast her Foal, as having present occasion to use her, or in that the Foal is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a bottle of new milk, and two handfuls of Savin chopt and bruised, and putting them together,  
boil



boyl them till one half be consumed; then strain it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warm to drink, then presently gallop her a good space, then set her up, do thus two Mornings, and before the third she will have cast her Foal. Others use with their hands to kill the Foal in the Mares belly, but it is dangerous, and the former Medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us return again to horses and Mares in general.

## CHAP. XCVII.

*Of the Drinking of Horse-Leaches by Horses.*

**I**F a horse at any time drink down Horse-Leaches, they will suck his blood and kill him. The signs are, the Horse will hang down his head to the ground, and abundance of filthy slaver will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some Blood also. The cure is presently to give a pint of Sallet-Oyl to drink, and that will make them fall away, and kill them. But the best is, to give him half an ounce of Diapente brewed in a pint of strong Beer or Ale.

## CHAP. XCVIII.

*Of swallowing down hens-dung, or any Venemous thing whatsoever.*

**I**F a Horse chance to swallow down any Hens-dung with his Hay, it will fret his Guts, and make him to void much filthy matter at his Fundament. The cure whereof, is, to take a pint of Wine, half a pint of Honey, and two spoonfuls of Smallage-seed bruised, and mixing them well together, to give it the Horse to drink, and then to walk him well upon the same that he may empty his Belly. But if the Horse chance to lick up any other Venemous thing, as Neut, or such like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members then the cure is, first to put him into a sweat, either by cloaths or Exercise; then to let him bloud in the palate of the mouth, and look how much he bleedeth, so much let him swallow down hot: or else give him strong Wine and Salt mixt together. Or else take the Root, and leaves, and fruit of Briony, which being burnt to ashes, give the horse a good spoonful thereof, with a pint of sweet Wine to drink.

Now for mine own part, I have ever used to take a pint of Sallet-



Oyl, and two spoonfuls of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder Diapente, and brewing them together, give it the horse to drink, or for want of Diapente, so much of the shaving either of Ivory, or an old Stags horn, especially the tips thereof burnt.

## CH A P. XCIX.

*Of Purging Medicines in general, and first of the Suppository.*

**P**urging is said of our most ancient Farriers, to be an emptying and discharging of all and every superfluous humours which dis-temper the body with their evil qualities; for such humours breed evil nutriment, which, when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heat, then must it by force either be taken away by Purgation, clister, or Suppository. Now forasmuch as a horse is troubled with many diseases in the Guts, and that nothing can purge the gut with that gentleness which a Suppository doth, I will here first begin to speak of Suppositories.

Understand then, that a horse being surfeited, and full of evil humors needing to be purged, it is best first to give him a Suppository, lest if you should come to apply a clister, the great gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the Medicine being not able to work beyond it, lose both labour and vertue; so that I make account a Suppository is but only a preparative to a clister, and but only to cleanse and make loose the great gut, which cometh to the Tuel. The gentle Suppository then, and that which purgeth flegm in the best manner, is, to take a square piece of cake soap, or white new Castle soap, about five or six inches long, and shaving it round till it be not above three inches about in the midst, and a little smaller at each end than in the midst: then anoint it over with Sallet-Oyl, and so with your hand thrust it up more than a full span into his Fundament: then suddenly clap his Tail to his Tuel, and hold it hard and close more than half an hour, in which space the most part of the Suppository will be wasted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the Suppository at his pleasure. The next suppository to this, and which purgeth choler abundantly, is,

to



to take Savin stamp't small, Stave-faker and Salt, and boyl them in honey till it be thick, then take and knead it, and roul it of a pretty thick long roul, as before you were taught for the hard soap, and minister it at his Tuel. The next to this, and that which purgeth Melancholy, is, to take a keen Onion, and pilling off the skin, jag it a little cross-wise with your knife, and so thrust it up into the horses Fundament. There is, besides these Suppositories, one other Suppository which is, to take a quart of honey, and boil it on the fire till it come to be thick like a Salve, then pour it forth upon a Table, and knead it like a piece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow stiff, (*as it will do when it begins to cool*) then roll it up under your hand and make it in the form of a Suppository as it was before shewed, and administer it in the same manner: this suppository is good to purge the gut of any foul humour, and therewithal is comfortable to the body.

Now you must also understand, that as these suppositories are preparative before Glisters, so they are likewise to be used simply of themselves, where the sickness of the horse carrieth no great danger: for upon every slight occasion, or small driness, which is to be dissolved with the most gentle Medicine, to administer a glister, were to bring the horses body to such an intemperate looseness, as would prove much worse then the former contrary driness: therefore I wish every careful Farrier (because the body of a horse would not be tampered withal too much by Physick) first, in the case of costiveness, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppository: as namely, the first prescribed and naked like a mans fist, or else like a roul or quantity of Roch-Allom, or else four inches of a great tallow candle or Percher of four in the pound, which if it works effectually, and keep the horses body soluble, then to proceed no further; but in case it do not, but that the offensive matter still breedeth and encreaseth, then to administer a clister, and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this general rule, and never to fail in the performance, which is, never to administer either Suppository or clister, but first immediately before you give it, to rake your horse, which raking, is in this manner. First you shall anoint all your hand and arm over either with Sallet-Oyl, sweet Butter, or fresh Grease, and then thrust it into the Horses Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, Flegm, and filthy matter that you can feel, even as high up as the great bag: Which done, then either administer your  
Suppository



Suppository or Clister, which you please, at your leifure, and in any case, whilst the horse is thus in Physick, keep him exceeding warm.

### CHAP. C.

#### *Of Clisters, and their Uses.*

**T**He natures and properties of clisters are divers, and therefore it is necessary that every careful Farrier learn to know to what end they serve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded: For every clister is to be made according to the Disease. Now of clisters, some are to ease griefs, and to allay the sharpness of the humors; some to bind, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heal Ulcers. These clisters by cleansing the Guts, refresh the vital parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and strong purgation. Therefore, whensoever a horse, through grossness of humours, corruption of blood, or abundance of flegm, choler or Melancholy, is brought unto that evil habit of Body, that of necessity he must be purged, and that especially his pain is in his Guts and Body, you shall then, as before I said (having made a probation of a Suppository) first of all administer a clister, lest by purging suddenly with any purgation or Potion, you stir up a multitude of evil humours, which finding no passage downward (because the Guts being stopped with Wind and Dregs) do strike upward, and so perhaps put the horse into much greater danger.

Now for the composition of clisters, you shall understand, that they be made of four things; that is, of decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyl, or such like unctuous matter, as Butter, or soft Grease, and fourthly of divers Salts, to provoke the vertue expulsive. A Decoction is the broath of certain herbs and Simples boyled together in water, until the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such decoctions, you may if you please, use some fat Beef-broth, or the broath of Sheeps-head, or such like, or Milk, or Whey, or some such like liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey, or with Sugar, according to the quality of the Disease; the clister being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of pain: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together; or else Absterfive, which is, wiping away, or cleansing of filthy matter. Now of this Decoction, or broath, being very clean strained, you shall never take above 3  
pints



pints at the most, and many times but a quart; into which you shall put such Drugs as are needful, exceeding not at the most, above three or four ounces, according as the simples be more or less violent: of the Oyl you shall never use in a Clister above half a pint, and of Salt not above three or four Drams. You shall also continually administer your Clister luke-warm, either with some long Horn or a large Clister-pipe made for the purpose, and fixed to the largest bladder you can get; and this Clister-pipe is of all the best, and doth least lose Labour. When you do administer a Clister, you shall set the horses hinder parts somewhat higher then the fore-parts, and then you shall put the Clister-pipe in at his Tuel into his Fundament up to the head, and having the confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good strength into his Body. A Clister should be administred to a horse when he is rather empty than full paunched, whether it be in the fore-noon or after-noon. Now for the retaining or holding of the Clister in the horses Body, three quarters of an hour is sufficient, of what quality soever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as soon as the Clister is administred unto the horses body, you must draw out the pipe with all the gentleness that may be, and suddenly clap his tail to his Tuel, and so hold it with your hand, without any moving or stirring of the horse, till the Medicine hath his full time of working.

☞ Now to come unto particular Clisters, that you may know which Clister is for which purpose; the first is, take of the pulp of Coliquintida, half an ounce, of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary and of Wormwood, of each half a handful, of Castoreum a quarter of an ounce, boil them in three pints of water, then being strained you shall dissolve therein of Gerologundinum three ounces, of Salt three quarters of an ounce, and of Oyl-Olive half a pint, and so lukewarm administer it Clister-wise, as hath been before expressed: this Clister is exceeding soveraign for the pestilence in Horses, or for any Fever of what nature soever.

☞ The next is, to take the decoction of Mallows, and to mix therewithal, either fresh Butter, or Sallet Oyl, and so lukewarm administer it: this is of all Clisters the most gentlest, and as the former Clister is abstersive or cleansing, so this is lenitive and a great easer of pain: it is most soveraign for a horse that is taken, or that hath any contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any costiveness in a horse whatsoever, proceeding from inward surfeit or sickness, as from  
the



the surfeit by Provender, foundring in the body, and such like. The next is, to take of Salt-water, or clean Brine a quart, and dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and then luke-warm administer it: this Clister is very good for the Cholick, or any other sickness of the guts or belly. And thus from these three Clisters you may compound many clisters; but in mine opinion, if you use no more than them only, they will be fully sufficient.

## C H A P. CI.

*Of Purgations and their Uses.*

**T**HE purging of Horses is ever by one of these two Ways, Either by Pills, Or by potion: pills are any solid and Substantial stuff fixed together in one body, and being made into round balls are cast down the horses throat. And a potion is, when you give the horse any liquid purging matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other Liquid stuff. Now for pills, they only purge and make clean the head and brain, bringing flegm and other gross humors down into the Excrements: and potions cleanse the stomach, Guts and every other inward Member. Now the art of the true careful Farrier is, in chusing of the Simples, whereof these pills or potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the same. First then, it is needful that every good Farrier (before he go about to purge his horse) know with what ill humour a horse is oppressed, as whether it proceed from Choler, Flegm, or Melancholy, and where the humours do most abound; and then what simples are best to purge those humours, and with what property, quality and temperament they be indued; for some simples are most violent, and next couzens to strong Poysons, as Scammony, or Coloquintida: some again are gentle, and rather nourishing than Medicinal, as Manna, Cassia, Whey, Prunes, and such like: and some are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a mean, as Rhubarb, Agarick, Sene, and Aloes. Now the ancient Farriers did use to purge their Horses with the pulp of Coloquintida, sometimes with the Roots of wild Cowcumbers, and sometimes with the broath of a sodden Whelp mixt with Nitrum and such like, but at this day they are not of our practice, and therefore I wish him, that for his experience, still to make a tryal of strong Medicines, or know the working of every simple,



simpler, (which is a most praise-worthy ambition,) first to make his proofs upon Jades, whose loss he respecteth not, and so by that working to adventure on better horses.

But to return to my purpose, the Farrier who goeth about to purge a horse by purgation, must consider the nature of the horses Disease, and the Strength of the horse, and with them joyn the nature, strength and quantity of the Medicine; he must also consider the Climate under which the horse is bred, the time of the disease, the time of the year, and the time of the day. For as the Diseases and the humours which cause the Disease, are sundry, so they must be avoided by sundry Medicines, sundry ways compounded, according as experience from a continual practise shall instruct you; wherein you are to observe and note, that weak, delicate, and tender horses are not to be purged with that Violence, which strong, stubborn and sturdy horses are, and therefore in such cases, the quality and quantity is to be looked unto of every simple. The Climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the Disease: for some Diseases must be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Pestilence, Yellows, Staggers, and all violent inward diseases, and some not till the water be thoroughly digested, as cold, Strangles, and Apostumations. Now albeit the sickness proceeds from cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot simples in summer as in winter; Nor in the contrary case, so cold things in Winter as in Summer, whereby you see the time and the season of the year is to be respected. Then touching respect of the day you are to observe, that day to be best that is most temperate, sith too much heat maketh a horse Faint, and too much cold doth hinder the Medicine from working. A little regard is to be had in the wind and weather; for a moist day with a South Wind, is to be preferred before a North Wind with a dry day. Now the best hour of receiving any kind of potion, is ever in the Morning, after he hath fasted from meat and drink all the night before. As soon as your Horse hath received any Pill or Potion, let him be walked, or gently ridden up and down one hour at the least, and then set up and suffered to stand on the Bit two hours after, well littered and cloathed and stopped; but if you perceive that he beginneth to grow sick or ill (as most commonly horses will) then you shall suffer him to lie down, and as soon as his sickness is past, you shall offer him to drink a Mash of Malt, and water lukewarm: from



any other meat, keep him fasting till his Medicine have done Working.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themselves ; you shall easily understand, that although the antient Farriers do make but two kinds, that is to say, Pills and Purgations, yet I divide them into three, that is to say, Scourings, Pills, and purgations, Scourings are those wholsom, natural, and gentle purging Medicines, which stirring up no great flux of humours, do only keep the body clean from such evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholsome in health as in sickness, and may most properly be termed preparatives, or preparers of the body to entertain more stronger Medicines. To speak then first of the most gentlest and natural scouring, it is only Grass being giving to a horse only fifteen dayes together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not scoureth. Next unto Grass is Forrage, which is only the blades of green corn as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given seven days and no more. Next is green Thistles, being cut up, and given horse to eat the space of five days and no more. And the last of the this nature is the Mash, made in this manner : take a peck of ground Malt, and put it into a pail, then take a Gallon and a half of Water boyling hot from the fire, and put it into the Malt, then with a staff, Mash and stir them together at least half an hour till tasting the water you feel it as sweet as Honey, then being lukewarm, give it the horse to drink. ¶ All these scourings do only but cleanse the Guts, and cool the body, adding comforts to the spirits and engendring strength, only the Mash is to be used after labour, or instead of drink in the time of any great sickness. Scourings of a little stronger nature are these : first, when you give your horse any Provender, to mix with half a peck of Oats, a handful or two of clean drest Hempseed : or else to take a good quantity of Box-Tree Leaves, and put them into a pewter Dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leisurely till they be so hard that you may crush them into powder, then take as much of the powder of Brimstone as there is powder of Box, and mix them together, and amongst half a peck of Oats, mix a handful of this powder, and give it the Horse to eat ; both these scourings are to be used after labour, especially when the horse hath sweat much.

These two scourings work upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expel ; they purge the stomach, Head, and Intrails, they kill



kill all kind of Worms, and dry up Flegm. Scourings of the strongest nature are to take of Sallet-Oil half a pint and of new Milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together, and give it the horse Luke-warm: or else take a pint of Muscadine, and half a pint of Sallet Oil, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drink: or else half a pint of Oyl, and a pint of Sack mixt together, and give the Horse to drink lukewarm.

These scourings cleanse the Head, Body, and Guts of all Flegm or molten Grease, which any violent labour hath dissolved; they are exceeding good for any manner of cold, or stoppings in the Wind-pipes, and if you add unto them good store of Sugar-candy, it will preserve and keep the horse from sickness. Now for Pills, you shall very plainly understand, that the first and easiest are these, either to take twenty Cloves of Garlick clean pealed and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and so roul up the Garlick in four or five balls or pellets, as big as two Walnuts apiece; and so taking out the horses tongue, thrust them down his throat one after another: or else to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders; beat them well together in a Mortar, and then make it into four or five Balls, and put them down the Horses throat. Pills of somewhat strong nature, are to take a handful of Rosemary leaves, and chopping them small, mix them with a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and then making it into round balls, give them unto the horse: Or else take round pieces of raw Melons, and thrust them down the horses throat: or else to take five green Figs, and put them down the horses throat.

☞ The strongest pill is this: take of Lard two pound, laid in water 2 hours, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the clean fat thereof, and stamp it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Liquorish, of Anniseeds, and of Fenugreek, of each beaten into powder, one ounce and a half, of Aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of Agarick half an ounce, knead all these together like a paste, and make thereof four or five balls, and give it the Horse. The last recited Pill is singular good for the dry Cough, and all the other Pills are most soveraign for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from flegm, Melancholy, or any other cold or moist cause whatsoever. Now for Purgations, which are the strongest cleansers of the body, they be these: take two ounces of Myrrh, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and it will purge all sickness which proceedeth of Choler: the signs



whereof are, his belly will swell, be very hot, and he can neither dung nor break wind. Take a pint of Wine and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimstone, and half an ounce of Myrrh beaten to powder, and give it the horse Luke-warm, and it will purge all inward Diseases proceeding of Melancholy. Two spoonfuls of the powder Diapente, given with half a pint of Swines greafe, purgeth all Diseases proceeding of Flegm. Take as much black Soap as a Walnut, a quart of new Milk, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-oyl, and give it the horse luke-warm, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the horse exceeding sick. Take the Guts of a Tench or Barbel, being cut into little small pieces, and give it the horse in a quart of white Wine, and it will purge the horse from all costiveness or pain in the Guts. Rye being boiled, so that it burst not, then dried again, and given the horse instead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms, Take of Radish roots one ounce, of the root called Panax, and of Scamony, of each half an ounce, beat all these together, and boyl them in a quart of honey, Then give the horse two spoonfuls of this in a quart of Ale luke-warm to drink, and it will purge all gross humours, from whence proceedeth either the falling evil, or any disease of the brain.

Take and boil Elicampane Roots in Milk till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap, and then adding thereto half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, give it the horse to drink luke-warm, and this will purge and cleanse any kind of Glanders. Take of sweet Soap a quarter of a pound, and make it into three balls, and give them to the horse, and it will purge all evil humours whatsoever, both violently, and most abundantly.

#### CHAP. CII.

*A most excellent rare scouring for any horse, sick or sound, and especially for running or hunting horses, whose greafe must necessarily be molten.*

**F**Orasmuch as the greatest Art which doth belong to the keeper either of Running or hunting horses, consisteth in the taking away from the horse his gross glut and fat, which not only offendeth the vital parts, but also stoppeth up the Conduits and Vessels of wind, and that it cannot any way be done, but by scouring after exercise; you shall understand, that the best of all scourings, which hath hitherto been approved, is this, which I will here set down:

You



You shall take twenty Raisins of the Sun, and pick out the stones, and ten figs, which you shall slit in the midst round-wise, boyl them in a pottle of running water till the water be consumed, and thickned: then take the powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy finely sears'd, and mix it with the Raisins and Figs, stamping and working them together till it be brought to a stiff paste, then making round Balls thereof of a pretty bigness, roll and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give so many of them unto the horse as you shall think meet for his strength; provided that the day before, you must give your horse such exercise as will be sure to melt his grease, and that immediately before you give him this Medicine, you also warm him thoroughly, that the humors being again stirred up, the Medicine may work more effectually.

## C H A P. CIII.

*Of Neezing or Fumigation, and the use thereof.*

**T**Here is yet also another manner of purging of a horse, and especially his head, and that is, by forcing him to Neeze or snort violently at his nose, casting forth all filthy, and gross matter which otherwise will offend and oppress the brain; and this Neezing is wrought sometimes by fumes or smoaks, sometimes by powders, and sometimes by Oyls, the sharpness of which, tickling the tender and quick parts of the head, do compel this snorting and Neezing: Surely there is no purgation more wholesome, for as it cleanseth and separateth gross matter, so it comforteth & maketh strong the brain. Now to come unto particular medicines which do procure this neezing, they be these: Squirt into a horses nostrils either mans urine which is old, or the Urine of an Ox which hath had much rest, and it will force a horse to neeze, and is most wholesome for any quotidian Fever. Take the powder of Gamdragant, Eusens, and damask Roses well mixt together, and blow it with a Quill into the Horses Nostrils, and it is good either against the Fever in Summer or Winter, Take warm Vinegar and squirt it into his Nostrils, and it is comfortable against the Feaver which cometh by raw digestion.

Take Garlick stalks a handful, being broke into little pieces, and a good quantity of Frankincense, and being put upon a Chafing-dish and Coals, hold the Chafing-dish under the horses Nostrils, so that the fume may ascend up into his head: and this is most excellent



cellent against the Head-ach. Take Feathers and Brimstone, and burn them on a Chafing dish of coals under the horses Nose : or blow Pepper and Perithree beaten to powder up into his Nostrils, either of these are most excellent against the sleeping evil. Take the powder of Mother-wort, and blow it up into the horses Nostrils, and it is good against the falling-evil. Take two Goose-feathers anointed over with Oil de Bay, and thrust them up and down in the Horses Nostrils : or else take Sage, Penny-rial, and Wheat, long sodden together, and put into a bag as hot as may be, which bag would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the Smoak and favour thereof may ascend up into his Nostrils : Or take a clout anointed with Sope or Oil de Bay, and rub it up and down his Nostrils as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstructions in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphur, and burn them on the coals and hold it under the horses Nose : or take Oil de Bay, Euforbium and white Hellebore, and anointing two Feathers therewith, thrust them up into the horses Nostrils : both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the stalks of Briony, or wild Vine, two handfals, and bruise them betwixt two Stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, & fasten the bag so to the horses head that the scent may go up into his Nostrils without touching the herb with his Mouth, and this is excellent against the mourning of the Chine, or any inward Cough. Take of Rosemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dried and beaten into fine powder, of each a like weight, & with a quill blow them up into the horses Nostrils, or take the powder of white Pepper, or of Salt Niter, or of Iris Ilirica, or black Eleboris, and blow them with a Quill up into the horses nostrils : or take Linnen chopt, dipt in the dregs of Oyl, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out again, and let the smoak ascend up into the horses Nostrils : or squirt into his Nostrils Aristolochia mixt with wine : or Salt nitre mixt with water, or Salt and Roch Allom mixt with Wine, or take ground Ivy beaten small, and thrust up into his Nose : or Bay-berries beaten small, and burnt on the coals under the horses Nose : Or a coal of fire put into a lump of wet Hay, making a smothering smoak, and held under the horses Nose. And all of these are most excellent against any Disease of the head, especially Staggers, colds, Glaunders, Strangle, and such like.



Yet all these have their several imperfections: The best Fumes then of all others whatsoever, is, to take the best Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruising them grossly together, burn them under the Horses Nose.

## CHAP. CIV.

*Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their several uses.*

**F**Rictions or Bathes, are a certain rubbing, anointing, or bathing of a Horses body all over, especially against the hair, because the Medicine may sink in so much the better, with Comfortable and Sovereign Unguents, whose vertues do loosen the skin, chear up the inward spirits, and spread a lively heat and feeling over the whole body: and of Frictions, both according to the opinion of the old Farriers and also of the best of this present age, these are the most soveraign. Take of Damask Roses one pound, of old Oyl one pint, of strong Vinegar a pint & an half, of Mint and Rue, beaten into powder of each one ounce and a half, together with one old dry Nut, beat them, and mingle them well together: Then being strained and made lukewarm, if it be in the Summer time, and that the Sun shine hot, take the horse abroad: But if otherwise, keep him in the Stable, and heating a Bar of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over, & on each side the horse, and with the oyntment rub and chafe the horse all over against the hair, until the horse begin to sweat; then cloath the Horse very warm, and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all Winter Feavers, or any inward sickness that cometh of Cold. Take of black Elleborus two or three handfuls, and boyl it in a sufficient quantity of strong Vinegar, and with that rub and chafe all the Horses head and body quite over once or twice a day, and it is most excellent against Frenzie, Madnes, or any drynes, or Scaliness of the Skin.

Take Oil de Bay, or Dialthea and anoint all the horses body all over therewith, holding a pan of coals, or a hot Bar of Iron near the Oyntment, to make it sink in; or else make him a bathe of Running water, wherein is boyled Rue, Wormwood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyssop, and bathe all his Body therewith: Either of these are most soveraign for the mourning of the Chine, or any Disease of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleen. Take Wine and Oyl, and having mixt them together, chafe and rub the horses body there-  
with



with, and it is most soveraign for any inward sickness, especially the Liver. To Bathe a horse in Salt water is very wholesome, both for the horses skin, and also for any Disease in the stomach.

Lastly, take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a Rose-cake, boil them together in water, then being boyled till the water be all consumed, add a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet Oyl, and mixing them together, bathe all the horses four Legs therewith, and all the parts of his body also: and there is nothing more soveraign for a horse that hath been tyred or over travelled. To let blood, and with that blood, and Oyl, and Vinegar, presently to anoint his body, helps most sorts of infirmities.

#### CHAP. CV.

*General Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diseases or Surfeits in Horses.*

**T**HERE is no Medicine more soveraign for all diseases which breed in a horses body, then to take half an ounce of the powder called Diapente, and brew it either with a pint of Sack, if it be for Colds, or Muskadine, if it be for heart sickness, and so give it the horse to drink fasting in the morning: and do this at least three mornings together, especially when the Horse beginneth first to droop. The next to this, is, to take of Selladine two handfuls, both Root and Leaves, chop them and bruise them: then take of Rue as much, of Red Sage and Mint as much, and of Aloes half an ounce: boyl these in a pottle of Beer or Ale till the one half be consumed, and then give it the horse luke-warm to drink.

Take four ounces of Diapente, and mix it with four ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a close Glass, and give half an ounce thereof with a pint of sweet wine to the horse to drink, and it is an excellent Drench. Take of Liquorish an ounce, of Anniseeds, Cumin-seeds, Elicampane Roots, of each half an ounce, of Turmerick and Bays, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper and Fenugreek, of each two drams, beat these small and searse them, and put five spoonfuls thereof into a quart of Ale warmed with a little butter or Oyl, and it is very soveraign for any disease coming of cold causes, Take a quart of good Ale or Wine, A raw Egg beaten and mingled with twelve scruples of quick Sulphur, and four scruples of Myrrh  
made



made into powder, and give it the horse to drink, it is a good drench, The powder of Brimstone mixt with sweet Wine, is a good drench also. The Root of the Sea Onion, the Roots of Poplar, called the Greek Rhamnos, mingled with common Salt, given in water, keepeth the Horse long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreek, and bruise it, seeth it in water till it wax thick, add a pound of sweet Butter, an ounce of Linseed Oyl, and as much of the Oil of Nuts: mingle them well together, and give it the Horse in three or four days to drink, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it self, or Rue simply of it self, boyled in Beer or Ale, and as much Brimstone as a Walnut, is an excellent drench for any long taken surfeit. Garlick and Housleek beaten together in a Mortar, and then boyled in Beer or Ale from a pottle to a Quart, then mixt with Liquorish, Anniseeds, and Sugar-Candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet Oil, is an excellent drench for any inward sickness, which doth proceed from hot causes, as is the Frenzy, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of general Drenches, and their uses.

## C H A P. CVI.

*How to make the Powder called Diapente.*

**T**His word DIAPENTE is as much as to say, Composition of five simples: for the Receipt is thus compounded. Take of Gentian, of Aristolochia, of Bayberies, of Myrrh, and of the shavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity, beat them into very fine powder, and then searse it. This powder is praised to be a Sovereign Preservative or Medicine against all inward Diseases: And therefore I would wish every Farrier, and all such as are the Masters of good Horses never to be without it.

## C H A P. CVII.

*A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench and singular Oyntment, called of the Italians Accopum.*

**T**Ake of Euforbium half an ounce, of Castoreum one ounce, of Adraces half a quarter of a pound, Bdellium half an ounce, and half a quarter, of pepper a quarter of a pound, Fox Grease half an ounce, Opoponax one ounce, Laserpitium, three quarters of an ounce,  
T
Amoniacum



Amoniacum half a quarter of a pound, Pidgeons dung as much, Galbanum half an ounce, Nitrum one ounce one quarter, Spuma Nitri three quarters of an ounce, Laudanum a full quarter of a pound, Perethrum and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cardanum two ounces, Seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound, Seed of Agnus Castus one ounce, Parsley half an ounce, dried Roots of Ireos, or Flower de-Luce, one ounce one quarter, Hyssop and Carpobalsamum a quarter of a pound, Oyl of Flower-de-luce a quarter of a pound, and half a quarter, Oyl de bay as much, Oyl of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter, the oldest Oyl Olive one pound and a half, Pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound, melt every one of these that will melt, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together, with the rest of the Simples beaten into fine powder; and after that they have been a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and strain it into a fair Vessel, and whensoever you will give your Horse any thereof, give it him with Wine, or four or five spoonfuls with a pint of Sack or Muscadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing stiff or hard, then soften it with the Oyl of Cypress, so that it may be good and thick.

This Confection is both a Medicine and an Oyntment, if you put it in the Horses Nostrils, it will draw out all noisom Humours, and discharge his head of all grief: if you anoint his body therewith, it healeth all Convulsions, Colds, and Driness, or Withering of the Body; and if you bathe his Limbs therewith, it driveth away all weariness and tiring; and if you give it him with Wine to drink, it cureth all kind of inward Maladies.

CHAP. CVIII.

*How to make the Oyl of Oats.*

**T**AKE of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt-Allom, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and cast it away; Then strain the Whey through a coarse Cloath in a clean Vessel: Then take a quarter of a peck of clean husked Oats that were never dried, and put them in the Whey, and set them on the fire till the Oats burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender that is full of holes, so that the Whey may go gently from them



them without any pressing (for you must keep the Oats as moist as may be : ) this done, put the Oats in a frying Pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually till you see the Vapour or smoak of them not ascend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan, then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a Press, press them most exceedingly, and look what cometh from them, is only the Oyl of them, which you must save in a close Glasse. Now there are other more Artificial and curious Ways to distill and Extract this Oyl, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every mean capacity. This Oyl of Oats is of all Medicines, and Simples whatsoever the most excellent and soveraign for a Horses Body, as being extracted from the most natural, wholesom, and best Food which doth belong unto a Horses Body. This Oyl being given by four or five spoonfuls at a time in a pint of sweet Wine, Or a quart of strong Ale, or some of the whey poured into the horses Nostrils, doth cure the Glaunders before all other Medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all those Venemous and filthy humours, which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever. And for mine own part, as long as I can conveniently come by this Oyl of Oats, so long will I never in any Medicine whatsoever, use any other Oyl or Uinctious matter than it only; I having found by experience, that it is the Sovraign of all Simples of that kind, whatsoever they be.

## C. H. A. P. CXI.

*Certain brief Observations to be observed at home and abroad, whilst the Horse is in Health.*

**T**Hese Observations now following, are gathered from the most exact Principles, and infallible grounds of the best and surest approved Horse-men, either of this Kingdom, or any other Nation within Christendom.

First then, for the general feeding of your Horse when he is in health you shall feed him with Straw, Hay, Oats, fine little wheat, Beans, Barley, bread made of Beans, Pease, or Fitches, or any other Meat that swells not in the Horses Body.

It is the Opinion of Camerarius, first to give Provender, then Hay and lastly water; but our English custom is, first Hay, then water, and lastly Provender.



In your travel feed your Horſe betimes for all night, that thereby the Horſe may ſooner take his reſt.

The quantity of Provender which you ſhall give your Horſe at one time, ſhall be as much as you can hold in the palm of both your hands at ſix times, or three pints by meaſure.

Horſe Bread which is made of clean Beans, clean Peaſe, or clean Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your Horſes Meat and Drink be exceeding ſweet and clean, yet his water by no means extream cold, running water from the Rock; for it pierceth too much.

To rub your Horſes mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eat and drink with a much better Appetite.

Let your Horſe neither eat when he is hot, nor drink when he is hot, nor preſently after his travel.

Labour your Horſe moderately, when the weather is either extream hot, or extream cold, that ſo you may avoid extream heats, or ſudden colds.

Travel not your Horſe too late, that your own eye may ſee him well dried, and well fed before you take your own reſt.

Never take your Saddle from your Horſes back ſuddenly.

Lend not your Horſe, leſt your ſelf walk on foot.

Let your Horſe lye clean and dry, keep your Stable ſweet, let no Swine lye near it, nor let any pullen come within it.

Let your Horſe be ever tied with two Reins.

Let the light of your Stable be ever towards South and North, yet ſo as the North windows may in the Winter be ſhut cloſe at pleaſure, and opened in the Summer to give freſh air.

Ride your Horſe oft a little on ſtoney ways, that he may the better feel his feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Have ever near your Stable ſome cloſe plain Green, that your horſe being let looſe he may oft tumble himſelf thereon.

Let your Horſes bed be of ſoft ſweet Straw, ſomewhat above his knees, of which Wheat Straw is the beſt: for though Barley ſtraw be the ſoſteſt, yet a Horſe will covet to eat it, and it is unwholſom, and Wheat ſtraw is not unwholſome to eat, yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oat-ſtraw it is the beſt in the Superlative, for it is both wholſome to eat, and ſoft to lie upon.

Curry or dreſs your Horſe twice a day, that is before water, and when he is curried, rub him with your hand, and with a Rubber; his



his head would be rubbed with a wet Cloath, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloath: his Fore-top, his Mane, and his Tail, would be often wet with a wet Main-comb, and ever where the horses hair is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the Plaunchers of your Stable lye even, and Level, that your horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let not any Mud-wall be within your Horses reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholsom.

Give your Horse plenty of Garbage (which is chopt wheat straw) both with his Provender, and without.

Let your hay-bottles be very little, and tied very hard: for so your horse shall eat with the best stomach, and make the least waste.

To sprinkle water upon your Hay, is most wholsom, and to sprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as Sovereign: the first is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Give your Horse daily exercise, for that gets the best stomach to his meat.

Purge your Horse once a year with Grasse, or with green blades of Corn, called Forrage, for fifteen days together; yet before you purge him, in any case let him blood; and whilst he is in purging, by no means let him have any Provender.

A Horse after travel hath ever more blood than any Beast whatsoever.

Green grasse or Forrage cleanseth the blood, encreaseth strength, healeth Diseases, avoideth Melancholly, helpeth the horses growth, and maketh the skin smooth: whilst the Horse is at soyl, by no means let him take cold.

The Northern man watereth two hours before he rideth at the least, then lets the Horse eat a little Hay, then gives Provender, but not much, and bridleth the Horse up a quarter of an hour before he rideth: at Night he watereth two miles before he taketh his Lodging, then rideth easily; he neither walketh his Horse, nor stuffeth him, nor looseth any Girt, but only rubbeth him very clean, and so lets him bite upon his Bridle half a hour after, with good store of Litter under him; then he gives the Horse Hay, and after Provender, before he goeth to water again (yet but a little) then seeth the Horse thoroughly well dressed and rubbed, well Littered and most sufficiently meated.

There



There be others which walk after Labour, then rub well, Littereth and unbridleth: both which be good, so that the one have not too much walking, nor the other too cold a stable. But howsoever, stuff not your horse backwards, but betwixt his fore Legs, and foremost girt: For backward stuffing is perilous, lest drawing his Yard when he would stale, he draw back in his sheath any of the Litter that stops him. The Northern man's use agreeth with the French Principles, which saith: use no other walking than your self on your horse-back by riding him gently till you come at your Inn, and so make him cold, then shake Litter under him, rub his Legs, his Belly, and every part of his body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, Rub his head well, and give him hay; slack no girt till it be night, that the Windows be shut; suffer the horse to drink but a little at once, to avoid sudden cooling of the Stomach: or driving the horse into a shaking Fever: At night rub and curry well, and feed according to the horse's stomach.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the horse's sinews be chafed, and never water in travail till the horse have staled, and forbear to travel him fast before he hath drunk, that he may not drink in his great heat, and they hold the standing water the best; after water for a Mile they ride softly till his water be warmed in his Belly, and before they come to their Inn they do not water, nor of an hour after they have unbridled: then they cloath well, and give Provender, having a care that their horses stand not in the Wind, and that they have been rubbed dry and clean. Now all these Principles are exceeding good, yet I would wish every traveller to learn how his horse hath been used, and that custom (if it be not too much against reason) still to follow.

If you come late to your Inn, and that your Journey be great and earnest, so that your horse will not eat till he have drunk, And yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his drink be Milk given in the dark, lest the whiteness make him refuse it: This is both cordial and pleasant: If you cannot get milk enough, then mingle Milk with water lukewarm, for no drink should be given a horse hotter.

If your Horse either by Labour or any surfeits be brought low, lean, and weak, you shall give him Mares Milk to drink many dayes together, and it will make him strong.

It is not good to wash your horse, especially if he be either hot or very fat: Otherwise you may wash his Legs above his knees, so that



that in no case you wash his Belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his washing, then by no means walk him, but set him up and dress him : the purer the water is wherein you wash your horse, the more wholesome it is, so that it be not too extream cold.

The best hours to wash your horse in, (when he lives at rest) is betwixt seven and Eight in the morning, and four or five in the evening.

When you travel at every steep hill light, both to refresh your horse and your self.

Let a fat or hot horse have his water at four times, and not so much as he will drink at once ; give him provender twice at night, and but once in the morning; let his Cloath neither be too hot, nor with straw too much stuffed : when he eateth good hay, let him have less Provender than when he eateth straw : give his Meat by little at once to avoid glutting of him, and let him stand two hours every day without Meat.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preserve, and doth keep both Strength of Body and Legs; for in rubbing and combing, a horse doth take much delight, and it doth better than much Meat.

To feed with Barley (according to the opinion of the antient *Italians*) ingendreth good blood, increaseth strength and courage, and maintaineth health ; but with us here in *England*, we find Oats to be much better feeding.

In the Dog-days it is not wholesome to ride your horse oft in the water to allay his natural heat.

The Masters eye to see his horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the stable sweet and clean kept preserveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horse.

Cleanse and pick the soles and bottoms of your horses feet oft, and stuff them well with Ox-dung, anoint his hoofs with fresh Grease, Tar, or Turpentine.

Much rest is the Mother and Nurse of many Diseases.

When you Ride look often to your Saddle, and your horses shoes, and you shall find more ease in your journey.



## C H A P. CX.

*Certain special Principles in Foals and in Horses.*

**T**HE Foals whose legs be long, will ever be tall, for of all Beasts their Legs in length ever grow the least, and by the bigness of their Legs you shall guess the Strength and greatness of their bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can possibly, never be housed till they be past three years old.

The Greek horse (which we call the Turkey Horse) is a most excellent horse, swift, bold, well headed, tall, and strong; many of them be White, some Bay, some Sorrel, and some Black.

The Arabian Horse is most swift, and most beautiful.

The Horse of Africa, which we call the Barbary Horse, is of good courage, swift, and nimble, and therefore both the Turkey horse, and he must be used with all lenity and gentleness, and not with beating.

The Friezeland horse is fiery, yet the worst of any.

The Flemish horse is worse than the Friezeland.

The Spanish Gennet is good, swift, and light.

The Neapolitan Courser for all uses is most excellent and beautiful.

Observe to win your horse by patience and gentleness, and never be angry or mad with your horse, if he be of great mettle; only the dull horse must with much beating be quickened and inflamed.

Anoint your Bit when you put it first into your Horses mouth, with Honey, and the powder of Liquorish, or else with Honey and Salt, and at no time put any Bit or Snaffle into your Horses mouth before you have washed it.

Never take your Horses back before you have the Bridle Reins fast in your hands, and when you walk down any Hill, by no means drive your horse loose before you.

If your Horse have a long back, let him have a large Saddle, and if he have a low back, let the Saddle have a high Seat, and if his back be short, let the Bolsters stand the nearer and closer together.

If your Horse be dull, you must spur him soundly, and after such spurring rub his sides with Salt.



you may know whether he be swayed in the back or no: the middle stature is the best, and the short knit horse is the strongest. The Wall Eye ever seeth the worst.

The horse that is of nature gentle, swift, light, nimble, of easie pace, and good colour, strong feet, good loyns, speedy in eating, and good at his Provender, is ever the best for use, and the readiest money in the Market at all times. See if the hair in the Spurring place be white, for it argueth slowness and spur-galling.

The Horse that will paw and beat the ground with his Foot when he is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to be good and durable in Travail.

Many other notes there are that are needless to rehearse, which by the observing of these will easily come into your memory.

## CHAP. CXIII.

*General Notes concerning some simples already spoken of.*

**A**LL manner of Marrows or Piths, of what kind soever they be, must be kept by themselves in a dry cool place, and preserved from all filth or uncleanness, and from the annoyance either of wind or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole year.

You shall keep no Syrups nor sweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conserves of Flowers, nor any Oyntments, Suets, or Emplaisters, above one whole year, only bitter Electuaries, or conserves of Fruits or Roots, will last fully out two Years.

Of Oyls some will last long, some must be new made: Oyls Extracted out of Wood or Metals, will last long.

Gather Roots in Autumn, but take the small sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry small Roots in the shade and Wind, and great Roots either in the Wind and Sun, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor moisture injure nor hurt them.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do most flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole year.



Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole year.

Gather the Rind or Bark of any Simple when the herb is ripe: dry them, and they will last many Years.

*The End of the First Book.*

*Thomas Langford*  
*Jan<sup>y</sup> 23: 1787*  
*We men have a many fault*  
*Women have but two that is*  
*Nothing good they say. Ver*  
*Nothing they give Him Dye*



---

*Markham's Master-Piece.*

---

THE  
SECOND BOOK.  
CONTAINING  
All Cures Chyrurgical.

O R,

Such Infirmities as being only outward, crave the  
Use of Chyrurgery, and are called in Horsleach-  
Craft,

HORSES SORANCES.

---

Newly Imprinted, Corrected and Enlarged with many nota-  
ble Additions, and most certain approved Medicines, ne-  
ver revealed before this Impression.

---

Written by *Gervase Markham, Gent.*

---

LONDON, Printed by *John Richardson*, for *Tho. Passinger* at the  
Three Bibles on *London-Bridge*, and *M. Wotton* and *George Coniers*, at the Three Daggers  
in *Fleet-Street*, near the *Inner Temple-Gate*; and at the *Ring* on *Ludgate-Hill* against the  
*Old Bailey*, 1688.

---



SECOND BOOK

For a further account of the  
state of the country in the year  
1711. See the following  
pages.

For a further account of the  
state of the country in the year  
1712. See the following  
pages.

For a further account of the  
state of the country in the year  
1713. See the following  
pages.



---

*Markham's Master-Piece.*

---

THE  
SECOND BOOK.  
CONTAINING

All Cures Chyrurgical, or such Infirmities as being only outward, crave the Use of *Chyrurgery*, and are called in Horse-Leach-Craft, *Horses-Sorances*.

---

## C H A P. I.

*What proportion of measure is required in every member of a well shapen Horse.*

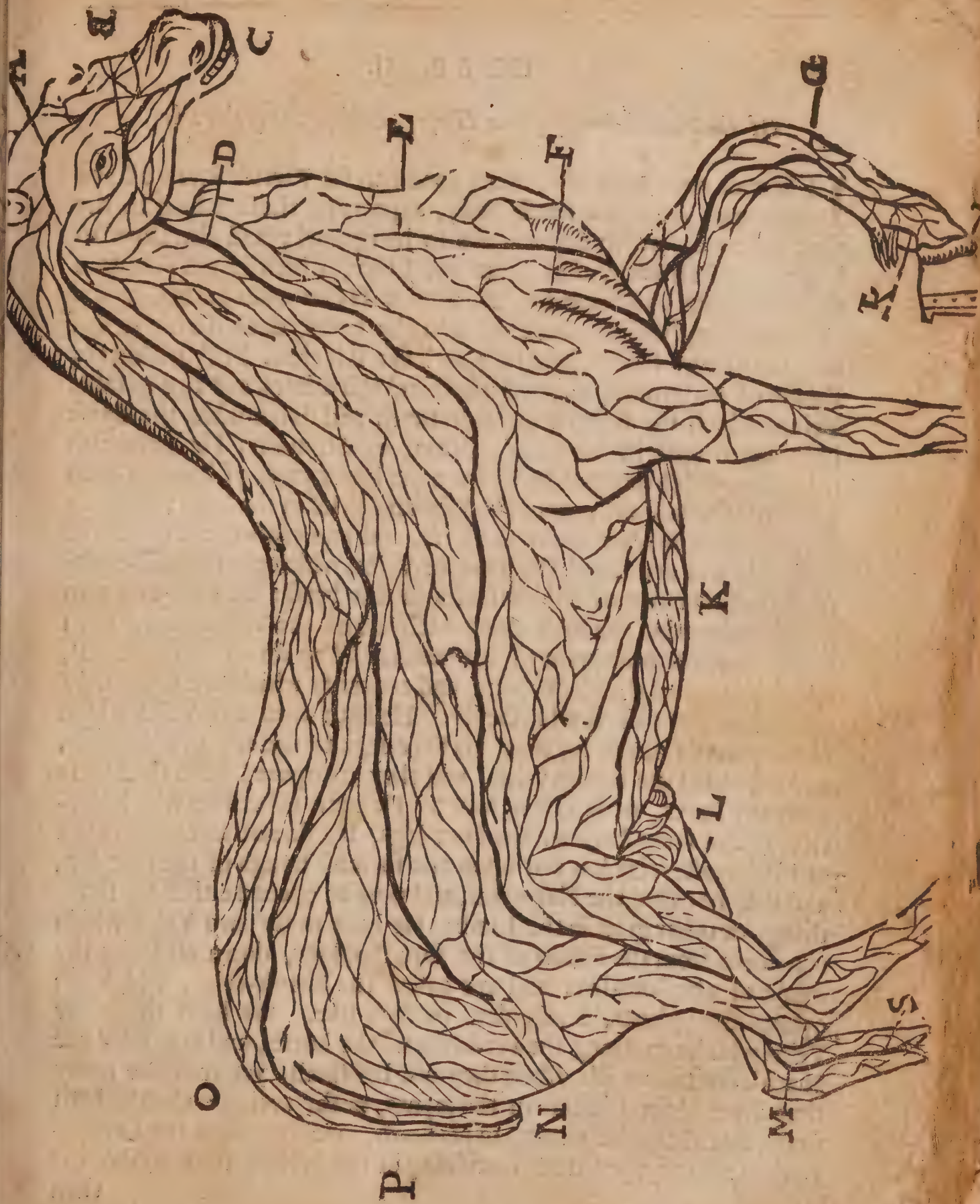
**F**Orasmuch as the great substance of this Art of Chyrurgery, or second part of Horse-Leach-craft, applied only unto outward infirmities, consisteth of Incisions, cauterisings, corrodings, and dismembrings, as well as of comfortings, incarnating, cleansing, conglutinating, and binding up Members in their true form, and that all joyntly together, go but about to make a True and well-formed body: I think it meetest that I begin with the true proportion and measure which is required in every Member of a well shaped Horse, that the careful Farrier thereby understanding how, and in what fashion every Lineament should be placed, or what proportion and quantity they do contain, he may at no time through ignorance either dismember or disgrace the same: As I have



have many times seen simple Farriers do, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in sunder the main Cords, Sinews, and Tendons, by which a horses Limbs are governed.

To begin then, you shall understand, that, according to the Description of the most antient and worthy Farriers: there are in a horses palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like steps, one above another, standing, (when his mouth is turned upwards) like a pair of stairs: his tongue would be half a foot long, his upper lip six inches, and his neather lip five inches long, each of his Jaws would be ten inches long, his head from his Eyes downward, full twelve inches long, his ears five inches long, the circuit or compass of his Eye four inches about, his Neck, from the Nape of his head unto the Withers would be seven handfuls, from the Withers to the Fillets twelve handfuls, and from the Fillets to the setting on of the tail six handfuls: The length of the shoulder would be twelve inches, and the length of his shank six inches, the length of his hinder hoof would be twelve inches, and his Cambrel five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the tayl would be an hundred inches. Now as horses are bigger or lesser, so these measures either exceed, or are less; neither do I confidently build upon these inch-quantities of the antient Farriers, because, I having my self measured many horses, I never yet could find any certainty in the proportions: only this is the most certain Rule that ever I could find, that look what quantity is between the Nape of the horses Neck, and the uttermost part of the Withers, there must ever be twice so much between the Withers and the setting on of the Tail; and look what quantity is between the top of the shoulder blade, or top of the Withers, to the Elbow of the horse, it must be twice so much from the Elbow to the setting on of the hoof; and look how much it is from the top of the hip to the stifling place, it must be twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on of the hinder hoof: And this is the certainest Rule that ever I could find for a horses truest proportion. And therefore for your better satisfaction, behold this picture that is now here placed, which is the Anatomy of a most perfect horse, with lines drawn from every Member, Directing and shewing all the outward diseases or sorances, belonging to a horses body.







## CHAP. II.

*Of the Veins belonging to a Horse, and how many there be.*

**I**T is most necessary, that every good careful Farrier know all the principal Veins in a horses body, especially those which in the time of need, or in sickness are to be opened; and therefore to begin, you shall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountain of Blood, both in Man and Beast, doth arise one main great Conduit or large Vein, which ascending into the body, doth divide it self into thus many severall branches, or lesser Rivulets. First within the Palate of his Mouth, above the first and third burs, are two notable Veins, which the best Farriers do touch and strike when the Horse hath any disease in his Head, Brain, or Stomach: He hath also other two which descend down from the lower parts of his eyes unto his Nostrils, and are ever opened for any grief in the Eyes: He hath two others which are above the Eyes, and run cross the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple-Veins, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold diseases in the head; he hath also two great main vains running along each side of the Wind-pipe, even from the uppermost joynt of his neather Chap down to the Breast, which are called the Neck-veins, and are those which are ordinarily opened for any disease whatsoever. He hath then two Veins which arise upwards from between his Fore-legs to the top of his Breast, and are called the Breast-veins, and they are opened when the Horse hath any Fever, or is sick at heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from between the Fore-legs, but do not amount so high as the Breast-veins, but rest upon the formost Bough of the fore-leg, and they be called the Plat-veins, and they be opened either for foundring, or other grief in the Limbs. He hath other two Veins which run down from the Elbow of the fore-shoulder, down all along the inside of the Fore-legs and are called the Shank-veins, which are opened for Splents, Mallander, or such like. He hath then four Veins which run along the Fet-locks of the horse, and are called the Shackle-veins, which albeit they are but small, yet they are many times opened for stiffness in the joynts, or for tyring: then he hath four veins about the cronets in his hoofs, and are called the Cronet-veins, and are opened for foundring in the Feet, or for Ring-bones: then



then he hath four Veins within his four hoofs, running about his Toes; and are called the toe-veins, and are only opened for foundring or frettizing in the Feet: He hath then two main great Veins which descend from his Stones along the in-side of his Thighs to his Cambrel, and are called the Kidney-veins, which are only opened for Diseases in the Kidneys: He hath then two other Veins which descend from above the hinder Cambrels, all along the inside of the hinder Legs down to the Fet-locks, and are called the Spaven-veins, which are opened for the Blood-spaven only: He hath then two Veins in his Flanks, which are called the Flank-veins, and are opened for any grief in the Reins or Fillets: He hath then two veins in his hinder Hanches, called the Hanch-veins, and are opened for any manner of Consumption of the flesh, or such like: Then he hath two veins which run along his side, even from the Elbow or the fore-Leg unto the flank, and are called the Spur-veins, and are opened for foundring or Spur-galling. Lastly he hath one single Vein in his Tayl, which is called the Tayl-vein, and is opened for the shedding of the hair or manginess. So there is in the horses Body of principal veins, which upon occasion must be opened, just thirty seven, as you may perceive by this Figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principal veins, and others, in a horses body; where you are to understand, that the Letter *A* sheweth the Temple-vein, *B* the Eye-veins, *C* the Palate-veins, *D* the Neck-veins, *E* the Breast-veins, *F* the Plat-veins, *G* the Shank-veins, *H* the Cro-net-veins, *I* the Hoof-veins, *K* the Spur-veins, *L* the Kidney-veins, *M* the Spaven-veins, *N* the Flank-veins, *O* the Hanch-veins, *P* the Tayl-veins, *Q* and *R* the Fet-lock-veins. Now for the other small threads or veins, which as it were overspread the whole Body, because Nature will allow no part or Member to be empty or void of Blood; they be also veins derived from the other main great veins, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as upon any necessary incision may very well be cut a-sunder without any flux of Blood, or other danger: but for the other Master-veins, they may not be cut but with great Peril. And thus much for veins, which are the Instruments of heat.

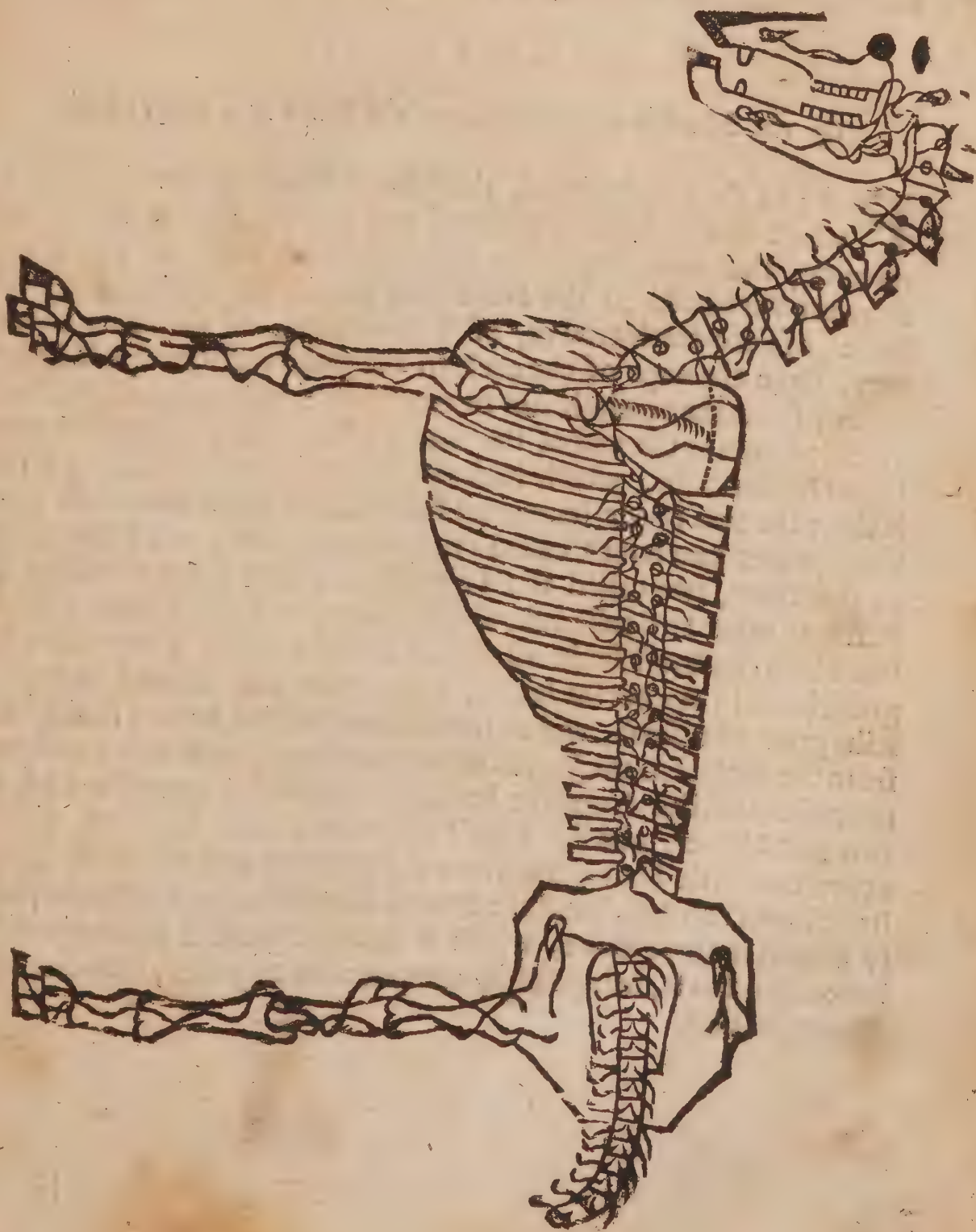


## C H A P. III.

*Of the Sinews in a Horses Body.*

**T**Ouching the Sinews within a Horses Body, you shall understand that from the Brain, which is the principal Fountain or Well-spring of Sinews whatsoever, there is derived one great main Sinew or Tendon, which passing through the hollownes of the neck and back-bone, doth extend it self even to the neathermost Joynt of the horses strunt: from his main Sinew is derived two small Branches, which passing through certain holes in the top of the Horses skull, run down along the horses Cheeks, even to the point of his Nostrils: then hath he two other branches, which passing through certain holes in his neather chap, knit that and the other together, and so run down by his great Teeth, and meet just below his neather Lip: Then hath he twenty eight small threads, which running through so many small holes in the seven Bones of his Neck, knit them fast together: So likewise to knit all his Chine even to the very neather end of his Strunt fast together, the number whereof is infinite, and uncertain: Then hath he two main great Sinews, which extending themselves over both the spade-bones, are divided into many branches, and run down into the Fore-legs, even into the Coffins of the hoofs, and knit every Joynt fast and substantially together: Then hath he two other main Sinews, which coming through two holes to the great Columel or flat bones of the Hips or Huckle, do extend themselves (being divided into many branches) down both the hinder legs, even within the Coffins of the hoof also, and bind all these severall Joynts fast and strongly together. Now lastly, you shall understand, that from the setting on of the horses neck, unto the flat Columel or Huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad Sinew, of three inches broad, being of one only thick and smooth substance, without any one thread or branch derived from it, which not only holdeth together the shoulder-blades, but also covereth all the horses Chine quite over, and this of the common Farriers is called Pax-wax: So that a horse hath in all of main and principal Sinews, from vvhence a vworld of other Sinevs are derived, just thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture aforegoing,







going, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the Sinews within a horses Body, and how they are divided.

## C H A P. IV.

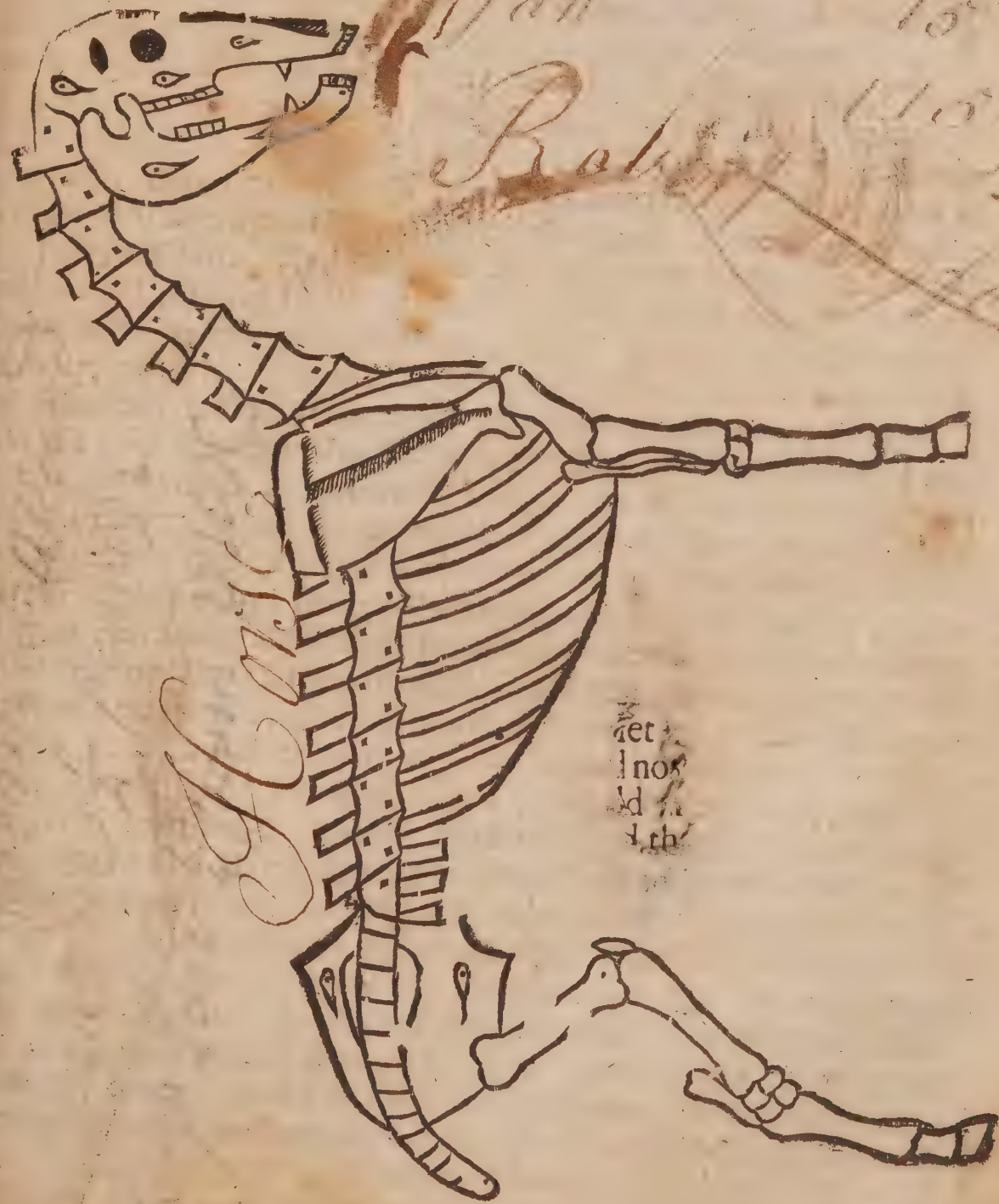
*Of the Number and Situation of the Bones in a Horses Body.*

**F**irst you shall understand, that every Horse or Ox hath in his whole Body, just one hundred and seventy several bones, and no more, that is to say, in the upper part of his head two Bones, from the Fore-head to the Nose two Bones, his nether Jaws two Bones, of Fore-teeth twelve, of Tusshes four, of Grinders twenty four, from the nape of the neck to the points of the Spade Bones, seven; from the Spade-bones to the Huckle-bones, eight; from the Huckle-bones to the end of the Tayl, seven: then is there the great broad hinder-bone, which hath twelve Seams or Joynts in it; then is there the two Spade-bones, and from thence to the Forcels or canal bones, other two bones, called the Marrow-bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the Thigh-bones, and from thence to the Pastorn, other two called the Shank-bones, and from thence downward into the hoofs be in all sixteen little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horses breast, whereunto are fastned thirty six Ribs great and small, and to the Columel behind be two bones, and from the Molars to the Joynts other two bones, and also two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the hoof unto the Leg, are two small bones, and from the Legs to the two focils of the Leg other two little bones, and from the Pasterns into the hoof, sixteen little bones: all which and the several situations you shall more plainly behold in this Picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together, that can be by demonstration.



Robert Langford His Book

Jan 15 1859



set  
I no  
ld  
th



## C H A P. V.

*How, and when a Horse should be let Blood, the end whereof, and the signs of the necessity.*

**T**He ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at great difference touching the letting of a Horse blood : For some would have him let Blood four times a year ; that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumn, and in the Winter. Others would only have him let Blood three times in the year : namely, in *May*, when he is turned to Grass, because the Blood then be- ginneth to encrease. Secondly in *September*, that blood if it be in- flamed, may then evacuate and breath forth. And Thirdly, in *December*, to let go the gross and knotty Blood which is bred by la- bour or careless keeping. Others would have a horse to be let blood but once in the year ; namely, in the beginning of *May* only, when he is to be put to Grass, alledging this reason, that if the horse be not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be enflamed, and so draw upon the horse some grievous sickness, and the reason is excellent good. Others would have the horse to be let blood in the Vein not above once in a year, namely at the beginning of *May* : but in the Palate of the mouth they would have him let blood at the least once every month, alledging that it will clear the sight, comfort the Brain, and give him good Appetite to him that : but to conclude, there is not any of these opinions but are ~~in~~ word and good, so the horse be young and in strength, his blood ~~is~~ areasing ; but if he be old, and his blood in the Ebb, then you cannot let blood too feldem. Now that it is fit a young horse should be let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the Polander Horses, who being at liberty, (out of natural instinct in themselves) fail not once a year to let themselves Blood ; yet we have divers of our best Farriers, who would not have a horse let blood before there be urgent necessity, lest the use of letting blood bring a horse to an evil custom, and draw on sickness unexpected ; but with that opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, than to drive it away being present. Now that oft letting blood breedeth in a Horse Weakness, and maketh the Blood to resort to the inward parts, cloying the Heart and Intrails, and making the outward parts fat and unweldy, there is



is no Question but that the letting a horse blood twice in the year, namely, at beginning of *May* and the end of *December* (at which times only I would have a horse let blood and no other) should be accounted oft, I see no reason. Now for Stallions, the ancient Farriers would by no means have them let blood, because say they, the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of Seed doth countervail five ounces of blood, and truly I am of that opinion too: but whereas they likewise advise by no means to let Geldings blood, because the loss of their stones is the loss of their natural heat; to that I am much contrary, because I have found it by continual experience, that Geldings do as oft dye through the corruption and abundance of blood as horses; Nay, and much more oftner, in as much as they want the helps which horses have for Purging their blood from uncleanness. Now in the letting of Horses blood, every careful Farrier is first to respect the Climate under which the Horse is bred, knowing that those Horses which are bred in cold Countries, have ever more blood than those which are bred in the hot: then he must consider the time of the Year, which would ever be the Spring, or the fall of the Leaf, both these times being most temperate, neither exceeding in heat nor in cold. Next he must regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the Morning fasting, so it be not the Horses waking from sleep, but at least an hour or two after; then he must look unto the state of the Moon, that the Sign be not in that part of the Body where he intendeth to let blood. Next he must look to the Horses age; if he be young, and not come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing: and if he be old and come to decrepitness, his blood had more need be repaired than wasted. Lastly, he shall look to the Horses strength and ancient custom, and so accordingly he shall deal with him, observing that some horses may better spare two or three pound of blood, than other some one pound. Now thus much I have spoken touching ordinary and natural letting of blood, without Compulsion of any sickness or Disease; but in case where sickness or infirmity craveth this office of letting blood, there you shall neither respect Climate, Season of the Year, time of the day, Sign, Age, Strength, nor custom, but setting all aside, apply your self only to the Removing of the Infirmity. Now the signs to know if a Horse stand in need to be let blood are these: his Eyes will look red, and his Veins will swell more than ordinary:  
Y<sup>e</sup> *quod* *et* *alio* also



also he will have a certain itch about his Main and his Tayl, and still be continually rubbing them; and sometimes will shed some of his Hair also; he will now and then pill about the roots of his Ears, or in those places where the Head-stall of the Bridle lies: his Urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung will be black and hard: also if he hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his back, or doth not digest his meat well, it is a sign the Horse would be let Blood; or if he hath any apparent sign or yellowness in the whites of his Eyes, or in the inside of his Lips, either upper or neather, it is a sign he would be let Blood: for after any of these signs does most commonly follow some one or other grievous sickness, which to prevent, is the true Art of a Skilful Farrier. Now it is meet that when you intend to let a Horse blood (having leisure to do the same) that you suffer him to be thinly dyeted a day or two before he be let Blood, to the end that his Body may be quiet, and not troubled with Digestion. Now for the manner of letting a Horse Blood, you shall as near as you can, let him stand upon even ground, and if it be the Neck-vein which you would strike, you shall take a long small Cord with a Noose, and putting over to the Horses Neck, as close to the setting on of the Shoulder as you can, there draw it as strait as is possible, and then fasten it with a running knot, and presently you shall see the Veins to appear as big as a Mans little finger, even from the nether Chap down to the Neck. Now you are to observe that the place where you are to strike the Vein, is even within three fingers or four fingers at the most of the nether Chap: as thus; if your Horse have a long, fine, thin Neck and Skin, then you may strike the Vein within three fingers or less of the Chap, (sith the higher is ever the better) but if he have a short chub Neck, with a thick skin, and many wreaths or roulds about the setting on of his Chaps, then you shall strike the Vein at least four fingers from the Chap, lest those wreaths together with the thickness of the Skin, do so defend the Vein that your Fleim cannot reach it. When you have thus raised the Vein up, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary side of the Horse, and with his fist to thrust the Vein forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wet Sponge, or with a little spittle, wet the part of the Vein which you mean to strike, and then separating the hair, set your Fleim even and directly upon the Vein; and then with a good smart blow strike it into the Vein: which done, You shall cause one to put his Finger into the Horses Mouth, and tickling him in the Roof there of.



of, make him chaw and move his Chaps, for that will force the Blood to spin forth; now the Blood which you take from the Horse, it is very necessary that you save in divers vessels, for divers causes: as first, that you may see when all the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is grown pure, and so remaineth being cold, that then you suffer the Horse to bleed no more; or else that you save it to bathe the Horses Body therewith, which is most wholesom; or else to make a Medicine therewithal by mingling with the Blood Vineger and Oyl, and so bathe the Horses Body therewith, especially that place which was let Blood. For the ancient Farriers hold an Opinion, That it is indued with a certain Natural vertue, and power to comfort the weaknes and feeble Members of a Horse, and to dry up all evil humours. Now as soon as your Horse hath bled sufficiently, you shall let loose the Cord, and immediately the Vein will stop: then with that Cord you stroke down the Vein just over the Orifice twice or thrice, which will both close up the hole, and also turn the course of the Blood: this done set the Horse up in the Stable, and let him stand fasting two or three hours after, and then after dyet him, according as in your discretion you shall think meet, that is to say, if he be a sick Horse, then like a sick Horse with good Provender and warm Mashs: but if he be a Sound Horse, then like a Sound, either turn him to Grass, or keep him in the Stable after his ancient Custom.

Now if you would let your Horse blood either in the Temple-veins or Eye-veins, you shall then Cord him hard about the midst of the Neck, and not near his shoulders, having a care that you touch not his Wind-pipe and so throttle him: for it will make both these Veins shew most apparently. If you intend to let the Horse Blood in the Breast-vein, or Plat-veins, of some called therefore Thigh-veins, you shall then Cord him behind the Shoulders, close to the Elbows of the Horse, and overthwart his Withers, and that will make these two Veins shew. Now you shall understand, that not any of these Veins last spoken of, as about the Head or the Breast, must be let Blood by striking them with a Fleim (though it be the manner of our common Smiths) for it is most beastly and butcherly, and also full of much danger by striking through the Vein, (If he be not skilful) but you shall with a fine sharp Lancet open the Vein, even in such sort as you see a skilful Chirurgeon open the Vein in a Mans arm. Now for the letting of a horse blood in the Palate of the mouth



you shall but only with a sharp pointed knife, prick the Horse between the second and third Bar, as deep as a Barly Corn is long, and he will bleed sufficiently: as for all other Veins in a Horses Body whatsoever, which are to be opened, you shall understand, that whensoever it is needful that they bleed, that then they must be taken up and not corded at all. Now touching the taking up of Veins, and the manner how to do it, you shall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this Book.

### CHAP. VI.

*Of outward Sorances what they are, and of certain general Observations in the Cure of them.*

**O**utward Sorances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of ways, that is to say, either it is an evil state and composition of the body, which is to be discerned either by the shape, number, quantity, or sight of the member evil affected and diseased: or else it is the Loosening and division of any unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers names accordingly. For if such a division or loosening be in the Bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleshy part, then it is called a wound, or an Ulcer: If it be in the Veins, then a Rupture: If in the Sinews, then a Convulsion or cramp; and if it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all these severally I intend to treat in the following Chapters. Now for as much as in this general Art in Chyrurgery or Sorances, there are certain general Observations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any farther, give you a little taste thereof.

First, you shall therefore understand, that it is the duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oyl, nor to make any incision with a Knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews, or joynts, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

*Item,* You shall never apply to any Joynt or Sinewy part, either Rosalgar, Arsnick, Mercury, Sublimate, nor any such violent Corrosive.

*Item,* It is ever better to Launce with a hot Iron than a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize than to incise.

*Item,* Blood doth ever produce white and thick matter, Choler a watrish thin matter, but not much, salt Flegm, great abundance of matter, and Melancholy, many dry Scabs.

*Item,*



*Item*, When you let blood, you must take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horse.

*Item*, You must never let Blood, except it be either to divert sickness, and preserve health, or to refresh and cool the blood, or else to diminish blood, or to purge bad humours.

*Item*, In all Impostumes and swelling Sores, called Tumors, you must observe the four times of the sickness, that is to say, the beginning of the grief, the increase of the grief, the perfection and state of the grief, and lastly, the declination and ending of the grief.

*Item*, In the beginning of every such swelling Apostumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) use repercussive Medicines, if they be not near some principal part of the Body; but then not, for fear of endangering life; and in augmentation, use Mollifying Medicines, and supplying to ripe them; and when they are ripe, Launch them, and let them out, or dry them up, and in the declination of them, use cleasing and healing Medicines.

*Item*, All swellings are either hard or soft, the hard commonly will Corrode, the soft will continue long.

*Item*, If you thrust your finger upon any swelling upon a Horses Legs, then if it presently rise again, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent do remain and continue still behind, then is the hurt old, and cometh of cold humours, and asks great Art in healing.

*Item*, When Sores begin to matter, then they heal, but if the putrefaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

*Item*, All Cauterising or burning with hot Irons, straineth things enlarged, drieth up what is too much moistned, dissolveth things gathered together or hardned, draweth back things which are dispersed, and helpeth old griefs: for it ripeneth, dissolveth, and maketh them to run and issue forth matter.

*Item*, You must sometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours, and sometimes above, to defend and with-hold humours.

*Item*, It is ever better to burn with Copper than with Iron, because Iron is of a Malignant nature, Steel of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

*Item*, All actual burnings is to burn with instruments, and Potential burnings is to burn with Medicines, as are Causticks and Corrosives.

*Item*,



*Item*, If you use to blow Powders into a Horses Eyes, it will make him blind.

*Item*, By no means take up any Veins in the Forelegs, unless great extremity compel you : for there is nothing that will sooner make a Horse stiff and lame. Many other observations there are, which because they are not so general as these be, and that I shall have occasion to speak of them in other particular Chapters, I think it here meet to omit them, and the rather, because I would not be tedious.

## C H A P. VI.

*Of the Diseases in the Eyes, and first of the weeping and watring Eye.*

**T**HE Eyes of a Horse are subject to many infirmities, as first to be Rhumatick, or watry, then to be blood-shotten, to be dim of sight, to have the Pin and Web, the Haw, the Wart in the Eye, the Inflammation of the Eyes, the Canker in the Eye, or a stroke in the Eye : of all which, some come of inward causes, as of Humours resorting to the Eyes, and some of outward causes, as Heat, Cold, or else by some stripe or blow.

And first to begin with the Rhumatick, or watry Eye, you shall understand, that, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the Flux of Humours distilling from the Brain, and sometimes from the anguish of some blow or stripe received. The signs are, a continual watring of the Eye, and a close holding of the Lids together, accompanied sometime with a little swelling. The Cure according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, to take of Bolearmonick, of Terra sigillata, and of Sanguis Draconis of each a like quantity ; make them into Powder, and then add unto them as much of the White of an Egg and Vineger, as will make them moist : and then spread it plaister-wise upon a Cloath, and lay it to the Horses Temples of his Head above his Eyes: and do this three days together. Others use to let the Horse Blood in the Veins under his Eyes : then to wash the Eye twice or thrice in the day with White-wine, and then to blow into the sore Eye with a Quil, the powder of Tartar, Sal-gemma, and Cuttle-bone, of each a like quantity : or else take the Yolk of an Egg roasted hard, and mix therewith the powder of Comen, and bind it hot to the Eye, and so let it rest a night more. Other Farriers use to take of Pitch  
and



and Rozen, and of Mastick a like quantity, melt them together: then with a little stick, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, anoint the Temple-Veins on both sides a handfull above the Eyes, as broad as a Shilling, and then clap unto it immediately a few Flocks of like Colour to the Horse, holding them close to his Head with your Hand, untill they stick fast to his Head, then let him Blood on both his Eye-veins, if both Eyes be sore, and then wash his Eyes with White-wine.

Others use only to take a pretty quantity of life-Honey, and to dissolve it in White-wine, and to wash the Horses Eye therewith: and sure if it proceed from any blow, it is Medicine sufficient enough; but if it proceed from any Rheume, or inward causes, then you shall take ground-Ivy beaten in a Morter, and mixt with Wax, and so laid to the Eyes like a Plaister, or else boyl Worm-wood in White-wine, and wash the Horses Eyes therewith; also to spurt Beer or Ale now and then into the Horses Eyes, will clear the sight passing well.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Blood-shotten Eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever.*

**F**OR any Blood-shotten Eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever, either outward or inward, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) of Rose-water, of Malmsey, and of Fennel-water, of each three spoonfulls, of Tutty as much as you can easily take up between your Thumb and your Finger, of Cloves a dozen, beaten into fine powder, mingle them together, and being luke-warm, or cold, if you please, wash the inward parts of the Eye with a Feather dipt therein twice a day until the Eye be well: or instead thereof, wash the Eye either with the White of an Egg, or with the juyce of Salladine. Others use to take the tops of Hawthorns, and boyling them in white-Wine, wash the Eye therewith. Other Farriers take a Dram of Synoper, and as much life Honey, as much of Wheat-flower, mix them with fair running water, so they may be liquid and thin, then seeth them with a very soft fire till they be thick like an Oyntment, and therewith anoint the Eye.

But the best Receipt that ever I found for this grief, is, to take the Whites of two Eggs, and beat it till it come to an Oyl, then put to it




in two spoonfuls of Rose-water, and three spoonfuls of the juyce of Housleek, mix them well together, then dip therein little round Plegants or flat Cakes of soft Tow, as big as a Horses Eye, and lay them upon the Horses Eye, renewing them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the Horses Eye sound again.

### CHAP. IX.

#### *Of Dimness of sight, or Blindness.*

**D**imness of sight, or blindness, may happen to a Horse divers ways, as by some strain, when the inward strings of the Eyes are stretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labor, or by the supporting of a great burden beyond the Horses ability, or by some blow or wound: any of these are mortal enemies to the Eyes or sight. The sign is the apparent want of sight, and an evil affected colour of the Eye. Now for the Cure, it is thus:

 If the sight be gone, and yet the ball of the Eye be sound, Then you shall take, according to the opinion of some Farriers, a pretty quantity of May-Butter, with as much Rose-mary, and a little yellow Rozen with a like quantity of Selladine, then stamp them and fry them with the May-butter, then strain it and keep it in a Close Box (for it is a Jewel for sore Eyes) and anoint your Horses Eyes therewith at least twice a day; it is also good to heal any wound. Other Farriers do use to let the Horse bleed in the Eye-veins, and then wash his eyes with Red Rose-water. Others use to take the Gall of a black Sheep and beat it, and strain it, then to wash the Eyes therewith: others use to burn the Horse under the Eye, that the ill Humors may distill forth, and then to anoint his Eyes either with the Marrow of a Sheeps shank, and Rose-water mixt together, or else with the juyce of ground Ivy. Other Farriers use to take a Mould-warp and lapping her all over in Clay, burn her to ashes, and then to take of that powder and blow it into the Horses eyes. Others use to take an empty Egg-shell, and fill with Bay-Salt, then burn it till it be black: Then add to it of burnt Allum the quantity of your Thumb, beat them together to fine powder, then mix some of this Powder with fresh Butter, and wipe it into the Horses Eye with a feather, then clap the White of an Egg dipt in Flax, over his Eyes: do this once a day for a Seven-night, and after but once in two days: This is most excellent for any Film, and also for a Pearl.

Others



Others use to take two dry Tyle-stones, and rub them together, and blow the Powder of it with a Quill into the Horses Eye four days together.

## C H A P. X.

*A most rare approved Medicine for any desperate blindness in a Horse, proceeding from any Rheumatick cause, Surfeit, Strain, Stroke, or such like.*

**T**AKE of Vermillion, Betony and Lavender, and beat them in a Mortar with the best Venice-Turpentine, till they come to a thick Salve like Paste: Then make it into Cakes or Troches, each as broad as a Groat, and dry them: then lay one or two of them upon a Chafingdish and Coals: And then covering them with a Tunnel, let your Horse receive the Smoak up into his Nostrils, and this do Morning and Evening: and every time you thus Fume him, you shall also wash his Eyes inwardly, either with the Water of Eye-bright-simply, or with the Water of Eye-bright, and the juyce of ground Ivy mixt together. Now I have known many to mistake this ground-Ivy, and suppose that the Ivy which is common, and runs along on the Ground to be ground Ivy, but it is not so: For Ground-Ivy is a Weed which commonly grows in bottoms of Hedges by Ditch-sides, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough leaf, and is jagged on the Edges, and of all Simples none is more so-vereign for the Eyes.

## C H A P. XI.

*Another most excellent and approved Receit for any desperate blindness in a Horse or any Beast whatsoever.*

**T**AKE the Shells of half a dozen Eggs, and cleanse away the inner Film from them so clean as may be, then lay those shells between two clean Tyles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers, and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lye a good space till the Shells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the Shells to fine powder, then searce it through a Laun to fine dust, then with a Goose-quill blow this powder into the Horses Eye that is offended with Pin, Web, Film, or any thickness or foulness, and it is a certain Cure, and this do Morning, Noon, and Night.

Z

But



But if it be for any watred or inflamed Eye, for any Bruise, Stripe, Lunatick, or descending Humours, then take a spoonful and a half of fine searced powder of white Sugar-Candy, and mix it with the former powder of shells: then with as much May-Butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof, the best sweet Butter, without Salt. Work all into a gentle Salve, and therewith anoint the Horses Eye, Morning, Noon, and Night, for it cleanseth, purgeth, comforteth and cooleth.

## C H A P. XII.

*Of the Pearl, Pin, Web, or any spot in a Horses Eye.*

**T**HE Pearl, the Pin, the Web, or any unnatural spot, or thick Film over a Horses Eye, proceedeth, for the most part, from some stroke received: yet the Pearl, which is a little round, thick, white spot like a Pearl, growing on the sight of the Horses Eye, comes many times from natural causes, and even from descent of Syre and Dam, as I have often found by experience. The sign is, the apparent sight of the infirmity, and the Cure according to the opinion of the most Ancient Farriers, is, to take six leaves of ground-Ivy, and a bunch a Selladine, and bray them in a Morter, with a spoonful or two of Womans Milk, and then strain it through a clean Linnen-Cloath, and put it into a close Glass, and then drop of it as much into the Horses Eye at a time, as will fill half a Hasel-nut-shell; and it is the fittest to be done at night only. Do this thrice at the least, and for three days after keep the Horse as much as may be from any light. Other Farriers use to anoint the Horses Eyes with the Marrow of Goats Shanks, and Deers Shanks, and Rose-water mixt together, or else to wash his Eyes with the juyce of the Berries and Leaves of ground-Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with White-wine; and to blow into his Eyes the powder of black Flint, or of Land-Oysters: but that Powder must be made so exceeding fine, as by Art of Searcing can any ways be brought to pass: And for the taking away of any Film or Pearl, there is no Medicine more Sovereign. There be other Farriers which use to take the lean of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a Powder and blow it into the Horses Eye. Others use to take white Ginger made into very fine Powder, and blow it into the Horses Eyes; yet before you do so, if the Web have continued any long time, it shall  
not



not be amiss, first to anoint the Horses Eye with Capons-grease. Others use to blow into the Horses Eye, the Powder of Elder-Leaves dryed, or else the Powder of Mans dung dryed; or the Powder of a Grey Whet-stone mixt with the Oyl of Honey, and put into the Horses Eye: others use to take the Yolk of an Egg with Salt burnt and beaten to powder, and blow into the Horses Eye: or else the powder of the Cattle-bone. Others use to take either Elder Leaves dryed, or Mans dung dryed, and mix it with the powder of the shell or bone of the Crab-Fish, and blow it into the Horses Eye. Others take Tutte beaten to powder, and with a quill blow it just upon the Pearl.

Other Farriers use to take (and sure it is not inferiour, but better than any Medicine whatsoever) a good quantity of white Salt, and lapping it round up in a wet Cloath, put it into the Fire, and burn it to a red Coal: then taking it forth and breaking it open you shall find in the midst thereof a white Coar as big as a Bean, or bigger: Then pick out that Coar and beat it to powder, and mix it with a little White-wine, then after it hath stood a while, take the thickest of that lieth in the bottom, and put it into the Horses Eye, and with the thin wash his Eye; do thus once a day till the Pearl be consumed.


Others use to take the juyce of Rue, and put it into the Horses Eye; or else to make an hole in an Egg, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the Shell with Pepper, and closing it in an earthen Pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it be quite hot, then take it forth, and beat the Pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the Horses Eye. Others use to take of Pummistone, of Tartarum, and Sal-gemma, of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the Horses Eye, continuing so to do till the Eye be well. Others use only to blow the powder of Sandevoire into the Horses Eye, affirming that it alone hath sufficient force and vertue to break any Pearl or Web in a short space, without any other composition: But surely I have found the powder of Flint, and the powder of white Salt burnt, to be much stronger.

*my*



## C H A P. XIII.

*A most excellent and infallible Cure for any Pin, Web, Pearl, or spot in a Horses Eye.*

 **T**AKE an egg, and make a hole in the top, put out half the white, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roast the egg extreme hard, so as you may beat it to fine powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet Cloath, then Morning and Evening, after you have washt the Horses Eye with the juyce of ground-Ivy, or eye-bright water, you shall blow of this powder therein, and it is a certain remedy.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Of the Haw in a Horses Eye.*

**T**HE Haw is a Gristle growing betwixt the nether eye-lid and the eye, and it covereth sometimes, more than the one half of the eye. It proceeds of gross and tough Flegmy humours, which descending down from the head, and knitting together, do in the end grow to a Horn or hard Gristle. The signs thereof are a watring of the Eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lid, besides an apparent shew of the Haw it self, if with your Thumb you do put down the nether lid of the Horses eye. The Cure is, take a needle and a double Thread, put it through the tip of the Horses ear, which done, put the Needle likewise through the upper eye-lid of the horse upwards, and so draw up the eye lid, and fasten it to the ear, then with your Thumb put down the nether lid, and you shall plainly see the Haw: Then thrust your needle through the Edge of the Haw, and with the Thread draw it out, so as you may lap it about your finger, then fasten the Thread about your little finger, to hold it constantly, and then with a very sharp knife cut cross the Gristle of the inside next the Horses eye, and so separating the Skin and the Fat from the Gristle, cut the Gristle quite out; then cutting your threds draw them clean out, both of the Eye-lids, and out of the Haw: then wash all the Horses eye either with Ale, Beer, or White-wine, and pluck away all the long hairs from about the Horses eyes, being sure to leave no blood within the Horses eye. And in this manner of Cure, you must observe, that by no means you cut away too much



much of the wash or fat by the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth about the end of the haw, for that will make the Horse blear-eyed; there be other Farriers which use after they have cut out the Haw, to anoint the Eye six days after with Sallet-Oyl, the Marrow of sheeps shanks and salt mixt together.

Others do take the juyce of ground-Ivy stampt in a Mortar, with the juyce of Ivy-berries, and mix them either with water or White Wine, and so Plaister-wise lay it to the Horses eye, renewing it Morning and Evening, and it will eat away the Haw. Others use after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the Eye a Plaister of Camomil and of honey beaten together; any of all which is sufficient enough. Now you are to note by the way, that the horse which hath one haw, commonly hath two, for they continually go together.


## C H A P. XV.

*Of Moon Eyes, or Lunatick-Eyes.*

**T**He Moon-eyes, or Lunatick-eyes, are of all sore eyes the most dangerous and noysome, and do proceed from hot humours, descending from the Head, and stirred up by the extremity of overriding or compelling a Horse to do more than nature will give him leave: as I have seen a sloathful and heavy horse brought to be Moon-eyed by the Folly of his Rider, who would force him to stand and Trot, contrary to the vigor of his spirit: so likewise I have seen delicate Metal'd Horses brought to be Moon-eyed, when the Riders would not temper the freeness of their natures, but have given them leave to run with all violence. Now they be called Moon-eyes, because if the Farrier do observe them, he shall perceive that at some times of the Moon the horse will see very prettily, and at some times of the Moon he will see nothing at all. Now the signs hereof are, when the Horses eyes are at the best, they will look yellowish, and dim, and when they are at the worst, they will look red, fiery, and angry.

The Cure is, to lay all over the Temples of the Horses head, the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Mastick, mentioned in the Chapter of watry-eyes: then under each of his eyes with a sharpe knife make a slit of an inch long about four fingers beneath his eyes, and at least an inch wide of the eye-veins; then with a Cornet loosen the skin about the breadth of a Groat, and thrust therein a round piece of Leather



Leather as broad as a two pence with a hole in the midst, to keep the hole open : and look to it once a day, that the matter may not be stopped, but continually run the space of Ten days ; then take the Leather out, and heal the Wound with a little flax dipt in this Salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and boyl them together, which being a little warmed will be liquid to serve your purpose ; and take not away the Plaisters which are upon his Temples until of themselves they fall away ; which being fallen, then with a small hot drawing Iron make a Star in the midst of each Temple-vein, where the Plaisters did lye, which Star would have a hole in the midst, made with the Button  end of your hot drawing Iron in this sort.

Now there be other Farriers, which in stead of the slits under the Eye, and the pieces of Leather, which is a plain Rowel, only take a small blunt hot Iron, and about an inch and an half beneath the nether Lid, do burn some five holes all of a row, according to the compass of the Horses Eye, and do burn those holes even unto the bone, and then once a day anoint them with fresh Grease, or sweet Butter.

#### CHAP. XVI.

##### *Of the Canker in the Eye.*

**A** Canker in the Eye cometh of a rank and corrupt blood, descending from the head in the Eye, where it congealeth, and breedeth a little Worm in manner as it were the head of a Pismire, which groweth in the nether end of the horses eye next to his Noseward ; it proceedeth many times into the Gristle of the Nose, which if it chance to eat thorough, it will then pass into the Head, and so kill the Horse. The signs hereof are, you shall see red Pimples, some great and some small, both within and without the Eye, upon the Eye-lids, and also the Eye it self will look red, and be full of very corrupt matter. The Cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take as much burnt Allum as an Hazle-Nut, and as much of grean Copperas, and bake them both together upon Tile-stone, and then grind them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a spoonful of Honey, and mix them altogether, and then with a Clout dipt therein, rub the sore till it bleed ; and do thus seven days together, and it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this

Canker



Canker in a Horses Eye, will first let the Horse blood in the Neck-vein of the same side the sore Eye is, and take away the quantity of a Pottle of blood: Then take of Roch. Allum, and of green Copperas, of each half a pound, of white Copperas one ounce, and boyl them in three points of running Water, until the half be consumed: then take it from the Fire, and once a day wash his Eye with this water, being made luke-warm, with a fine Linnen Cloath, and cleanse the Eye therewith, so as it may look raw, and do this till the Eye be whole.

## C H A P. XVII.

*For a stripe or blow upon a Horses Eye.*

**I**F a Horse shall catch any stripe or blow upon his Eye, either with Whip, Rod, Cudgel, or any such like mischance, or by one Horses biting of another when they either play or fight: then for the Cure thereof (if you take it when it is new done) you shall only blow into his Eye either the Powder of Sandevair, or the fine Powder of white Salt, after the Eye hath been washt with a little Beer, but if the Eye be more sore, and have continued longer, then you shall take a small Loaf of Bread, and pull out all the Crums; Then fill the Loaf full of burning Coals, until it be well burned within, then take of that Crust and put it in White-wine, and after it is well soaked lay to the Sore, then take Sope-water and cold Water mixt together, and wash all the Eye-brows therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you shall let him blood on the Temple-veins; and if he do rub or chafe his Eye, you shall let him blood on the Veins under his Eyes, and wash his Eyes with cold Sope-water; but if his Eyes do chance to look red with the blow, then you shall lay unto them a plaister of red-Lead and Sallet-Oyl beaten well together. Others use to take the juyce of Plantain, stamp and mixt with White-wine, and so laid to the sore Eye. Others use both for this Disease, or any other sore Eye, to stamp strong Nettles with a little Beer, and then straining it to squirt thereof into the Horses Eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of Sandevair a little in his Eyes, and then be careful to keep the Horses Eye from Wind or Cold; but if you must needs ride him, then put a Woollen cloath before the Horses Eye; also it is not amiss to let him blood on his Eye-veins, and then twice dressing will be sufficient.

Others



✂ Other Farriers use first to anoint the sore Eye three days together with Hens or Capons-grease, to mollify it : then take a little live Honey, and warming it wipe it into the Horses eye with a Feather. Others take the juyce of Plaintain mixt with Honey, or else the juyce of Tyme mixt with Honey, and put it into the Eye. Others use to take the ashes of an old Shoo-sole burnt in an Oven, and put into the Horses eye; or else the powder of a grey Whetstone blown into the sore eye; both are speedy remedies. Others use to take the juyce of Smallage, and of Fennel, and mixing them with the White of an Egg, put it into the horses eye once a day till the eye be whole.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*For a Wart in the Eye.*

**A** Wart in a horses eye, is a Fleshy excrescion, or a Fleshy knot growing either upon the eye, or upon the edge or inside of the Eye-lids; it proceedeth from a thick Flegm, which descendeth to the Eye, by means that the horse is too much kept in a dark Stable without light : and this infirmity will make a horses eye consume and grow little. The Cure is, to take Roch-Allum, and burn it on a Tyle-stone, and then put as much white Copperas thereunto not burnt, and grind them to powder, then lay some of that powder just upon the head of the Wart, and do this once a day till the Wart be consumed away.

## C H A P. XIX.

*For an Inflammation in a Horses Eye.*

**H**orses may diversly have Inflammations in the eyes; as by long standing in the stable, with foul feeding and no exercise, or by Moats falling into his eyes, or by rankness of blood, and such like, any of each will breed an Inflammation or soreness in the eye. The signs are itching and rubbing of the eyes, and little swelling, with some loathness to open the eye-lids. The Cure is, first to let him blood upon the Temple-veins, and upon the eye-veins, and then to wash his eyes in Milk and Honey mixt together. Others after blood-letting, will wash the Horses eyes with honey and Aloes Epatica mixt together : And others will wash eyes with Aloes dissolved in White-wine, any of which is approved to be most excellent for any sore eye.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XX.

*Of the Imposthume in the Ear of a Horse.*

**I**mposthumes which breed in the Ear of a Horse proceed from divers causes, as from some great blow about the Head, or some wringings with a hard Halter, or from some evil humour congealed in the Ears by some extream Cold. The signs whereof appear plainly by the burning and painful swelling of the roots of the Ears, and the other parts thereabout. The Cure thereof is, first to ripen the Imposthume with this plaister: Take of Linseed beaten into fine powder, and wheat-flower, of each half a Pint, of honey a pint, of Hogs grease, otherwise called Barrows grease, one pound; warm all these things together in an earthen pot, and stir them continually with a flat stick or slice, until they be thoroughly mingled and incorporated together, and then spread some of this plaister being warm upon a piece of Linen cloth or soft white Leather; so broad as the swelling and no more, and lay it warm unto it, and so let it remain one whole day, and then renew it again, continuing so to do, until it either do break, or else grow so ripe that you may launce it downwards, so that the matter may have passage out, then tent it with this tent of Flax dipped in this Salve even to the bottom, that is to say, take of Mel Rosatum, of Sallet Oyl and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the Horse a biggen of Canvas to close in the Sore, so as the tent with the Oyntment may abide within the Sore, renewing the tent once a day until it be whole: but if the Horse have pain in his Ears, without any great Pain or Inflammation, then thrust into his Ear a little black Wool, dipt in the Oyl of Camomile, and that will ease him: But if the Imposthume be broken before you perceive it, and that you see matter run from the Horses Ears, then you shall take of Oyl of Roses, of Venice Turpentine, and Honey, of each a like quantity, and mixing them well together, warm it luke-warm upon a few Coals, and then dipping black wool therein, thrust it down into the horses Ear that runneth, renewing it once a day till the Ear leave running.



## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Pole-Evil.*

**T**He Pole-Evil is a great Swelling Inflammation or Aposthume in the Nape of the Horses Neck, just between his Ears, towards his Mane, and proceedeth sometimes from the Horses strugling or striving in his Halter, especially if the Halter be of hard new twin'd Hemp; sometimes it proceedeth from evil humours gathered together in that place, or else from some stripe or blow given to the horse by some rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little discretion; for that part being the weakest and tenderest part about the Head, is the soonest offended and grieved with Sorances. The sign of this disease is an apparent swelling between the horses ears, and on each side his neck, which in continuance of time, will break of its own accord, yet doth ever rot more inwardly than outwardly, from whence it comes that this disease is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the Fistula in the Neck, than the Pole-evil; and in truth it is an Ulcer so hollow and so crooked, and so full of sharp matter, like unto like, that it differeth very little from a Fistula, and is of all Imposthumes, except the Fistula it self, the hardest to cure: Therefore I would wish every careful Farrier to take this Cure in hand so soon as is possible, that is to say, before it break, if it may be.

Now for the general cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus; First, if it be not broken, ripen it with a plaister of Hogs-grease, laid unto it so hot as may be, and make a biggen for the pole of his head to keep it from cold, which biggen would have two holes open, so as his Ears may stand out, and renew the Plaister every day once until that break, keeping the sore place as warm as may be; and if that you see it will not break so soon as you would have it, then look where it is softest, and most meet to be opened, take a round hot Iron, or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as big as a mans little finger, and sharp at the point, made like an Arrow-head, and then about two Inches beneath the soft place, thrust it in a good deepness upwards, so as the point of your Cauterising Iron may come out at the ripest place, to the intent that the matter may descend downward, and come out at the nearer Hole, which would always be kept open: And therefore tent it with a  
tent




tent of Flax dipt in Hogs grease warm, and lay also a Plaister of hogs grease upon the same, renewing it every day once for the space of four days, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the fire: Then at the four days end, take of Turpentine half a pound, clean washed in nine sundry waters, and after that thoroughly dried, by thrusting out the water with a slice on the dishes side; then put thereunto two yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together. That done, search the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a tent of a piece of dry sponge never wet, so long as it may near reach the bottom, and so big as it may fill the wound, and anoint the tent with the aforesaid Oyntment, and thrust it into the Wound either with that quill, or else by winding it up with your finger and thumb by little and little, until you have thrust it home, and then lay on the plaister of hogs grease made lukewarm, renewing it every day once until it be whole: but if the swelling cease, then you need not use the plaister, but only to tent it; and as the matter decreaseth, so make your tent every day lesser and lesser, until the wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this diseafe of the Pole-evil have broke of its own self, and by neglecting looking into, have continued so long that it is turned to a Fistula, which you shall know both by the great and crooked hollownes inwardly, and by a sharp thin water which would issue out there outwardly, then you shall take (according to the opinion of the Farriers) of unslakt Lime, and of Arsnick, of each a like quantity, beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto the juice of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wall wort, of each a like quantity, and of Holly as much as all the rest, boyl them upon a soft fire, and stir them all well together until they be as thick as an Oyntment; then wash the Sore with very strong Vinegar, and fill the hole full of the aforesaid Ointment, by dipping a tent therein twice a day; then lay a plaister of hogs grease upon the tent to make it keep in, and use this until the Horfe be whole.

Our Farriers use to take Orpiment, unslackt Lime, and Verdigrase, of each a like quantity, temper them with the juyce of Pellitory, black Ink, Honey and strong Vinegar, of each a like quantity, boyl them and stir them well together, until they be very thick, then make thereof small rous, and put them into the hollow place of the same forance. Now you are to note, that both these & the last



recited Salve before this, are only to kill the Rankerous and sharp Humour which brings the Sore unto a Fistula, which as soon as you have killed, which you shall know by the matter which will be white and thick, then you shall heal up the sore either with the powder of Savin, or the powder of honey and lime baked together, or else by anointing it with Tar and Sallet-Oyl, or fresh Hogs Grease mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this Sorance do first open the sore with a hot Iron, and then take red Lead and black Sope, and mixing them well with water till he they good and thick, rent the horse therewith till it be whole.

Others use to take a quart of water, half a pound of Roch Alum, four peny-worth of Mercury, a quarter of a pound of Verdigrease, and mixing them well together, wash the horses fore with this water till it begin to dry up, and then heal it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked thus 

## C H A P. XXII.

*A true and certain approved Cure for any Pole-Evil whatsoever.*

**F**irst shave off the hair from the swelling, then lay on a Plaister of black Shoemakers wax, spread upon white Allom'd Leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broke the Imposthme: then take a pint of Wine-Vineger, and when it is boyling hot, mix with it as much clay-lome with the straws and all in it, as will bring the Vineger unto a thick Poultes, then apply this as hot as the horse can suffer it to the Sore, and renew it once a day till the Imposthume be whole.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Of a Horse that is Lave-Ear'd, and how to help him.*

**F**Or a Horse to be Lave-eard, is as foul a disgrace and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and use of any outward member whatsoever. It proceedeth from a natural infirmity, and is ingendered even from the first conception, and although few of our Farriers either have endeavoured themselves, or know how to help it; yet there is nothing more certain than that in this sort it may be cured. First, take your horses ears, and place them



them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little boards, or pieces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long strings knit unto them, bind the ears so fast in the places where they stand, that by no means or motion they may stir; then betwixt the head and the root of the ear, you shall see a great deal of empty wrinkled skin, which with your finger and your thumb you shall pull up, and then with a very sharp pair of Scizars you shall clip away all the empty skin close by the head, and then with a needle and red silk you shall stitch the two sides of the skin close together, and then with a Salve made of Turpentine, Deers suet, and Honey, of each a like quantity melted together, and made into an Oyntment, heal up the fore; which done, take away the splents which held up his ears, and you shall see within a short time that his ears will keep the same place still as you set them, without any alteration: and this you shall ever find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut finger.


## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of the Vives or hard Kernels between the Chaps and the Neck:*

THE Vives are certain great Kernels which grow from the root of the horses ears, down to the lower part of his nether Jaw, between the chap and the neck, they are in proportion, long, narrow and round, and are natural things, proper and due to every Horse: but when either through rankness of blood, or abundance of corrupt humours resorting to that place, they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foul Sorances and Imposthumations most dangerous: they are inwardly very full of little white salt Kernels, & they breed great pain in the horses throat. This Disease as far forth as I can find by any demonstration, is the Disease which in men we call the squinancy or Quinzie, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the Strangle, for that hath no coherence with the Infirmary. For the signs of the disease, there needs small repetition, insomuch as the grief is apparent to the eye: and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus; if you see the Kernels begin to rankle and swell, you shall take the horses ear, and laying is down alongst the neck of the horse, at the very end or tip of the Ear, cut a hole through the skin of the neck, the length of an Almond, or better; and then with a crooked Wire, pick out all those Kernels which you find.



find inflamed: Which done, fill the hole full of Salt: then about the end of three days, you shall find the sore begin to matter: then wash it either with Bark-water, or with the juyce of Sage: then take of Honey, of sweet Butter, and of Tar, of each half a spoonful, and melt them together, and as soon as you have washt the sore clean, put into it of this Oyntment the quantity of a Bean, and so dress the Horse once a day until it be whole.

There be others of our most ancient English Farriers, which for this Sorance use first to draw the Sore right down in the midst with a hot Iron from the root of the Ear, so far as the tip of the Ear will reach, being pulled down, and under the root again draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow-head, in this form:  then in the midst of the first Line Launce them with a Launcet, and taking hold of the Kernels with a pair of fine thin Pinsons, pull them so far forward as you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the vein: that done, fill the hole with Salt, and heal it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the Italian Farriers use this Cure: First, take a sponge steeped well in strong Vinegar, and bind it unto the sore place, renewing it twice a day, until the Kernels be rotten: that done, launce it then in the nethermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warm water and a Sponge, and then anoint the place with Honey and Fitch Flower mixt together; but in any case beware, during this Cure, you touch not the Kernels with your bare Finger, for fear of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in. Now there be other English Farriers, which use either to ripen the sore by laying to a playster of hot hogs grease, or a plaister of Barley Meal mixt with three ounces of Raisins, sod well together in strong Wine; or else they cut out the Kernels, now whether you cut them out, burn them out, or rot them out, (of all which I hold rotting the best,) you shall ever fill the Hole with Nettles and Salt being chopt and mixt together, or else tent it with tents dipt in water and mixt with Sallet-Oyl and Salt. Others use to burn them downwards with a hot Iron in the midst from the Ear to the Jaw-Bone, drawing two cross Stroaks, and then launch it in the midst, and pluck out the Kernels, and fill the Hole with Bay-Salt, and the Crops of Nettles well chopt and mixt together: Or else put only Salt into the Hole, and take the Crops of Nettles well chopt



chopt and mixt with Bay-Salt; and two spoonfuls of strong Vinegar, and strein it, and put in either ear a spoonful thereof, and put some black Wool after it, and so bind up his Ears.

Others use to ripen them, either by laying to the Sore wet Hay, or wet horse-litter: and as soon as they are ripe, (which you shall know by the softness) to launch the Skin, and take out the Kernels, and then fill the hole with the powder of Honey and unslackt Lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile-stone. Others use likewise after the Kernels are ripened and taken out, to take of Agrimony, Honey, and Violet-leaves, of each a like quantity, and stamping them well together, to plaister the Sore therewith, till it be whole. Others use after the Kernels are taken out, to wash the Sore with Copperas Water, and then to tent the hole with Flax dipt in the white of an Egg, and after to heal it with Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs grease molten well together.

## C H A P. XXV.

*A more rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives without either burning, melting, rotting, or any such violent extremity.*

**T**AKE a peny-worth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, of Swines grease one spoonful, the juyce of a handful of Rue, of Vinegar two spoonfuls, mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the horses Ears, and tye them up with two strings, or else stitch them together; then shake the ears that the horse-medicine may sink downwards: which done, you shall let him blood in the neck-vein, and in the Temple-Veins. And this Cure is infallible.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Another Cure for the Vives, most certain and approved.*

**I**F in any of the former Receipts you can find either difficulty or doubt, then to make certain and speedy work: First, shave off the hair from the swelled place, and then clap upon it a Plaister of Shoo-makers Wax, and remove it not till the Sore break, then renew the plaister, and it will both heal and dry it.



## C H A P. XXVII.

*Of the Strangle.*

**T**He Strangle (howsoever our old Farriers make a long Discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kind of Quinzy, but a mean inflammation of the throat, proceeding from some Cholerick or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the Throat veins into those parts, and there breedeth some hot inflammation, being stirred up either by some great winter-cold, or cold taken after Labour: it is a great and a hard swelling between the Horses nether chaps, upon the roots of the horses tongue, and about his throat, which swelling, if it be not prevented, will stop the horses wind pipe, and so strangle or choak him: from which effect, and none other, the name of this Disease took its derivation. The signs of this Disease, besides the apparent sign thereof, and the palpable feeling of the same, is, the horses temples of his head will be hollow, and his tongue will hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes will be swoln, and the passage of the throat so stopt, that he can neither eat nor drink, and his breath will be exceeding short. The cure thereof according to the most ancient Farriers, is, with a round small hot Iron to thrust a hole through the skin on both sides the wezand, and then after it beginneth to matter, to mix Butter, Tanners water and Salt together, and every day anoint the Sore therewith till it be whole. Others of the ancient Farriers use first to bathe the Horses mouth and tongue with hot water, and then anoint the sore place with the Gall of a Bull, that done, give him this drink. Take of old Oyl two pound, of old wine a quart, nine Figs, and nine Leeks-heads well stamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled these a while, before you strain them, put unto them a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and give him a quart of this every morning and evening. Also you may if you will, let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and pour Wine and Oyl into his Nostrils, and also give him to drink the decoction of Figs and Nitrum sodden together, or else to anoint his throat within with Nitre, Oyl, and Honey, or else with Honey and Hogs-dung mixt together. Other Farriers use to rowel the horse under the throat, and to draw the rowel twice or thrice a day, anointing it with fresh butter, and keeping his head warm. Other of our later and better experienced Farriers, use first



(if his years will permit him) to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, then to lay to the fore this ripening plaister: Take of Mallows, Linseed, Rue, Smallage and ground-Ivy, of each a like quantity, boyl these together in the grounds of Beer; then put to it some Oyl de Bay, and a little Dia Althea, then take it off the Fire, and make of it a plaister, and lay it to the fore, suffering the horse to drink no cold water: after the sore is broken, lay Bran steeped in Wine unto it, till it be whole. Others use to cut the Kernels out between the Jaws, and then to wash the fore with Butter and Beer, giving the horse to drink new milk and garlick, and the juyce of the leaves of Birch, or in Winter the Bark of Birch, or else to anoint it with Tar and Oyl till it be whole. Now, for mine own part, the best Cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was this.

As soon as I found the swelling begin to arise between his chaps, to take a Wax Candle, and holding it under the horses Chaps, close unto the swelling, burn it so long till you can see the skin be burnt through, so that you may as it were raise it from the flesh; that done, you shall lay unto it either wet hay, or wet horse litter, and that will ripen it, and make it break, then lay a plaister unto it it only of Shoemakers-wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, and will not break outward, and so avoideth only at his Nose, then you shall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by burning under his Nostrils, either Frankincense or Mastick, or else by putting a hot coal into wet hay, and so making the smoak thereof to ascend up into the horses head; or else to blow the Powder of Euforbium with a Quill into his Nose, and so note, that whatsoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle also.

## CH A P. XXVIII.

### *Of the Cankerous Ulcer in the Nose.*

**T**Hat which we call the Cankerous Ulcer in the Nose, is only a fretting humour, eating and consuming the flesh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time, will eat through the Nose. It cometh of corrupt blood, or else of a sharp hunger ingendred by means of some extream cold.

The signs are, the horse will often bleed at the Nose, and all the flesh within his Nose will be raw, and filthy stinking savours, and matter will come out at the Nose.

B b

The



The Cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers, is; Take of green Copperas and of Alom, of each a pound; of white Copperas one quarter, and boyl these in a pottle of running water until a pint be consumed: then take it off, and put thereto half a pint of Honey, then cause his head to be holden up with a drenching-staff, and squirt into his Nostrils with a squirt of Brass or Pewter, some of this Water being luke-warm, three or four times one after another; but betwixt every squirting give him liberty to hold down his head, and to snort out the filthy matter: for otherwise perhaps you might choak him: and after this it shall be good also without holding up his head any more, to wash and rub his Nostrils with a fine Clout bound to a sticks-end and dipt in the foresaid water, and do thus once a day until the horse be whole. Other Farriers use, if they see this Canker to be of great heat, and burning in the sore with exceeding great pain, then you shall take the juyce of Purslane, Lettice, and Night-shade, of each a like quantity, and mix them together, and wash the sore with a fine Cloath dipt therein, or else squirt it up into his Nostrils, and it will allay the heat.

Others take of Hyssop, Sage, and Rue, of each a good handful, and seeth them in urine and water to the third part of them: then strain them out, and put in a little white Copperas, Honey, and Aquavita, and so either wash or squirt the place with it; then when the Canker is killed, make this water to heal it: take of Rib-wort, Betony, and Daisies, of each a handful; then seeth them well in Wine and Water, and wash the sore three or four times a day therewith until it be whole. Others use also to take Chrystal, and beating it into fine Powder, to strow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

### CHAP. XXIX.

#### *Of Bleeding at the Nose.*

**M**Any Horses (especially young horses) are oft subject to this bleeding at the Nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of Blood, or that the vein which endeth in that place is either broken, fretted, or opened. It is opened many times by means that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine or too supple, and so pierceth through the Vein. Again, it may be broken by some violent strain, cut, or blow; and lastly, it may be fretted



fretted and gnawn through by the sharpness of the blood, or else by some other evil humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the Ancient Farriers, to take the juyce of the Roots of Nettles, and squirt it up into the horses Nostrils, and lay upon the nape of the horses neck a wad of Hay dipt in cold water, and when it waxeth warm, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers use to take a pint of red Wine, and put therein a quarter of Bole-Armoniack beaten into fine Powder, and being made luke-warm, to pour the one half thereof the first day into his Nostril that bleedeth, causing his head to be holden up, so as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other half.

Others use to let the horse bleed on the breast Vein, on the same side that he bleedeth, at several times: Then take of Frankincense one ounce, of Aloes half an ounce, and beat them into fine Powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the whites of three eggs until it be as thick as Honey, and with soft hair thrust it up into his Nostrils, filling the hole full of Ashes, Dung, or Hogs-dung, or Horses-dung mixt with Chalk and Vinegar.

Now for mine own part, when none of these will remedy or help (as all have failed me at some time) then I have used this; Take two small whip-cords, and with them garter him exceeding hard about some ten or twelve Inches above his knees of his fore-legs, and just beneath his Elbows, and then keep the nape of his Neck as cold as may be, with moist Cloths, or wet Hay, and it will staunch him presently.

### C H A P. XXX.

#### *Of the Bloody Rists, or Chops in the Palat of the Horses Mouth.*

**T**Hese Chops, Clefts, or Rists, in the Palat of a Horses Mouth, do proceed (as some Farriers suppose) from the eating of rough hay, full of whins, thistles, or other prickling stuff, provender full of sharp Seed, which by continual pricking and fretting the Furrows of the Mouth, do cause them to rankle, swell and breed corrupt blood and stinking matter, and without speedy prevention that Ulcer will turn to the foulest Canker.

The Cure thereof is, (according to the opinion of the Ancient Farriers) to wash the sore places very clean with Salt and Vinegar mixt together, then to anoint it with Honey and Alom mixt toge-



ther. Other Farriers use (especially if the palate be much swelled) to prick the roof of the mouth with a hot Iron, that the humours may issue out abundantly, and then to anoint the place with Honey and Onions boyled together, till they be whole.

## C H A P. XXXI.

*Of the Giggs or Bladders in a Horses Mouth.*

**T**Hese Giggs, Bladders, or Flaps in a horses mouth, are little soft Swellings, or rather Pustules with black heads, growing in the inside of the horses Lips, next under his great Jaw-teeth: They will sometimes be as great as a Wall-nut, and are so painful unto him, that they make him let his meat fall out of his mouth, or at least keep it in his mouth unchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper: they do proceed either of eating too much grasse, or naughty rough pricking Hay or Provender, they are most apparently to be felt: And the Cure is (according to the opinion of the oldest and most experienced Farriers) first to draw out the Horses Tongue of the one side of his Mouth, and then take a Launcet and slit the Swellings the length of a Date, and then with a Probe pick out all the Kernels like Wheat-Corns very clean: then take the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Salt as will temper it thick like leaven: then make it into little Balls, and thrust into every hole, and fail not to do so once a day, until it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have slit them with an Incision-Knife, and thrust out the Corruption, only to wash the sore places either with Vinegar and Salt, or else with Allom-Water. Others use with a small hot Iron to burn the Swellings, and then wash them with Beer and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heal them. Now that you may prevent this Disease before it come, it shall be good to pull out the Horses Tongue often, and to wash it with Wine, Beer and Ale, and so shall no Blisters breed thereon, nor any other Disease.



## C H A P. XXXII.

*Of the Lampass.*

**T**He Lampass is a swelling or growing up of the flesh, which overgroweth the upper teeth, which are the shears in the upper Chap, and so hindreth the horse from eating. They do proceed from abundance of blood, resorting to the first Furrow or Bar of the Mouth, I mean that which is next to the upper fore teeth; it is most apparent to be seen, and therefore needeth no other signs. The Cure is (according to the custom of the oldest Farriers) first with a Lancet to let him blood in divers places of the swelling flesh; then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burn out all that superfluous swell'd flesh which overgrows the fore-teeth, and then anoint the fore place with fresh butter until it be whole. Others use after it is burnt out, only to rub the fore place with Salt only, or wash it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others use to take a hooked Knife made very sharp and very hot, and therewith cut the swoln places in two parts, cross against the teeth; but if they be a little swelled, then cut but the third rank from the teeth, and so let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the horse will be well: but if you find afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting, or through the eating of too coarse meat, that the wound doth not heal, but rather rankle, then you shall take a Saucer full of Honey, and twelve Pepper-corns, and bray them together in a Morter, and temper them up with Vinegar, and boyl them a while, and then once a day anoint the fore therewith till it be whole.


## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Of the Camery, or Frounce.*

**T**He Camery, or Frounce in Horses, are small Pimples, or Warts in the midst of the Palate of the mouth above, and they are soft and sore, they will also sometimes breed both in his tongue and in his Lips: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen grass, or by drawing frozen Dust with the Grass into their Mouths: sometimes by eating of moist hay, that Rats or other Vermine have  
pist



pist upon, and sometimes by licking up of Venom. The Signs are the apparent seeing of the Pimples, or Wheelks, and a forsaking of his Food, both through the foreness of them, and through the unsavouriness and rankness of the Food that he hath eaten before.

 The Cure (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers,) is, first to let him bleed in the two greatest Veins under the tongue, and then wash all the sore places with Vinegar and Salt: then get the horse new bread, which is not hot, and give it him to eat, and the Horse will do well enough. But take heed you give but a small quantity of such bread for fear of surfeit, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others use with a hot Iron to burn the Pimples on the head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt, until they bleed, and they will soon heal. Other Farriers use to take out his tongue, and to prick the Veins thereof in seven or eight places, and likewise under his upper Lip also; and let him bleed well: then rub every sore place with Salt well; then the next day wash all the sore places with white-Wine warm, or else with strong Vinegar, and rub it again with Salt; then for two or three days let the horse drink no cold water, and he will do well.

#### C H A P. XXXIV.

##### *Of the Canker in the Mouth.*

**A** Canker is said of the ancient Farriers to be nothing but the rawness of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very sore blisters, from whence will run a very hot and sharp lye, which will fret and corrode, or rot the flesh wheresoever it goeth. The signs are, the apparent sight of the sore, besides the forsaking of his meat, because he cannot swallow it down, but lets it lye half chewed between his jaws, and sometimes when he hath chewed his meat, he will thrust it out of his mouth again, and his breath will savour very strongly, chiefly when he is fasting.

This Disease proceedeth oftentimes from some unnatural heat coming from the Stomach, and sometimes from the venom of filthy Food.

The Cure is, (as the oldest Farriers instruct us) to take of Alom half a pound, of Honey a quarter of a pint, of Columbine-Leaves, of Sage, of each a handful, boyl all these together in three pints of running water, until one pint be consumed, and wash all the sore places



places therewith, so as they may bleed, and do thus once every day until it be whole. Other Farriers use first to cast the horse, and with a rolling-pin to open his mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flax, to take out all the stinking Grafs, or other meat that lyeth in his Jaws and under the root of his tongue; then when you have cleansed it thus, you shall heat strong wine Vinegar somewhat warm, and then with the same Iron wrapt in Tow, and dipt in Wine Vinegar, you shall wash all the fore places till they bleed; then wash all his tongue and Lips with the same Vinegar, and so let him rise; and then feed him at least seven days with warm mashes and hot grains; but in no wise with any Hay, and he will soon be whole.

Other Farriers use to take of the juyce of Daffodil-roots seven drams, of juyce of Hounds-tongue as much, of Vinegar as much, of Alom one ounce; mix these well together, and wash the Canker therewith once a day until it be whole. Others use to take of Savin, of Bay-Salt, and of Rue, of each a like quantity, and stamp them together with as much Barrows-Grease, and anoint the fore places therewith until the Canker be killed, which you may know by the whiteness, and then healing it up only with Alom-water.

Others use first to wash the Canker till it bleed with warm Vinegar, to take a good quantity of Alom beaten into very fine powder, and mix it with strong Vinegar till it be as thick as a Salve; then to anoint all the fore places therewith, and do not fail thus to do twice or thrice a day until the Canker be whole.

Now for mine own part, the best Cure that ever I found for this Sorance, is, to take of Ginger and of Alom, of each a like quantity, made into very fine powder; then with strong Vinegar to mix them together till they be very thick like a Salve; then when you have washt the Canker clean, either with Alom-water, or with Vinegar, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing, the Canker will be killed, and after it will heal speedily.

### C H A P. XXXV.

#### *Of Heat in the Mouth and Lips of a Horse.*

**T**He unnatural and violent Heat which ascendeth up from the Stomach into the Mouth, doth not always breed a Canker, but



but sometimes only heateth and inflameth the Mouth and Lips, making them only swell and burn, so as the Horse can take no joy in his food, but through the grief refuseth his Meat. The Cure thereof is, first to turn up his upper Lip, or that which is most swelled, and with a Lancet jag it lightly, so that it may bleed, and then wash both that and all his Mouth and Tongue with Vinegar and Salt.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Of the Tongue being hurt with the Bit, or otherwise.*

**I**F the Tongue of a horse be either hurt, cut, or galled by any accident or mischance whatsoever, the best Cure is (as the oldest Farriers suppose) to take of English Honey, and of Salt Lard, of each a like quantity, a little unslackt Lime, and a little of the Powder of Pepper: boyl them on a soft Fire, and stir them well together till they be thick like unto an Oyntment: then wash the Wound with white Wine warmed: after that, anoint the wound with the said Oyntment twice a day, and by no means let the horse wear a bit till it be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Alum-water, and then to take the leaves of a black bramble, and to chap them together small with a little Lard; that done, to bind it with a little clout, making it round like a ball; then having dipped the round end in Honey, to rub the tongue there with once a day until it be whole.

## C H A P. XXXVII.

*Of the Barbes or Paps underneath a Horses Tongue.*

**T**He Barbes are two little Paps which naturally do grow under every horses tongue whatsoever, in the nether Jaw: yet if at any time they shoot out, and grow into an extraordinary length, or by the overflow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorance, and with the extremity of their pain, they hinder the horse from feeding. The Cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, absolutely to clip them away with a pair of shears close to the Jaw, and then to wash the sore either with water and salt, or else with Tartar and strong vinegar mixed together, or else with yinegar and salt. Any of all which will heal them.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XXXVIII

*Of the pain in a Horses Teeth, of Wolfs-Teeth, and Jaw-Teeth.*

A Horse may have a pain in his Teeth through divers occasions, as partly by the descent of gross humours from the head down unto the teeth and gums, which is very proper to Colts and young Horses, and plainly to be seen by the rankness and swelling of the gums; and also he may have pain in his teeth, by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfs-teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the upper Jaws, next unto the great grinding-teeth, which are so painful to the horse, that he cannot endure to chew his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or else to keep it still half chewed. Again, a horse will have a great pain in his teeth, when his upper Jaw-teeth be so far grown, as they over-hang the nether Jaw-teeth; and therewith also be so sharp, as in moving his Jaws, they cut and raze the insides of his cheeks, even as they were razed with a Knife. Lastly, a horse may have great pain in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or some other natural weakness, the horses teeth grow loose & sore, in such manner, that through the tenderness thereof, he is not able to chew or grind his Food. Now for the several Cures of these Infirmities, you shall understand, that first as touching the general pains in a horses teeth which do come by means of the distillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancientest Farriers, first to rub all the outside of the Horses gums with fine Chalk and strong Vinegar well mixt together.

Other ancient Farriers use after they have so washed the gums, to strow upon them the powder of Pomegranate pills, and to cover the temples of the head with the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Mastick molten together, as hath been before sufficiently declared.

Now for the Cure of Wolfs-teeth, or the Jaw-teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. First, cause the Horses Head to be tyed up high to some Post or Rafter, and his Mouth to be opened with a Cord so wide, that you may easily see every part thereof: Then take an Instrument of Iron made in all the points like unto a Carpenters gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the tool at the foot of the Wolfs-teeth, on the outside of the Jaw, turning the hollow side of the tool downwards, holding

C c

your



your hand steadily, so as the tool may not slip nor swerve from the aforesaid teeth: then, having a Mallet in your right hand, strike upon the head of the tool a good stroke wherewith you may loosen the tooth and make it bend inward, then straining the midst of your tool upon the Horses neather Jaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inside or hollow side of the Tool, and thrust it clean out of his head; which done, serve the other Wolfs-teeth on the other side in like manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

Other ancient Farriers use, (and I have in mine experience found it the better practice) only when the horse is either tyed up or cast, and his mouth opened, to take a very sharp File, and to file the Wolfs-teeth so smooth as is possible, and then wash his mouth with a little Alom-water. Now if the upper Jaw-teeth over-hand the nether Jaw-teeth, and so cut the inside of the mouth as is aforesaid, then you shall take your former tool or gouge, and with your Mallet strike and pare all those teeth shorter by little and little by degrees, running alongst them even from the first unto the last, turning the hollow-side of your tool towards the Teeth, by which means you shall not cut the insides of the horses cheeks; then with your File, file them all smooth without any raggedness, and then wash the horses mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Lastly, if the pain do proceed from the looseness of the Teeth, when the Cure is according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to cast the horse, and prick all his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, and it will fasten them again.

Others use to let the horse blood in the vein under the Tail, next the Rump, and then to rub all his Gums with Sage, and to give him in his Provender, the tender crops of Black Briers; or else wash all his mouth with honey, Sage, and Salt beaten together, and by no means let the horse eat any moist meat, for cold, moist, and Marish feeding in the Winter, only breedeth this Disease of looseness in the Teeth, and it is of all other, most proper to the Sorrel Horses.



## C H A P. XXXIX.

*Of Diseases in the Neck and Withers, and first of the Crick in the Neck.*

**T**He Crick in the Neck of the Horse, is, when he cannot turn his Neck any way, but holds it still right forth, in so much that he cannot bow down his head to take up his meat from the ground, but with exceeding great pain; and surely it is a kind of Convulsion of the Sinews, which proceedeth from cold causes, of which we have spoken very sufficiently before; it also proceedeth sometimes from over-heavy Burthens that be laid upon a Horses shoulders, or by over-much drying up of the sinews of the Neck. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to thrust a sharp hot Iron through the flesh of the Neck in five several places, every one distant from the other three inches, (but in any case beware of touching any sinew) then rowel all the aforesaid places either with horse-hair, Flax, or Hemp, for the space of fifteen days, and anoint the rowels with Hogs-grease, and the Neck will soon be restored. Others use if the Crick causeth the Horse to hold his Neck straight forward, which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing-iron, and draw the horse from the root of the ear, on both sides the neck, from the midst of the same, even down the breast, a straw deep, so as both ends may meet on the breast: then make a hole through the skin of the forehead, hard under the foretop, and thrust in a Cornet upward between the skin and the flesh, a handful deep; then either put in a Goose-feather doubled in the midst, and anointed with Hogs-grease, or else a rowel of either Horn or Leather with a hole in the midst; any of which will keep the hole open, to the intent the matter may issue forth: and this you shall keep open the space of ten days, but every day during the time, the Hole must be cleansed once, and the Feather or Rowel also cleansed and fresh anointed and put in again; and once a day let him stand upon the bit an hour or two, or else be ridden abroad two or three miles, by such an one as will beat the Horses head, and make him bring it in; but if the crick be such that it maketh the horse to hold his head awry upon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the neck is troubled, then you shall not draw the Horse with a hot Iron on

C c 2      both



both sides of the neck, but only on the contrary side, as thus; If he bend his head towards the right side, then to draw him, as is afore-said, only on the left side, and to use the rest of the Cure as is above said, and if necessity do require, you may splent the Horses neck also streight with strong splents of Wood.

I have cured this crick in the neck only by bathing the horses neck in the Oyl of Peter, or the Oyl of Spike very hot, and then rolling it all up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping the horse exceeding warm, without using any burning, wounding, or other violence.

## C H A P. XL.

*Of the Wens in the Neck.*

**A** Wen is a certain Bunch or Kernel on the Skin, like a tumor or swelling: The inside whereof is sometimes hard like a gristle, and spongius like a skin full of soft warts; and sometimes yellow like unto Rusty Bacon, with some white grains amongst. Now of Wens, some are great, and some be small; also some are very painful, and some not painful at all. They proceed, as some imagine, of naughty, gross, and flegmatick humours, binding together in some sick part of the body. And others say, they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be most extream cold; but I say, that albeit they may proceed from these causes, yet most generally they proceed from some pinching, bruising, biting, ripping, or galling, either of girths, halter, collar, or any other thing whatsoever.

The certainest Cure thereof is this, take of Mallows, Sage and red Nettles, of each one handful: boyl them in running water, and put thereunto a little Butter and Honey, and when the herbs be soft, take them out, and all to bruiſe them, and put thereunto of Oyl de Bay two ounces, and of Hogs-grease two ounces, and warm them together over the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaister it upon a piece of Leather, so big as the Wen, and lay it too so hot as the Horse can endure it, renewing it every day in such sort the space of eight days, and if you perceive it will come to no head, then launce it from the midst of the Wen downward, so deep that the matter in the bottom may be discovered and let out: which done, heal it up with this Salve; Take of Turpentine a quarter, and wash it nine times in fair Water, then put thereunto the yolk



yolk of an Egg, and a little English Saffron beaten into powder, and make a Tent or Roul of Flax, and dip it in that Oyntment, and lay it to the sore, renewing the same every day once or twice, until the Wen be cured.

Others use in this case, with a hot Iron to burn and fear away all the superfluous flesh, and then to heal up the Sore either with the Oyntment last rehearsed, or else with the Powder of Honey and Lime mixt together; and this manner of Cure is by much the speedier.

## C H A P. XLI.

*Of Swelling in the Neck after Blood-letting.*

**T**HE Swelling of a Horses Neck after Blood-letting, may come through divers occasions, as namely, by striking through the Vein, so as some of the Blood being gotten betwixt the flesh and the Vein, it there corrodeeth and turneth to an Imposthume, or else by striking the Vein with a rusty Fleam, whereby the vein rankleth, or by some cold Wind striking suddenly into the hole, or lastly, by suffering the Horse too soon to thrust down his head, and graze or feed, whereby humours resorting to that place, breed a great Imposthumation: The Cure is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take Hemlock and stamp it, and then to mingle it with Sheeps-dung and Wine-Vinegar, and so making a Plaister thereof, to lay it to the Swelling, renewing it once a day until it be whole. Other Farriers use first to anoint the place with the Oyl of Camomile warmed, and then to lay upon it a little Hay wet in cold Water, and bind it about with a Cloath, renewing it every day for the space of a Week, to see whether it will grow to a head, or else vanish away: if it grow to a head, you may then launch it, and thrust out the matter; then heal it up by tenting it with Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, dressing it once a day until it be whole.



## C H A P. XLII.

*How to Staunch Blood.*

**I**F your Horse either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskilful Farrier that letteth him bleed when the Sign is in that place, bleedeth so exceedingly that he will not be staunched, you shall then according to the opinion of old Farriers, lay unto the wound a little new horse-dung tempered with Chalk and strong Vinegar, and not to remove it from thence the space of three days; or else to lay unto it burnt Silk, burnt Felt, or burnt Cloath, any of which will staunch blood. Others use to pour into the Wound the juyce of Coriander, or else to let the Horse chew in his Mouth the leaves of Perwinkle. Others use to take of bruised Nettles, and lay them to the Wound; or else wild Tansey bruised, or hot Hogs-dung. Others use to take bruised Sage and lay to the Wound: or else the Coame about the Smiths Forge; or else a clod of Earth, or bruised Hyssop; or the soft crops of Hawthorn bruised; or else to take two ounces of the Horses blood, and boyl it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the Wound.

But when all these fail, as in some extremities I have found them do; then for your only refuge, you shall take the soft down either of Hares Skin, or a Coney Skin, and stop the Wound well therewith, holding it to with your hand till the blood staunch: if it be a grievous fore Wound, then as soon as the blood is flaked, spread a plaister of bole-Armoniack and Wine-Vinegar mixt over the Wound.

## C H A P. XLIII.

*Of the falling of the Crest.*

**T**He falling of the Horses Crest, is, when the upper part of a Horses Neck which is called the Crest, leaneth either to the one or the other side, and will not stand upright as it ought to do. It proceedeth most commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and especially when a fat Horse falleth away suddenly upon any inward Sicknes. The Cure (according to the oldest Farriers) is, first to draw his Crest well a full straws breath deep on the



the contrary side with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be half an inch broad, and make both your Beginning and Ending somewhat beyond the fall, so as the first Draught may go all the way hard upon the edge of the main, close by the roots of the same, bearing your right hand down-ward into the Neck-ward: Then answer that with another draught beneath, and so far distant from the first, as the fall is broad, compassing as it were all the fall: but still on the contrary side, and betwixt those two draughts, right in the midst, draw a third draught; then with an Iron Button of almost an Inch about, burn at each end a Hole; and also in the spaces betwixt the Draughts, make divers Holes distant three fingers one from another, as this Figure doth plainly shew you. That done, to kill the Fire, anoint it every Day once with fresh Butter for a week or more; Then take of Mallows and of Sage, of each one handful, boyl them well in running water, and wash the burning away till it be raw flesh, and then dry it up with the Powder of Honey and Lime.




Other Farriers use for this Infirmary, first to cast the Horse upon some soft Dunghil, or other easie place, and with a Knife to cut away the flesh on the hanging or under-side of the Crest, even from the fore-end thereof to the hinder-end, six Inches broad and two Inches thick, or somewhat more in the middle thereof where it is the thickest; then groping the Crest with your hands, to pare the thickest part thereof, till it come all to one thinness, then holding the Horse still fast bound, to cover all the place with great handfuls of swines-dung prepared for the purpose, and hold it to the sore place an hour together, until the blood be staunched: Then let the Horse arise, and lead him into the Stable, tying him in such sort, that he may neither rub his Neck nor lye down; then the next morning take good store of burnt Alom beaten to Powder, and strow it all over the sore place, and so let him stand for two days after without any stirring, lest the Wound should bleed again; then at the end of these two days you shall bathe the sore gently with a fine Linnen Cloath, dipt in warm Urine, and then drying the Sore, again throw more burnt Alom upon it, and after anoint all about the outside of the Edges of the Sore with Unguentum



guentum Album Camphoratum, more than an Inch broad: thus you shall dress him every day once on that side of the Crest which did fall; then for the contrary side you shall draw his main thereon, and plat it in many Plats; which done, you shall to those Plats with thongs of Leather, fasten a Cudgel of a foot and a half long: then to the midst of that Cudgel you shall hang a piece of Lead with a hole in it, of such weight as will poize the Crest up even, and hold it in his right place. Then shall you draw his Crest on that side the weight hangs with a hot drawing-iron, even from the top of the Crest, down to the point of the shoulder, making divers stroaks one an Inch and an half from another: Then shall you lay upon the burnt places a Plaister of Pitch, Tar, and Rozen molten together, and so let the weight hang till all the sore places be healed, and there is no question but the Crest will stand both upright and strongly.

## C H A P. XLIV.

*A certain and approved way, how to raise up the Crest that is fallen.*

 **T**He most infallible and certain way to raise up, and to keep when it is so risen, a Crest that is fallen, is, first, to raise up the fallen Crest with your hand, and to place it in such wise as you would have it, and it ought to stand; then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottom or foundation of the Crest, so as it may stand upright: then on that side to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (somewhat broad on the Edge) draw his Neck first at the bottom of the Crest, then in the midst of the Crest, and lastly, at the setting on of the hair, and be sure to draw it through the skin, but be sure no deeper, for this will enlarge and open the Skin.

Then on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) gather up the skin with your hand, and with two plaisters of Shoe-makers Wax laid one against another at the edge of the Wound, and with smooth splints to stay the skin, that it may shrink neither upward nor downward, then with a pair of sharp Scizars clip away all the spare skin which you had gathered up with your hand, then with a needle and some red silk, stitch the skin together in divers places, and



and to keep the skin from breaking, stitch the edges of the plaister together also, then anoint the fore with Turpentine, Honey and Wax molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot Iron, with peece-grease made warm. And this do twice a day till all be whole, and have great care that your Splints shrink not.

## C H A P. XLV.

*Of the Manginess in a Horses Mane.*

**T**He Manginess which is in the Mane of a Horse, and maketh him shed his Hair, proceedeth either from the rankness of blood, poverty, or lousiness, or else of rubbing where a mangy Horse hath rubbed, or else of fretting dust lying in the Mane for want of good dressing. The Signs are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the Horse about the Mane and Neck, and the Scabs fretting both the flesh and the skin, besides the shedding and falling away of the hair. The cure (according to the opinion of some of our old Farriers) is, first let him bleed on the Neck-vein, and cut away all the hair from the Scabs, then with a hot Iron as big as a mans finger, sear all the sore place even from the one end to the other: Then anoint all the place you so burnt with black Sope, and now and then wash it with strong Lye and Black Sope mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this Manginess only take of fresh grease one Pound, of Quick-silver one ounce, of Brimstone one ounce, of Rape-Oyl half a pint, mingle them together, and stir them continually in a pot with a slice, until the Quick-silver be so wrought with the rest, as you shall perceive no Quick-silver therein: that done, take a blunt Knife, or an old Horse-comb, and scratch all the Mangy places therewith until it be raw and bloody, and then anoint it with this Oyntment in the Sun-shine, if it may be, to the intent the Oyntment may sink in, or else hold before it either a hot fire-pan, or a hot Bar of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three days after thus once anointing him he leave not rubbing, then mark in what place he rubbeth, and dress that place again, and questionless it will serve.



## C H A P. XLVI.

*Of the shedding of Hair in the Main.*

**H**Air, for the most part, sheddeth or falleth from the Main of a Horse, by reason of certain little Worms which eat and fret the roots of the hair asunder. The Cure whereof is, first, to anoint the Main and Crest with black Soap, and then to make a strong lye either of running water, and Ash-ashes, or else of Urine and Ash-ashes, and with that to wash the Main all over, and it will help him.

## C H A P. XLVII.

*Of the Pain and grief in a Horses Withers.*

**B**Oth to a Horses Withers, and also to his Back, do happen many Infirmities and Sorances, some proceeding from inward Causes, as of the Corruption of Humours, and sometimes of outward Causes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of some naughty Saddle, or some heavy Burthen laid on the Horses Back, or such like. And of these griefs some be small, and some be great. The small are only superficial Blisters, Swellings, Light-galls, or Bruisings, and are easily cured; but the great are those which pierce to the very Bone, and be most dangerous, especially if they be nigh to the back Bone. Then to speak first to the smaller gallings, whensoever you shall see any swellings to arise, either about your Horses Withers, or any other part of his Back, the Cure is, (according to the opinion of some of the old Farriers) first of all if the place be much swoln and festered, then to pierce it with a sharp hot Iron in many parts on both sides of the Neck, and then put into the same tents of Linnen Cloth, dipt in warm Sallet-Oyl, and then after to dry and heal it up with the powder of Honey and Lime mixt together.

Others use to take Butter and Salt, and to boyl them together until they be black, then to pour it hot on the swelling: and then to take warm Horse-dung, and lay it on the fore Back until it be whole, dressing it once a day.

Others (especially the best of the ancient Farriers) use as soon as they see any swelling to arise, to bind unto it a little hot Horse-dung,



dung, to see if that will assuage it; which if it will not, then to prick it round about the swelling with a Fleim, Knife, or Lancet, yet not too deep, but so as it may pierce the Skin, and make the Blood issue forth; that done, take of Mallows, of Smallage, two or three handfuls, and boyl them in running-Water until they be so soft as Pap; then strain the Water softly from it, and bruise the Herbs in a treen-dish, putting thereunto a little Hogs-grease, or else Sallet-Oyl, or Sheeps-suet, or any other fresh grease; boyl them and stir them together, not frying them hard, but as they be soft and supple, and then with a clout lay it warm upon the sore, renewing it every day once until the swelling be gone, for it will either drive it away, or bring it to an head, which lightly chanceth not in these small swellings, except some Gristle or Bone be perished. Others of the ancient Farriers use, when they see any swelling to arise about a horses back, first to shave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereto this plaister; take a little wheat-flower, and the white of an Egg beaten together, and spread it on a linnen cloth, which being laid unto the swelling two or three days, and not removed, will bring it to an head; and when you come to take it off, pull it away so softly as you can possibly, and where you see the Corruption gathered in a head together, then in the lowest place thereof, pierce it upward with a sharp Iron somewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to anoint the sore place every day once with fresh Butter and Hogs-Grease until it be whole.

Others of our late Farriers use, when they see any swelling, only to lay wet Hay unto it, for that either will drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you shall lay upon it a Plaister of Wine-Lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with wheat-flower: or if you like not this Medicine, then you may make a Plaister of thick Barm, as great as the Sore, and renew it once a day until the swelling be assuaged, but if you see that any Corruption be knit together, then you shall launce it in the nethermost part, and let out the matter, then wash the sore either with Urine, Ale, or Beer, made scalding hot: then dry up all the moisture from the sore, either with a Linnen Cloth, or with a Sponge: then cover all the sore over with burnt Alom beaten to Powder: And thus dress the Horse once a day until the flesh be grown up so high as you would



have it, then shall you dress the sore but once in two or three dayes. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you anoint the edge of the sore all about after it hath been washed as aforesaid, with Unguentum Album, for that will make the skin come fast: but if you do perceive that by dressing it too seldom, there doth begin to grow any proud flesh, then you shall take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of Unguentum Album, and anoint all the fore places therewith once in two days: This will correct the proud Flesh, and cause it to skin and heal suddenly.

Others use for the abating of these swellings, to boyl mallows in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the swelling: and if the swelling do break, wash it with Piss, and pour hot molten Butter upon it. Others use to shave away the Hair, and then to lay very hot unto it a handful of Leeks stampd and mixt with Boars-grease, or else to take a turf of earth burned red, and laid to as hot as the horse can suffer it. Others use to take Nettles beaten to pieces, and mixt with hot Urine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the Saddle: and then if after two or three days dressing the swelling break, then look if there be any dead flesh within the sore, and either eat or cut it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a pound of Sallet-oyl, three ounces of white Wax, one ounce of Turpentine, and three drams of Verdigrease, melt all these together, and tent the sore therewith till it be whole, for this will both eat away the ill flesh, and incarnate good. Others take green Coleworts and stamp them in swines grease, and lay it plaisterwise on the sore, and it will assuage it, especially if you ride the horse a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great swelling, but only the skin chafed off, then you shall wash the raw place with water and Salt, or else with warm wine, and sprinkle upon it the powder of Honey and Lime; or else the powder of Mirrh, or the powder of burnt silk, or felt, or cloath, or of any old post.


Other Farriers use when only the skin is galled off, to take a spoonful of thick Cream, and to put as much Chimney-foot into it as will make it thick like an Oyntment, and then to lay it upon the sore, and questionless it will heal it presently if the Wound be not very deep.



## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Of any Galled Back or Withers how great soever the Swelling or Inflammation be.*

**I**F the Swelling, Pinch, Wringing, or Gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the Back of a Horse be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, so that there is now no apparent hope that it can be got away without much Aposthumation: then the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is, to take Barm, and mix it with so much Soot of a Chimney, and make it so thick therewith that it shall seem like Tar, and with that make a Plaister, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very suddenly both draw and heal it perfectly.

Others use to take a handful of Bay-Salt, and a handful of great and small Oat-meal, and put a quantity of old stale Urine thereto, and stir them all together, and temper it like pap, or paste, and then make round balls thereof, then throw them in a Fire, and make them red hot; then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then strow of that powder all over the sore, so oft as you shall see any part thereof bare, and it will heal it. Other Farriers use if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot Iron, and then cross him with the same Iron, in manner of this Figure:  then take a round hot Iron, having a sharp point, and thrust it up into the swelling on each side upwards towards the point of the Withers, or top of the Back, to the intent that the matter may issue downwards at both the holes; that done, tent both the holes first with a tent dipt in Hogs-grease to kill the Fire, and also anoint all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to do until the swelling be asswaged, renewing the tent every day once until the fiery matter be fallen away; then tent him again with washed Turpentine, mingled with the yolks of three or four Eggs, and Saffron, renewing the tent every day once until it be whole.

But if for all this the swelling do not go away, then it is a sign of some inward Imposthumation, and then it shall be good that you lance it, and let out the corruption; then take of honey half a pint, of Verdigrease two ounces beaten to powder, and mix it together with Honey.




Honey, then boyl them in a pot until they look red, then being lukewarm, make either a tent or a plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same every day once until it be whole. But the sore may be so vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the shoulders, even unto the body, which is most dangerous and very mortal; therefore whensoever you shall fear any such hollownes, you shall tent the hole with the Salve last mentioned, and thrust after it a good piece of dry sponge, as well to keep the hole open, as also to suck out the corruption, and this you shall renew once a day until the sore be whole.

Others of our late Farriers use to take Butter, Vinegar, and Bay-Salt, and melting them together, lay it to the sore warm until it break, then strow upon it either Soot, or the Powder of Clay-Wall, but if it be much festred, then take a pottle of Verjuice, two pennyworth of green Copperas, and boyl it unto a pint and a half: Then wash and sear the hollownes therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and so let it remain three days untouched, then wash it with the same water again, and fill the hole again with red Lead, and so every other day wash it with that Water, and lay red Lead thereon, and it will heal the forest Back whatsoever. Now all these Medicines already rehearsed are sufficient enough for the healing of any gall'd back whatsoever; yet forasmuch as divers Farriers hold divers opinions, and think what they know to be only best approv'd, and inasmuch as you shall not be ignorant of any mans skill or knowledg, which beareth any ground of reason in it; I will repeat you a Catalogue of other Medicines, which assuredly are all good in their kinds, and you may use them as occasion shall be administred.

First then know, that the powder of Briar-Leaves will dry and heal up any galled back. Also Rye-flower, the White of an Egg, Honey, Barley-straw burnt, and Soot, will dry up, and heal a sore Back: the powder of Honey and unslackt Lime will skin any gall: the powder of wild Cucumbers dried in an Oven, will heal any Gall, provided the Sore be first washt with Vinegar. Onions boyled in Water, and laid hot to a swollen horses back, will assuage the swelling; and the yolk of an Egg, Salt, and Vinegar beaten together, will heal it when it is broken, provided that you wash the sore first with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath been sod. The Soot or Grime of a Brass Pot, the powder of the bone of Crab-fish, or the powder



powder of Oyster shells, any of these will dry and skin a galled back.

Lastly, (and besides it a man needeth no more medicines) for this purpose, take Hay and boyl it strong in Urine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will either assuage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter; then stop the hole with Rozen, Wax, and fresh Grease molten together; but if you find any dead flesh to grow within the sore, then eat it out with either Verdigrease beaten to powder and strowed thereon, or else with Mercury calcined, called of some precipitate, being likewise strowed on the proud flesh; and when the proud flesh is gone, you may dry up the sore only with the powder of Rozen, and nothing else. See further of this Disease in the new Addition for the Fistula marked thus 

## C H A P. XLIX.

*Of a Canker in the Withers of a Horse.*

**I**F a Horse after he hath been violently wrung upon the Withers, be suffered to go unlooked to, and that the sore breaketh upward through its own violence, yet the great substance of the matter or corruption descending and rotting still downward, it cannot chuse but breed a Cankerous and Vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fistula, which you shall know by these signs: First, the matter that issues from the sore, will be sharp, hot, and waterish, lye fretting the hair away where it runneth down, and about the hole of the sore will be a kind of spongy, proud, dead flesh, which stoppeth the passage of the gross matter. Now the cure of this Cankerous sore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, so that you may see into the hollownes; then cut out all the dead flesh till you come to the quick, then take a quart of old stale Urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt: then boyl it well on the fire, then having cleansed the sore either with a Cloth or a wisp of Hay, wash it well with the Liquor: then take the yolks of four eggs, and a peny-worth of Verdigrease, and a spoonful of flower, and make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, dressing him in this sort once a day until it be whole.

Others of our ancient and latter Farriers use to take of the strongest Beer a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Alom, and half a  
handful



handful of Sage, seeth it to the one half, then take out the Sage-leaves, and with the rest dress the horse once a day, and it will heal any Cankerous sore in what part whatsoever.

### CHAP. L.

*Of the Stick-fast, or Sit-fast, Horns, or hard Bones growing under the Saddle.*

**T**Hese Stick-fasts, Sit-fasts, or Horns that grow in a Horses skin under the Saddle, is a certain dead Skin like a hard piece of Leather, growing fast in the flesh: It cometh of some old bruise, which not imposthumating, the skin falleth dead, and sticketh hard and fast to the flesh.

✂ The cure is, take either a sharp crooked instrument made for the purpose, or else a long nail, with the point turned inward, and catching hold on the edge of the dead skin, or horn, which will clap or rise from the sound skin, and with a sharp knife cut away all the dead hard skin from the sound flesh: and if when it is cut out, the hollownes be somewhat deep, then you shall heal it up by pouring hot molten Butter into it evening and morning: then when the flesh is made even, dry and skin it either with the powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together. Others use first to anoint the Stick-fast or hard Skin with fresh Butter or Hogs grease, until it be mollified and made soft, so as you may either cut them or pull them away, and then wash the wound either with mans Urine, or with white-wine, and then dry it up with the powder of Oyster-shells, or Bole-Armoniack.

### CHAP. LI.

*Of Wens or Knobs growing about the Saddle-Skirts.*

**T**He Wens or Knobs which grow about the Saddle-Skirts, do most commonly grow betwixt two Ribs, and do ever proceed of old bruises. And the cure is, first to mollifie them by anointing them twice or thrice a day with Hogs-grease, for more than a week together, and sometimes to bathe them with hot wine-lees: but if in that space it will come to no head, then launce it from the middle downwards, and tent it with washed Turpentine, yolks of Eggs, and Saffron mingled as well together as is before shewed, renewing the



the Tent every day once, until the Sore be sufficiently and perfectly healed. Look unto the Cure for the Splent, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

## C H A P. LII.

*Of the Navel-Gall.*

**T**He Navel-Gall is, when a Horse at any time is bruised on the top of the Chine of the Back, behind the Saddle, right against the Navel, whence it taketh the name: It cometh either by splitting of the Saddle behind, or for lack of stuffing, or by means of the Crupper buckle sitting down in that place, or through some hard weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle: of all bruising on the back, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shall perceive it by the puffed up and spongy flesh, looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the sore. The cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient Farriers, first to cut away all the dead or proud flesh even to the bone, then burn a hole four inches lower than the navel-gall, and put a Rowel of Horse hair through it: then take the powder of Oyster-shells, or of any old shoe-sole burnt, and strow it on the sore, and ever as it waxeth moist, put on more powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel-gall, do take the white of an Egg, wheat-flower, honey, mustard and soap, of each a like quantity, and mixing them together, make a plaister thereof, and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore wash'd with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the plaister: and if the proud flesh begin to grow again then the powder of an old burnt shoe, or Nerve oil, or verdigrease will kill it, and the powder of Oyster shells will skin it. Others of the ancient Farriers use, after they have cut out all the rotten and dead flesh, to take the white of an Egg and Salt beaten together, and lay that plaister-wise to the sore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the space of two days; then take of Honey a quarter of a pint, and of verdigrease one ounce beaten into powder, and boil them together in a pot, stirring it still until it look red, and being luke-warm, make a plaister with Tow, and clap it to the wound, washing and cleansing well the Wound first with a little warm Vinegar or white Wine, continuing so to do once a day until it begin to heal and to skin; then dry it up with sprinkling thereon this

E e

powder



powder following: Take of Honey a quartern, and as much of unsleckt Lime as will thicken the Honey, and make it like a Paste, and in a Fire-pan over the Fire, stir it still until it be hard baked, so as it may be beaten into powder: but ever before you throw on the powder, wash the wound first with warm Vineger, continuing so to do until it be perfectly skinned. Others use to heal this Gall by laying on the sore, a Plaister of Chimney-Soot and Barm mixt together, or else mix Nettle Seeds and Sallet-Oyl together, and anoint the Sore therewith.

There be others which use only to wash the sore with warm Urine and Salt, and then to anoint the place with fresh Grease and Salt mixt together, or else to take of Bettony, Powder of Brimstone, Elebor, Pitch, and old grease, of each like quantity, and stamp them together, and when you have washed the Sore with old Urine, then anoint it with this Ointment until it be whole, See also for this disease in the new Additions for the Fistula, thus marked &

### C H A P. LIII.

#### *Of the Swaying in the Back.*

**A** Horse is said to be swayed in the Back, when either by too great a burthen, or by some slip, strain, or over-hasty and straight turning, he hath taken an extreme Wrench in the lower part of his Back below his Short Ribs, and directly between his Fillers; the signs whereof are continual reeling and rolling of the Horses hinder parts in his going, and also he will falter many times, and sway sometimes backwards, and sometimes side-long, and be ready to fall even to the ground; besides, the Horse being laid, will with a great deal of difficulty rise up again.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, to take of the Fat of the Fruit of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozen four ounces, of Pitch four ounces, of Bolearmonick one ounce, and of Sanguis Droconis half an ounce, incorporate all these well together, and lay it plaister-wise all over the Reins of the Horses back, not taking it by any means away until it fall off.

Others of our own Farriers use first to cover the horses back with a Sheep skin coming hot from the Sheeps back, laying the fleshy side next to his Back, and then lay a warm housing cloath upon the same, to keep his Back as hot as may be, and so let it continue until



it being to smell : then take the old Skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing so to do the space of three Weeks, and if he amend not with this, then draw his Back with a hot Iron right out on both sides of the ridge of his back, from the Pitch of the buttock unto a handful within the Saddle : and then again overthwart, according to this figure, and let every Line be an inch one from another, neither let the stroke be deep, and burned no more than that every one may look yellow : Then lay upon the burning this charge or plaister :



Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a pound, of Bole-Armonick half a pound made into powder, and half a pint of Tar, and boyl all these together in a pot, and stir it till every thing be molten and thoroughly mingled together, then being luke-warm, daub all the burning therewith very thick, and thereupon clap as many flocks of the Horses Colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it self, and if it be in Summer, you may turn the Horse to Grass.

#### C H A P. LIV.

##### *Of special weakness in the Back.*

According to the opinion of our oldest Farriers (though my self have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kind of weakness belonging to a horses back, which they call the fretting, or biting of the Reins, which doth proceed from abundance of humours resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the horse do lose their feeling and strength, and such a horse falleth down to the ground : yea, and the humours many times resorting to the heart, do suffocate the same, and in two or three hours do cause the horse to dye. The Cure, according to the opinion, is, first to let the horse blood abundantly in the Neck-vein, and to draw his back with a hot Iron, in such sort, as is declared in the last Chapter, and then to make him swim a pretty while in some River : then Rowel him upon the haunches near unto the huckle-bones, and

Then



then to anoint the sore place with Hogs Grease, and three leaved grafs, stamped together, until he be whole.

## C H A P. LV.

*Of the swelling of the Cods or Stones.*

**T**HIS kind of Swelling or Inflammation of the Cods cometh either by some wound received, or by the stinging, or else biting of some venomous beast, or else by some great strain either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one Horse with another. The Cure is, according to the Opinion of the most ancient Italian Farriers, first to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath been sodden the roots of wild Cucumbers and Salt, and then to anoint it with an ointment made of Oyl, Goats Grease, and the white of an Egg, or else to bathe the Cod in warm water, Nitrum and Vinegar mingled together, and also to be anointed with an ointment made of Chalk, or of Potters earth, Ox-dung, Comin Water and Vinegar mingled together: or else to be anointed with the juyce of the herb called Night-shade, or with the juyce of Hemlock, which grows on Dunghils; and if need require, to let him blood on the flank-veins. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Disease cometh ofttest after some sickness, or surfeit with cold, being a sign of amendment from that sickness, do cure it in this sort; take of Bean-flower, Wheat-meal, Comin and Hogs grease, of each a like quantity, and making a Plaister thereof, spread it all over the Horses Cods and Stones. Others boil Groundsel in Wine Vinegar, and so bathe the horses Cods therewith; or else take a quart of good Alewort, and set it on the fire with Crumbs of Brown Bread strongly leavened, and better than a handful of Comin made into Powder: Then with Bean flower make a Plaister of them all, and apply it to the grief as hot as can be suffered; or if this help not, take Cows dung, and seeth it in Milk, and lay it upon the swelling as hot as may be, and it will assuage it. But if this Inflammation proceed from rankness of Seed, which you shall see by the much moist sliminess of his Yard, then you shall first make him cover a Mare, then keep him without Provender, and let him Blood above the great Vein, which is between his Lips, and lay thereto hard Eggs beaten in his own dung, and make a Plaister of the same, and lay it to his Cods, and once a day wash his Cods with cold water.

Other



Other ancient Farriers use to let the Horse blood in his flank-veins, and then take of oil of Roses and of Vinegar, of each half a pint, of Bole Armonick half a quartern beaten to powder, mix them together in a Cruze, and being luke-warm anoint the Cods therewith, with two or three Feathers bound together: and the next day ride him into the water, so as his Cods may be within the water, giving him a turn or two therein, and so return fair and softly home unto the stable; and when the horse is dry, anoint him again as before, and do this every day until the horse be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this Disease may come by means of evil humours, and corrupt blood, which resort unto the Cods, and the Cure is, to cover all the Cods over with a charge made of Bole Armonick and Vinegar wrought together, renewing it every day once until the swelling go away, or that it break of it self, and if it break, then to tent it with Mel Rosatum, and make him a Breech of Canvase to keep it in, renewing the tent every day once until it be perfectly well.

## CHAP. LVI.

### *Of Incording, or Bursting, or the Rupture in Horses.*

**T**His Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this incording or burstness in horses, is, when the rim or thin film which holdeth the Guts up in a horses body is broken, so that the guts fall down either into the Cods of the horse, or into the horses flank, as I have seen divers. Now this burstness cometh either by some stripe or blow of another horse, or else by some strain in leaping over a hedge or a ditch, or by teaching a horse to bound when he is too young, or when a horse goreth himself upon some pole or stake, or by forcing a horse when he is full to run beyond his strength, or by stopping a horse too suddenly upon naughty and hollow ground, whereby the stradling and slipping of his hinder feet, may stretch or tear the rim.

The signs to know this Sorance before it be apparent to the eye, are; the horse will forsake his Meät, and stand shoaring or leaning always on that side that he is hurt; and on that side, if you search with your hand betwixt the Stone and the Thigh, upward to the body, and somewhat above the stone, you shall find the gut it self big and hard in the feeling, whereas on the other side you shall find no such thing.

Now



Now for the Cure, although for mine own part I both do and shall ever hold it incurable, as long as a Horse is a Beast without reason, yet for your satisfaction, I will not stick to repeat what the best Farriers, and my self have practised, in as much as it worketh much good, though no absolute Cure.

The Cure then is, to bring the horse into some house or place which hath over-head a strong baulk or beam going overthwart, and strow that place thick with straw, then put on four strong pasterns, with four rings on his Feet, and fasten one end of a long rope to one of those rings, then thread all the other things with the loose end of the rope, and so draw all his four Feet together, and cast him on the straw, that done, cast the rope over the banck, and hoist the horse so as he may lye flat on his back, with his Legs upward without strugling, then bathe his Stones well with warm water and butter molten together, and the Stones being somewhat warm & well mollified, raise them up from the Body with both your hands, being closed by the fingers close together, and holding the Stones in your hands in such manner, work down the Gut into the Body of the Horse, by striking it downwards continually with your two thumbs, one labouring immediately after another, until you perceive that side of the stone to be so small as the other: and so having returned the Gut into his right place, take a Lint of two fingers broad, thoroughly anointed with Fresh-Butter, and tie his stones both together with the same, so nigh the Body as may be, yet not over-hard, but so as you may put your finger between: that done, take the horse quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, where he must stand warm, and not be stirred for the space of three weeks: But forget not the next day, after you have placed his Gut in its true place, to unloosen the Lint and take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to cast a Dish or two of cold water up into his Cods, and that will make him to shrink up his Stones, and thereby restrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three weeks end, to make your Cure so much the surer, it were not amiss to geld the Stone on that side away, so shall he hardly be bursten again on that side: and during the Cure, let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his drink be always warm.



## C H A P. LVII.

*Of the botch in the Groins of a Horse.*

**I**T is the opinion of the best horsleaches, that if a gross horse which is full of humours, be suddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will resort into the weakest part, and there gather together and breed a botch, and especially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighs, not far from the Cods: The signs are, the hinder Legs will be all swoln, especially from the Cambrels or hoofs upward, and if you feel with your hand, you shall find a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

The Cure according to the general practice, is, first, to ripen it with this Plaister; take of Wheat-flower, of Turpentine, and of honey of each like quantity, stirring it together to make a stiff plaister, and with a Cloath lay it to the Sore, renewing it once every day, until it break or wax soft: and then launce it, so as the matter may run downward, then Tent it with Turpentine and hogsgrease molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

## C H A P. LVIII.

*A most certain and approved Cure for the Botch in the Groins, or any Impostumation.*

**A**S soon as you perceive the swelling to appear, lay upon it a plaister of Shooe-makers Wax spread upon Allom-Leather, and let it lye until the Sore grow soft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it self; when the filth is come out, wash the Sore very well with strong Allum-water, then Tent it with the Oyntment called Ægyptiacum till it be whole.

## C H A P. LIX.

*Of the Itch, Scab, or Manginess in the Tail, or general falling of the Hair.*

**H**Orses, through the Crruption of blood, or the fulness of Rank feeding, or through over heating and labouring, or by the infection of other Horses, do many times get the general Scab, Itch, or manginess in the Tail, and sometimes in the spring time horses are often



often troubled with the Truncheon-worms in their Fundament, which will make them rub their Tails, and fret the hair, yet are free both from Mange and Scurf. Wherefore if then you only rake the horse with your hand, anoint it with Soap, and pull out the Worms, you shall cause the horse to leave his rubbing; but if you perceive the hair to shed and fall from the tail, through some small Worms that grow at the roots of the hair, or through some little fretting scurf, then you shall anoint all the tail with soap even to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that will both kill the worms, and scour out the scurf; but if much of the tail be fallen away, then you shall keep the tail continually wet with a sponge dipt in fair water, and that will make the hair to grow very fast. Now if in the horse tail shall grow any Canker, which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one, then you shall wash all his tail with Aqua-fortis, or strong Water made in this sort; Take of green Copperas and of Alom, of each one pound, of white Copperas a quartern, boil all these together in three quarts of running water, in a very strong earthen pot, until one half be consumed; and then with a little of this Water being made luke-warm, wash his Tail with a little clout or flax bound to the end of a stick, continuing so to do every day once till it be whole. But if, as I said before, through the corruption of Blood, Food, or Labour, this Scab, Itch, or Manginess, spread universally into many parts of the tail, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water until it be whole.

## C H A P. LX.

*Of the general Scab, Manginess, or Leprosie, over the whole Body.*

**T**He general Manginess, or Leprosie, which runneth all over the horses body, is a cankered filthy scurf which covereth the same, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingendred by infection or unwholesome Food, or else by indiscreet labour. The signs whereof are, the horse will be all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy scurf, full of scabs, and raw plats about the neck and flanks, and ill-favoured to look on, and rubbing, scratching, and biting: of all diseases there is none more infectious, nor will more certainly kill a horse if it be not prevented.

Now



Now the Cure, according to the opinion of skillful Farriers, is, first to let the Horse blood in the one side of the neck-vein, and within two days after on the other side of the neck, and within two days after that in the flank-veins, and last of all in the vein under the tail: then wash all the sore places with Salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a wisp of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well, and be all raw: that done, anoint the places with this ointment, take of quick-silver one ounce, of Hogs-grease one pound, of Brimstone beaten into powder a quartern, of Rape-oil a pint, mingle these things well together, until the Quick-silver be thoroughly incorporated with the rest, and having anointed all the raw places with this Oyntment, make it to sink into the flesh, by holding and waving up and down over it, a hot broad Bar of Iron, and then touch him no more again the space of two or three days: During which time, if you see that he rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place again with an old Horse-comb, or a hair cloth, to make it raw, and anoint it with fresh Oyntment. But if all this will not help, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, so big as a Man's little finger, burn all the mangy places, making round holes, passing only through the skin and no further: For which intent it shall be needful to pull the skin first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it still until you have thrust the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a span one from another, and if need be you may anoint those holes with a little Sope, and let the Horse be very thin dieted, during his Curing time.

Now for mine own part, I do utterly dislike this burning, for it is a foul manner of Cure, and breedeth much Eye sore in the Horse, and therefore other of our latter Farriers use for this Disease, after the Horse is let blood in the neck-vein, to take a good quantity of fresh Grease, and mix it well with the powder of Chalk, then put thereto a good quantity of the powder of Brimstone and Ellicampagne roots, and stir them all well together, and take a pretty quantity of Quick-silver, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or Sallet Oil, and mix it with all the rest very well together, and so anoint all the sore places about the Horse with this Ointment. Others use to take of Lamp-oil, the fine powder of Brimstone, of black Sope, of Tar, of Hogs-grease, and the Soot of a Chimney, of each like quantity, and then mix them all well together, by boiling them on the fire, and then anoint all the sore places therewith, as hot as

F f

the



the horse can endure or suffer it, always provided that the horse be let blood before you use the oyntment.

Others use after the horse is let blood, to take of Oyl de Bay a pound, and of Quick-silver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave stirring thereof, till the Quick-silver be killed and incorporated with the Oyl, then anoint all the sore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers use first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the sore places within two days after with water wherein young Broom, or the Herb Arsmart hath been well sodden and finally chopt and mixt with a little Soot, and rub him well until the sore places bleed; then take a pound of black Soap, a pottle of keen mustard, four penny-worth of Brimstone made into powder, three penny-worth of Quick silver well killed with fresh Grease, two penny-worth of Verdigrease, a quarter of a pint of Grease, stir all these together in a Vessel till the Grease and other thinsts be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithal anoint all the sore places, and with once anointing, and twice washing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers use, if the Horse be young, to let him blood on both sides the neck, and then to cut the skin down the midst of his fore-head two fingers in length; then with a cornet open the skin an inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thin slices of the green root of Elicampagne, or Angelica, which is better: so let them remain under the skin till the matter rot, then crush it forth after two or three days, and in twelve days the roots will fall out as it healeth; but this will cure the Mange, provided that you anoint all the sore places with the powder of Brimstone, Verdigrease, and Oyl-Olive mixt upon a fire very well together. Others use after blood-letting, to rowel the horse under the neck, that the evil humours may issue forth, then to rub all his body quite over with an hard hair cloth, or with an old curry-comb, until the horse bleedeth. after that take of Sulphur, Salt and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beat them and temper them with very strong Vinegar, and as much common Oyl, and therewith anoint all the sore places: or else take very strong Wine-Vinegar, the Urine of a Boy under twelve years of age, and the juyce of Hemlock, mix them together, and wash the horse therewithal.

Other Farriers use after blood-letting, to anoint the Horse with  
one



one of these Oyntments, the sore having been before rubbed till it bleed, either with Brimstone, Oyl, Vinegar, Salt, Soot, Swines-dung, and unsleckt Lime, of each a like quantity, well mixt and boyled together; or else with Brine-Water sod with Nettles, or else with Vinegar, Alom, and Salt-nitre boyled together, or else wash the sore with Beef broth, then boyl Pepper beaten to powder, Verdigrease, and Chervel in fresh Grease, and anoint the horse all over therewith, holding a Chafing-dish and Coals, or a hot Bar of Iron to his body, to make the oyntment sink in.

Lastly, and as good as any of the rest, after the Horse hath been let blood, take an old Curry-comb, or a Wool-card, and rub every sore place about the Horse till it bleed; then take of the oldest Piss you can get, a Pottle, and of green Copperas three quarters of a pound, mix and stir them well together; then set them on the fire, and boyl them a while, then as hot as the Horse can suffer it wash him with the same: After his washing is a little dried, take of Oyl one ounce and a half, of Quick-silver two ounces, of white Elleborus one ounce with a good quantity of Swines-grease; mingle all these well together, till no part of the Quick-silver can be seen, and then anoint the Horse all therewith: and if the first time doth not cure him, the second will most assuredly; provided, that during the time of cure you keep the Horse with a very thin diet.

## C H A P. LXI.

*Two most excellent and approved Medicines, (especially the latter) for the foulest Mange or Leprosie that can possibly happen to any Horse.*

**T**AKE Hogs-Grease, Bay-Salt, Wormwood, and Rue, of each a pretty quantity, stamp them together well in a Mortar, and when it is brought to one entire Salve, stop it hard into the horses Ears, then either bind them up, or stitch them together, that the Medicine may not fall out: and do thus three or four days together, and it will not only cure the Mangy, but any foul Farcy whatsoever.

The second Medicine, and most assured for the Mange, is, to take fresh Grease, yellow and white Arsnick, and mix them very well together till it come to a pale yellow salve, then your horse having been let blood, and all the scurf taken away, either with an old



curry comb, or such like hard thing, so as the sore places may lye raw, then anoint them all over with this ointment, and let the Horse stand so tied, that he may by no means touch any part of his body with his mouth, and when he hath stood thus two or three hours, then take old Urine warmed, and wash away all the ointment, and then give the Horse his meat: thus dress the Horse twice or thrice at the most, and it is sufficient for any Mange whatsoever.

## CHAP. LXIII.

*How to know when a Horse halteth before, and in what part his grief is.*

There is nothing more necessary for any Mans understanding, that shall have occasion at any time to use a Horse, especially for the skilful Farrier, than to know the reason why a Horse halteth, and where the grief remaineth, as well because those griefs lye most concealed, as also because our Kingdom is so very full of subtil unconscionable Horse-courfers, that they are careful most to conceal that which may soonest cosen their Neighbours: you shall know then that no Horse halteth before, but his grief must be either in his shoulders, in his legs, or in his feet: if it be in his shoulders, it must either be on the top of his shoulder-blade, which we call the withers, or the bottom of the shoulder-blade joyning to the Marrow-bone, which is the fore-pitch of the breast, or in the Elbow of the Horse, which joyns the nether end of the Marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the general knowledge whether the grief be in the shoulder or no, look if the Horse do not lift up his Leg, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the shoulder, and is a new hurt: If he cast his Leg more out in his going than the other, and that almost with an unbended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt: If you take him by the head-stall of the bridle, and turn him as short as you can possibly with both hands, if then you see him when he is turned on the lame side, to favour his leg very much (as he cannot chuse but do) then also his grief is in his shoulder: or if when a Horse standeth in the Stable, he stretcheth out his fore-leg



leg, and setteth it more forward than the other, it is partly a sign the grief is in the shoulder, but not absolutely.

Now when you know generally that the grief or pain is in the shoulder, then you shall learn to know in what part of the shoulder, as thus: if the horse halteth more when the Rider is upon his back, than when he is off, then the grief is in the top of the Withers; if when with your hand you gripe and handle him upon the top of the shoulder blades you find that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not having any galled back before, for that may deceive you) then assuredly the grief is on the Withers. If the horse goeth bowing unto the ground, and tread his steps very thick, then it is a sign the grief is in his breast, between the nether part of the spade-bone, and the upper part of the marrow-bone, and therefore if with your thumb you press him hard in that part, you shall see him shrink, and be ready to fall down.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your hand betwixt your finger and your thumb, and gripe it, the horse presently taketh his foot from the ground and lifts up his Leg, offering therewithal to bite or snap at you, then the grief is only in the Elbow.

Now if the grief whereof a horse halteth be in his Leg, it is either in his Knee, in his Shank, or else in the Pastorn joynt: If it be either in his Knee or Pastorn joynt, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will go very stiffly upon them: if the pain or grief be in the Shank, then it is by means of some Splent, Screw, Wind-gal, or such apparent grief, most apparent to be beheld.

Now if the grief of this halting be in his foot, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heel, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the sole of the foot; if it be in the Cronet, either the grief will be apparent, the skin be broken or swoln some manner of way, or else laying your hand upon the Cronet it will burn and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got some strain of the joynt within the hoof; if it be in the heel, as by over-reach, or otherwise than it is to be seen, and he will tread altogether upon the toe: If upon any of the quarters, which is to be understood from the middle-hoof to the heel, then going on the edge of a bank or hilly ground, he will halt more than on the plain ground, and by the horses coming toward you, and going from you upon such edge or bank, you shall perceive whether his grief be in the inward quarter or outward quarters: Also he may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of a Nail, and then you shall  
with



with a pair of Pinsons nip the head of every Nail and his hoof together, and where he complaineth there draw the Nail; and if the Nail sink, then there is his pain. If he halt in the Toe, which is seldom or never seen, then he will tread altogether upon his heel: If his grief be in the Sole of his Foot, as by the treading upon some nail or stub, or by surbayting, or such like, then he will halt all after one sort, upon any ground whatsoever, unless it be upon the stones, and then he will halt the most.

Now to be sure in what part of the foot the grief is, it shall be good, first to make him go upon the plain ground, and then upon a hard and stony way, and after upon a banky ground; and by taking careful notes, and careful handling him, you shall easily see of what member he halteth.

### C H A P. LXIII.

#### *Of Halting behind, and where the Grief is.*

**I**F a Horse halt behind, his grief of necessity must either be in his hip, (of some called the huckle-bone) or in the hiff, in the hough, in the ham, in the leg, in the nether joynt, in the pastorn, or in the Foot. If he halt in the hip of any new hurt, the horse will go side-long, and not follow so well with that Leg as with the other, neither will he be able to turn upon that side without much favouring of his Leg: But if it be any old hurt, then the sore hip will shrink, and be lower than the other; and it is best seen when he goeth up a hill, or upon the edge of some bank, so as the worst Leg may go on the higher side, for then he will halt so much the more, because it is very painful unto him to go so unevenly wrinching his Leg; if the grief be in the stiff, then the horse in his going will cast the stiff joynt outward, and the bone on the inside will be somewhat bigger than the other, neither can he any more than touch the ground with his toe: If his grief be in his hoof, then it is by means of some Spaven, which is apparent both to be seen and felt, or else some strain or blow, and then the swelling will most evidently appear: and the like is to be said of the Ham, wherein may be seen the Sellander, or such like apparent Sorance, causing the Horse to halt: If the grief be either in the Leg, Pastorn, or Foot, you shall find it by such signs as have been taught you in the former Chapter.

C H A P.



## C H A P. LXIV.

*How to know if a Horse hath any hidden Grief in him that maketh him to halt when he cometh to Travel, and whence it proceeds.*

NOW forasmuch as there are some Horses which through long rest and running at Grass will wear out the worst of their Grievs, so that when they come to be but gently ridden, they will cover their halting, and through a natural awe they bear unto the Man, will, whilst he is on their Backs, go as if they were as sound as might be, yet be truly of themselves very unperfect: in this case, both to keep your self from cozening, and to discover the most hidden infirmity; you shall first take the Horse out of the Stable in a long string, and causing one to run him in his hand, at the length of the halter, mark how he sets down his Legs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour: but if at first he go upright and favour no Leg, then take his back, and ride him a while roundly up and down a Road; then alight from his back, and let him stand still an hour; then as before, let him run in a Mans Hand, at the halters length, without any Man on his back, and believe it is a most certain Rule: If he have the least Grief that may be, he will then shew it, and favour that Limb which is most pained or grieved; for by this Rule only, are many bad Horse-Courfers discovered.

Now to know whereof these griefs proceed, you shall understand, that if the grief proceed from a hot cause, then the horse halteth most when he travelleth or is chafed. But if it proceed from cold causes, then he halteth most when he is cold, and least when he is hot and much travelled.



## CHAP. LXV.

*Of the grief and pinching in the Shoulder.*

THE grief or pinching of the Horses Shoulder, cometh either by labouring and straining the Horse too young, or by the carriage of too great burthens. Its to be known by the narrowness of the breast, and by the Consumption of the flesh of the shoulders, in so much that the fore-part of the shoulder-bone will stick out and be much higher than the flesh, and if it be of any longer continuance, he will be very hollow upon the brisket towards the fore-booths, and he will go wider beneath at the feet than at the knees. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharp knife, upon both sides, an inch under the shoulder-bone, and blowing the skin well from the flesh with a Swans quill, both of the one and the other shoulder, even up to the top of the withers, and stroaking the wind up equally with your hand into both the shoulders, and then when they are full, stick the windy places with a Hazle Stick over all the shoulder, then loosening the skin from the flesh again, Rowel both the slits, either with tampins of Horse hair, or with round pieces of the upper Leather of an old shoe, with an hole in the midst, which is called a French Rowel, for the matter to issue forth at, and let the rampins be at least two handfuls long in the skin, and the round Rowel at least three inches broad, and being so put as they may lye plain and flat within the Cut, then once a day you shall turn the Rowels into the skin, and thrust out the matter; but if the hole grow so strait that the matter cannot easily come out, with a sharp knife you shall enlarge it, then put a pair of Pastorns on his fore-legs, and so let him stand fifteen days, at the end whereof walk him abroad, and try how he goeth, and if he doth not go to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteen days, and he will go sound.

But our best Farriers use, after they have Rowelled the horse, as is afore said, then to lay this charge or plaister all over his Withers, shoulders, and breast: Take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tar, half a pint, boil all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a stick with a woollen cloth bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover or daub all the  
shoulder



shoulder therewith: that done, clap flocks of the colour of the horse ( or as near as you can get it ) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels clean, and put them in again, continuing to do thus the space of fifteen days; then take out the Rowels, and heal up the wounds with two tents of flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, renewing the same every day once until the wounds be whole, but let the charge lye still until it fall away of it self; and if you let the horse run at grass till he hath had a frost or two, there is no question but he will be a great deal the sounder.

There be other Farriers which use to Rowel the horse, as is afore-said, yet cross wise, that is, one over-thwart the other, then draw all the shoulder over with a hot drawing Iron in the comliest wise you can, making many scratches down his Shoulders, then anoint both them and the Rowels once a day with sweet butter, and walk the horse up and down Evening and Morning, that the humours may flow to the sore places, and issue forth, and with your hands once a day at the least, thrust out the matter; this Cure is likewise to be continued the space of fifteen days, and then the horse will be whole; yet for mine own part, in so much as the Cure is foul, I do not much affect it.

## C H A P. LXVI.

*Of the Wrench in the Shoulder.*

**T**HE Wrench or strain in the Shoulder, cometh of some dangerous slipping or sliding, either in the Stable or abroad, or of too sudden stopping, when a horse gallops, or by falls either on the planks, or on slippery ground, or by too sudden turning on unsure ground, or by going too rashly out of some door, or by the stroak of another horse, you shall perceive it by his trailing his Leg upon the ground close after him.

The Cure is, to let him blood upon the plait-vein, and take away the quantity of three pints of blood, which blood you must save in a pot, and put thereunto, first of strong Vinegar a quart, and half a dozen broken Eggs, shells and all, and so much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the Liquor; that done, put thereunto of Bole-armonick beaten into fine powder a pound, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, and mingle them together so as the flower may not be

G g

perceived



perceived, and if it be too stiff, you may add a little more Vinegar then with your hand daub all the shoulder from the Main downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels, all against the hair, and let not the horse depart out of that place until the charge be surely fastened unto the skin; that done, carry him into the Stable, and tie him up to the rack, and suffer him not to lye down all the day; and give him a little meat, dieting him very moderately the space of fifteen days, during which time he may not stir out of his place, but only to lye down; and every day once refresh the shoulder point with this charge, laying still new upon the old, and at the fifteen days end lead him abroad to see how he goeth, and if he be somewhat amended, then let him rest without travelling the space of one month, and that will bring his shoulder to perfection: But if he mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you shall rowel him, as is before shewed in the former Chapter, just upon the shoulder point, and so keep him rowelled the space of fifteen days, not forgetting to stir the rowel, and cleanse the wound each other day, and then walk him up and down fair and softly, and turn him always on the contrary side to the fore: And when he goeth upright, pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with Turpentine and Hogs Grease molten together, as is before said.

But if all this will not serve, then it shall be very requisite and needful to draw him Chequer-wise with a hot Iron, over all the shoulder point; and also to make him to draw a Plow every day, two or three hours at the least, to settle his Joynts, for the space of three weeks or a month: and if any thing will help, these two last remedies will set him sound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this grief, first let the horse bleed in the Breast-vein, and then rowel him from the nether part of the spade bone down to the point of the shoulder, which done, you shall set a patten shooe upon the sound foot, and so turn the horse to grafs for the space of a month, not forgetting every other day to stir and remove the rowels, and so thrust out the matter. Then as soon as you see him go sound, you shall take off his Patten shooe, and pull out the Rowels, and then let him run still at grafs, till he hath taken a frost or two, and no doubt but he will continue sound.



## C H A P. LXVII.

*Of the Wrench in the nether joint.*

**T**His Wrench cometh by treading his Foot in some hole, or in some rough or stony way. The signs whereof are chiefly these, the horse will halt, and the top of his Back upon the points of his Shoulder will be swoln, and somewhat hard to handle.

The Cure is, take of Black Soap half a pound, and having made it hot in a pan, take a handful or two of Tow, and dip it into the Soap, then lay it very hot over all the horses Withers; then clap a plaister of Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs-grease molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warm Cloaths, and keep the Joynts as warm as may be: thus let him stand twenty four hours ere you dress him again, and continue this manner of dressing for fifteen days, and the horse will go soundly.

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that instead of this Black-Soap will take Wine-Lees, and Wheat-flower mingled together, and making a plaister thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and so renew it once a day until the horse go sound.

## C H A P. LXVIII.

*Of splating the Shoulder, or of Shoulder torn.*

**T**HE splating of the Shoulder, is, when by some dangerous slip or slide, either upon the side of some bank, or upon the plaunchers, the horse hath his Shoulder parted from his Breast, and so leaves an open clift, not in the Skin, but in the Flesh and Film next the Skin, whereby the horse halteth, and is not able to go; it is to be seen by the trailing of his Leg after him in going.

The Cure whereof is thus, first put a pair of strait pastorns on his Fore-feet, keeping him still in the stable without disquieting of him; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Sallet-Oyl one pint, of Oyl de Bay half a pound, of fresh Butter half a pound; melt all these things together in an earthen pot, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the Shoulder; and within two or three days after, both that place and all the Shoulder will swell, then either prick him with a Lancet or Fleam in all the swelling places, or else with a sharp hot Iron, and then anoint it



still with the Oyntment before said; but if you see it will not go away, but swell still, and gather to a head, then Launce it where the swelling doth gather most, and is softest under the Finger; and then tent it with Flax dipt in Turpentine, and Hogs-grease molten together, as is before shewed, renewing that tent twice a day till the forrance be whole.

#### CHAP. LXIX.

##### *Of the Shoulder Pight.*

**T**HE Shoulder Pight is, when a Horse by reason of some great fall, rush or strain, hath the point of his Shoulder thrust out of joynt, which is easie to be seen, in that the point of the fore Shoulder will stick out much further than the other, and the horse will halt down right. The Cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is, first to make him swim in a deep water, up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the joynt return into his true place; then make two tough pins of Ashen-wood as big as your little Finger, being sharp at the points, each one five inches long; that done, slit the Skin an inch above the point, and an inch beneath the point of the Shoulder, and thrust in one of these pins from above down-ward, so as both the ends may equally stick with the Skin; and if the pin of Wood will not easily pass through, you may make its way first with an Iron Pin; that done, make other two holes cross to the first holes, so as the other Pin may cross the first Pin aright in the midst, with a right cross; and the first Pin should be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent that the other being round may pass the better without stop, and close the iuster together; then take a piece of a little line somewhat bigger than a Whip-cord, and at one end make a loop, which being put over one of the Pins end, wind the rest of the line good and straight about the Pins ends, so as it may lye betwixt the Pins ends and the Skin, and fasten the last end with a packneedle and a pack-thread unto the rest of the Cord, so as it may not slip; and to do well, both the Pins and the Cord should be first anointed with a little Hogs-grease; then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine days; and let him lye down as little as may be: and put a Pastorn on the fore Leg, so as it may be bound with a Cord unto the foot of the Manger, to keep that Leg always whilst he standeth in the Stable, more forward than the other, and at



at the nine days end take out the Pins and anoint the fore place with a little Dialthea, or with Hogs-grease, and then turn him to Grasse. Other of our late Farriers use, first to lay good store of straw under the horse, and then put a pair of strong Pastorns on his fore-legs, and another on his hinder, then having thrown him upon his Back, to hang him up by the Legs from the ground, with two Ropes drawn over some Beam or Balk, which will put the Bone into his true place again; then having let him down again fair and softly, loose the fore Pastorn of the sound Leg, and with a Cord before you let him rise, tie the same Leg to the foot of the Manger, so short, as in his rising he shall be forced to hold his Leg before him, for fear of putting his Shoulder out of Joynt, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three days; and presently when he is up, burn all the point of the Shoulder with a hot Iron, drawing it Chequer-wise, a full Foot square at the least, and let every stroke be no more than an inch distant one from another: and having burned him well, charge all these burned places, and all the rest of his Shoulder with Pitch, Rozen, and Tar molten together, and laid on something hot with a Cloath tied to a sticks end; then clap Flocks of the colour of the horse upon it, then charge him again over the flocks, and at the three days end loose his Foot, and put a pair of Pastorns upon his Feet, and let him neither lye down nor stir out of the Stable for the space of fifteen or twenty days: then you may lead him abroad, and see whether he goes well or no, and if he be not perfect you may then give him as much more rest, and that will recover him.

## C H A P. LXX.

*A general and certain Cure for any desperate and curable Strain in the Shoulder, or any other hidden parts.*

**T**ake a large earthen Vessel, and fill it full of the herb of Arsmart and Brook-lime, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the oldest and strongest Urine that can be got, as will cover the herbs all over, then cover the pot close, and keep it in some safe cool place.

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an Earthen Pipkin, and put therein both of the Urine and the Herbs, so much as shall be convenient for the grief, and boyl it well, then if it be for a Shoulder




der strain, you shall take an old Boot and cut off the foot, that you may draw it over the horses Foot, and above his knee almost to the Elbow of his shoulder, keeping the nether part of the boot as close about his Legs as may be, but the upper part wide and spacious; into this boot thrust all your mixture as hot as the horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about the shoulder, especially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the boot, so fasten it to the mane of the horse that it may not slip down, and thus do once a day till the grief depart; for this Medicine is so violent that if there be any foul matter that must come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, break and heal it; if there be no such thing, then in a short time it will draw away the offending humours, and give present ease.

## C H A P. LXXI.

*Of the swelling of the Fore-Legs after great labour.*

**H**Orses not much used to travel, will after great labour swell upon their Fore-Legs, because heat and violent excess will cause humors to resort down into the Legs, especially if such horses shall be inwardly fat; for the indiscreet labour will melt that inward grease, and make it descend down into the Legs.

The Cure, according to the practice of some Farriers, is, to take a pound of Nerve Oil, a pound of Black Soap, and half a pound of Boars-grease molten, and boil them all well together, and then strain it and let it cool; then anoint your horses Legs therewith, being made luke-warm again, and then keep his Legs clean from dust. Other Farriers use to bathe his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter, some with Sheeps-foot Oyl, some with Neats-foot Oyl, some with Train Oyl, and some with Piss and Salt-peter boyled together, of all which Piss and Salt-peter is the best; and after any such bathing, you must roll up the horses Legs with Hay-ropes wet in cold water, even from the Pastorn to the Knee, but in any wise not too strait, for fear of doing hurt, so let him stand continually when he resteth.

 Now other Farriers somewhat more curious, use for the swelling of the Legs this Bath; take of Mallows three handfuls, a Rose-cake, of Sage one handful, boyl them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be soft, put in half a pound of Butter,



ter, and half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and then being somewhat warm, wash the swelling therewith every day once, the space of three or four days; and if the swelling will not go away with this, then take Wine Lees and Cumin, and boyl them together, and put thereunto a little Wheat-flower, and charge all the swelling therewith, and walk him often; and if all will not serve, then take up the great vein above the knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath: and it will take away the swelling.

## C H A P. LXXII.

*Of a Horse that is Foundred in his Feet.*

A Horse is said to be foundred of his feet, when he hath such a numbness, and pricking or tingling within his hoofs, that he hath neither sense nor feeling of his feet, but is in all respects like a man, that by hard or crooked sitting hath both his Feet asleep (as we call) during which passion we know we can neither well go nor stand; and even so it fareth with a horse in this case; for the course of the blood being stopped, those Obstructions cause this torment. It cometh most commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled by taking his Saddle off too soon, or by standing up in the cold unstirred, or else by letting him stand in some shallow water little higher than his fet-lock.

A horse also may be foundred by wearing strait and uneasie shoes, especially in the Summer season, when a horse travelleth upon the hard ground.

The signs to know it, is, the horse goeth crouching, and drawing all his fore-feet within the compass almost of a peck, and will stand so fearfully as though he stood upon Needles.

Now you shall understand, that a horse will sometimes be only foundred of his Fore-feet, and not of his hinder, which you shall know in that the horse will tread only upon his hinder feet, and not on his fore-feet, and go as though his Buttocks would touch the ground; and sometimes he will be foundred upon his hinder feet, and not upon his fore-feet, and that you shall perceive by his fearfulness



ness to set his Feet to the ground, being also so weak behind, that he will stand quivering and quaking and covet always to lye down; and sometimes he will be foundred of all his four Feet, the signs whereof were first declared.

Now forasmuch as the Cures are all of one and the self-same Nature, and what cureth the first cureth also the rest; I will joyn them all together, with this advice, that if you find the Horse to be foundred on the Fore-feet only, then to apply your Medicine to the Fore-parts only; if on the Hinder-feet, then to the hinder parts; but if of all four Feet, then to lay your Medicinē to all the several parts of the Body, as shall be presently declared.

To come then to the Cures, (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this disease) if your horse be foundred of all his four Feet, you shall cause him to be let blood on his two Brest-veins of his two Fore-legs, somewhat above his Knees; also you shall let him blood on his two Spur-veins, and on the veins of his two Hinder-feet a little above the hoof, between the hoof and the pastorn: you shall let these veins bleed well, to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which blood you must save in some Vessel, and stir it with a stick to keep it from clearing: and when it hath bled as above-said, put it all into one vessel, then stop the wounds with some horse-dung, or some earth, and make a charge with the blood in this sort: take as much Wheat-meal, Bran and all, as will make the blood somewhat thick, and put it into the blood; take eight or ten Eggs, and break them also into the blood, shells and all; take a pint of strong Vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-armonick brayed, and put them into the blood also; which done, you shall stir them all together; then shall you with your hand lay the said charge all along upon the reins of the horses Back, upon his Buttocks and down his Shoulders: when you have laid on this charge thus, you shall take two long Linnen rags dipped in the same charge, with which so dipped, you shall garter the horse above the knees of his Fore-legs somewhat hard; and likewise with two other like rags, so dipped, you shall garter him hard above both his hinder hoofs also: that done, cause him to be walked upon the hardest ground you can find for the space of two or three hours; if he be loath to go, as commonly he will be, let one follow him and beat him with a stick or a wand to force him to go, then after his walking let him be set up and tyed to the rack, that he lye not down, and there let him  
rest



rest two or three hours; which done, let him be walked again two or three hours more aforefaid, then fet him up, and let him feed, and when you give him drink, which you may do within two or three hours after his feeding, let it be a warm Mash of Malt and Water, then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little; and if you let him stand an hour or two in a pool or standing water up to the belly, and one upon his Back, it is good also, and after that ride him again a little: then let him be fet up well dressed and covered, so by little and little ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him, for it is riding that brings the Horse to the perfectness of his Feet, and you shall find your Horse as sound as ever he was.

Now during this Cure, you are to take these Observations into your memory.

First, You shall not need to remove or stir the Horses shoes: then you must after twenty four hours rub off the charge from the Horses back.

*Item*, You shall take away his garters after twelve hours, and rub his Knees and Houghs with your Hand, and with wisps, to take away the numbness.

*Item*, If you cannot get Wheat-meal, you may take Oaten meal.

*Item*, If he will not bleed in the veins before named, then you may take your blood from the neck-vein.

Lastly, If you take the Horse in hand to Cure within twenty four hours after he is foundred, he will be found again within twenty four hours after; so if he go longer, the Cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this Kingdom, and amongst the Italians, differ not much in their practice from this already rehearsed, only into the charge they add of Sanguis Draconis half a quartern, and as much Bean-flower as Wheat-flower, and of Turpentine half a pound; then if they did see that within four days the Horse did not recover, then they did know that the hurtful humors did only lye in the Horses Feet, and there you shall search his Feet with your Butterifs, paring all the soles of his Feet so thin, that you may see the Water issue through the sole: that done, let him bleed at the Toes, and let him bleed well; then stop the Vein with Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, and laid upon a little flax, and then tack on his Shoes, and cram the place where you did let him bleed hard with tow, to the intent it may be surely stopt; then fill all the soles of his Feet with Hogs grease and Bran boiled or fried

H h

together



together so hot as is possible, and upon that stopping clap a piece of Leather, and two cross splints, to keep in the Stopping; and immediately after this take two Eggs, and beat them in a dish, and put thereunto as much Bole-armonick and Bean-flower as will thicken the same, and mix them well together, and make thereof two Plaisters, such as may close each Foot round about somewhat above the Cronet, and bind it fast with a Liff or a Rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two days, but let the soles of his Feet be cleansed and new stopped every day once, and the Cronets to be removed every two days until the Horse be sound; during which time, let him rest unwalked, for fear of loosning his hoofs: but if you see that he begins to amend, you may walk him fair and softly once a day upon some soft ground to exercise his Legs and Feet, and let him not eat much, nor drink cold Water; but if his foundring break out above the hoof, which you shall perceive by the loosness of the Coffin above the Cronet, then when you pare the sole you must take all the fore-part of the sole clean away, leaving the Heels whole, to the intent the humors may have the freer passage downward, and then stop him, and dress him about the Cronet, as is before said. Now if the Horse during this Cure chance to fall sick, or grow so dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you shall first rake him, and after give him a Glister of Mallows, three handfuls boiled in Water from a Pottle to a quart: then after it is strain'd, put to it half a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and so administer it, then when the Horse hath emptied his Belly, give him this comfortable drink. Take of Malmesey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace and Pepper beaten into fine powder, and of Oyl a quarter of a pint, and give the Horse to drink of that luke-warm; that done, let him be walked up and down, a good while together, if he be able to go, if not, then tye him up to the Rack, and let him be hanged with Canvas and Ropes, so as he may stand upon the ground with his Feet, for the less he lyeth down the better; but these extremities do seldom happen. Now there be other Farriers, which, for the foundring of a Horse, only take Verdigrease, Turpentine, Sallet-oil and Hogs grease, of each like quantity, of Wax one ounce; boil all together, and so dip flax or tow in it: then having pared his Feet thin, and let him blood on the Toes, stop all his Feet with that Ointment very hot: or else they take the roots of Nettles, and Hemlock, with Eldern peels, of each



each a handful, and boil them tender in Boars greafe, or Hogs greafe, so let him blood in the midst of the Foot on the Toe-vein, then bathe and chafe his Joynt and Leg therewith all about from his Knee unto the Fetlock, and then clap it too, and bind a cloth fast to it as hot as you can. So use this once a day till it be well.

Now for mine own part, although there is not any of these former recited practices but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I have not found any so absolute either from old or new founders, as this which I shall rehearse, First, you shall with a very sharp Drawing-knife, draw every part of the Soles of the Horses Feet so thin as possible, even till you see the very Water and Blood issuing forth, and being sure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a Butteris: then at the very sharp end of the trush of the Horses Foot you shall see the vein lye, then with your knife's end lift up the Hoof, and let the vein bleed, (which as long as you hold open the hoof will spin a great way forth) when it hath bled better than a pint, you shall close the hoof, and so stop the vein: then tack on his Foot a hollow shoe made for that purpose: that done, clap a little tow dipt in Hogs-grease and Turpentine upon the vein very hard: then take two or three hard Eggs roasted, and coming burning hot out of the fire, and burst them in the sole of the Horses Foot: then pour upon them Hogs-grease, Turpentine, and Tar boiling hot, and as much flax dipt therein as will fill up the hollow shoe, then lay on a piece of Leather to keep all the rest in, and splent it sure: and in this manner dress his four Feet, if all be foundred, otherwise no more than are foundred; and thus you shall dress the Horse three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble, you shall be sure to have the Horse as sound as ever he was.

Now if the Horse be foundred through the straightning of a shoe, which in truth is not a founder, but a frettizing, which is a degree less than foundring; then you shall for that Sorance, first take off his shoe, and let him blood on the Toes, then stopping the place with bruised Sage, tack on his shoe again, and stop it with Hogs-grease and Bran boiled together, as hot as is possible; and do this twice in one fortnight, and it will help him.



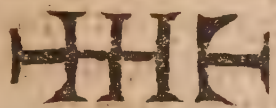
## C H A P. LXXIII.

*Of the Splent as well on the inside of the Knee, as of any other part of the Leg.*

**A** Splent is to the outward feeling a very gristle, or rather a hard bone, sometimes as big as a Hazle-nut, sometimes as big as a Walnut, according to the age thereof, growing upon the inside of the fore Leg, between the Knee and the upper Pastern joynt, and sometimes just underneath, and close unto the Knee, which is of all other the most dangerous Splent, and doth the soonest make a Horfe lame: it cometh by travelling a Horfe too young, or by overpressing him with heavy burthens, whereby the tender Sinews of his Legs are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof, it is easie because it is apparent unto the Eye, and most palpable to be felt. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take an Onion, and picking out the Core, put into it half a spoonful of Honey, and a quarter of a Spoonful of unslakt Lime, and four pennyweight of Verdigrease; then closing up the Onion, roast it in hot embers until it be soft; then bruise it in a Morter, and as hot as the Horfe can suffer it, lay it to the Splent, and it will take it away: But in any case cut no skin. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the Splent with warm Water, and then shave off the hair, and lightly to scarifie or prick the skin with the point of a Razor, so as the blood may issue forth: Then take of Cantharides half a spoonful, and of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a spoonful of Oyl de Bay, and then melt them in a little pan, stirring them well together, so as they may not boil over, and being so boiling hot, take two or three fethers and anoint all the Sore places therewith: that done, let not the Horfe stir from the place where you so dress him for an hour after, to the intent he shake not off the Ointment: then carry him fair and softly into the Stable, and tye him so as he may not reach with his Head beneath the Manger: For otherwise he will covet to bite away the smarting and pricking Medicine, which if it should touch his Lips would quickly fetch off the skin; and also let him stand without Litter all that day and night: the next day anoint the Sore place with fresh Butter, continuing so to do every day once for the space of nine days: for this will allay the heat of the Medicine, and  
cause



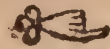
cause both that and the crust of the Splent to fall away of it self. There be other Farriers which use with a fine hot drawing Iron to burn the Sorance down in the midst, the full length of the Splent, and then over-thwart like this Figure; then four hours after such burning, take Cows-dung new made, and Sallet Oyl mixt and well beaten together, and therewith anoint all the Sore places; and this must be done when the Splent is very young.



Others use to slit the Sorance with a Knife the whole length of the Splent, and then with a Cornet to open the slit, and lay the Splent bare, then to make about the Wound a Coffin of Clay all open to the top; then take Boars-grease made scalding hot, and pour it into the Wound until the clay Coffin be full, then let it rest until the Grease be cold: after that let the Horse rise, and this with once dressing will take the Splent clean away without any blemish or Eye-fore. Others use to beat the Splent with a stick, and to bruise it well, then prick it with an Aule, and thrust out the blood, then lay on a piece of white Leather, and with a hot Iron make the Grease scald it, or else melt into it Pitch and Verdigrease, and then lay a Plaister of Pitch over it, not removing it until it fall off by it self; or else after you have beaten and prickt the Splent, take out the Core of an Onion, and fill it with Bay Salt, then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the Splent, and instead of the Onion, you may if you will bind too a hard roasted Egg, being fire-hot. Other Farriers use to slit the Skin the length of the Splent, then to dip a little piece of Linnen in warm Wine, and sprinkle Verdigrease thereon, and so lay it to the slit, renewing it once a day until the Splent be gone. Others use to shave off the hair, and to rub the Splent twice a day with Tar very hard, until the Splent be gone; but the Splent must be very young and tender; for fasting Spittle is as good as Tar. Other Farriers use to take a Black Snail and slit her, and put in Bay-Salt, and lay it to the Splent being opened, renewing it once a day until the Splent be gone: then let the vein above the Knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, lest it feed the Splent again. Others use if the Splent be upon the Knee to burn it, as is before said; then take Wormwood, Smallage, Pellitory of the Wall, Brank-Ursine stampd with Swines grease, and lay it to the burnings, provided that first the Hair be shaved off, and if the Splent be below the Knee, this Cure is good also, and much the safer.

Now




 Now after all these former recited practices, you shall understand that the cleanliest way to take away a Splent, is first, after you have cast your Horse with a Hazel-stick of a pretty poise and bigness, gently to beat the Splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the Splent grow soft in every part, then with the point of your Launcet let out all the Blood and Water; then take a Brick-bat, and having laid it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a red cloth, and therewith rub the Splent, and smooth it upon the top till you have dried away the blood, and that no more moisture cometh out; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and Mastick, of each a like quantity, melt them well together, and being very hot lay it over and all about the Splent: then clap flocks of the colour of the Horses Leg upon it, and so let it rest upon the Splent until it fall away of it self: and if when it is fallen away, you perceive that any part of the Splent remain behind, which hardly will be if it be orderly beaten; then you shall dress that remainder as you did the other before, and the Splent will be perfectly Cured. Now for the surest and most certain way to take off a Splent, it is thus: With the point of a sharp Knife, make a slit of more than a Barley corn length, just upon the top in the midst of the Splent, and let it be so deep that you may be sure that the bone of the Splent is bare, then put into that slit with the point of your Knife, as much Mercury Sublimat as the quarter of a Hazel-nut-kernel, and within three or four days, it will so have eaten the Splent, that it will fall out of it self: then you shall heal up the Sore either with fresh Butter molten, or with a Plaister of Hogs-grease, and Turpentine mingled and melted together; only in this Cure you must beware, that you tie the Horse so, as for four and twenty hours he may not touch the Sore place with his Mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to give you this small Precept, to bear ever in your mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other humors whatsoever. You must first stay the falling down of the new humors to the place troubled, as by binding Plaisters, as Pitch, Rozen, Mastick, Red Lead, Oyl, Bole-armonick, and such like; then to draw out Matter which is there gathered with drawing Simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and such like: and lastly, to dry up the relicks with drying Powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyster-shells, Soot, and such like; and also you must know, that all Splents, Spavens, or Knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning or after the Full of the Moon.



## C H A P. LXXIV.

*An approved and certain way to take away any Splint without breaking any Hair.*

**T**ake the Root of Elicampane well washed and cleansed, and lap it in a brown Paper, wet it and roast it in the hot Embers, as you would roast a Warden; then as hot as the Horse can suffer it, (for I would not have you scald) after you have rubbed and chaff the excrescion, clap this unto it, and bind it fast on, and in two or three dressings it will consume away the Splint. 

Also, if Morning and Evening you rub the Splint with the Oyl of Origanum, it will take it away.

## C H A P. LXXV.

*Of the Screw, or thorow Splent.*

**A**lthough divers of our Farriers do distinguish and make a difference betwixt a Screw and a Splint, saying, that the Screw is ever of the out-side of the Leg, as the Splint is of the inside; yet it is most certain that the Disease and infirmity is all one, and may as well be called a Splent on the out-side of the Leg, as a Splent on the inside of the Leg, and this Splint on the out-side is ever least dangerous. Now a Horse many times will have both these Splents at one time, and upon one Leg, nay, I have seen them so just opposite one to another, that one would have thought they had gone through the Horses Leg; whence it hath come to pass, that many foolish Farriers being of that mind, have intitled them a thorow Splent, and I have seen my self, some well reputed Farriers, that having the Cure brought unto them, have refused the same, saying it was a thorow splent, and therefore most incurable: But the opinion is most absurd and ridiculous: for the Shin-bone being hollow, and full of Pith and Marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it must confound the Marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but must presently break in sunder, especially when such a weak spongy substance as a Splent, shall possess the whole strength of the Leg. Now for the Cure, as the Splent and it are all one, so they have all one Cure, and what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the latter, in as much as it is not full so dangerous, nor so near the main Sinews.

C H A P.



## CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Mallander.*

**A** Mallander is a kind of a dry Scab, growing in the form of lines or streaks over-thwart the very tough or inward bent of the Knee, and hath hard Hair with stubborn roots, like Swines bristles, which corrupteth and Cankereth the Flesh like the Roots of a Childs scabbed Head; and if the Sore be great and deep, it will make the Horse go stiff at his first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the Corruption of Blood, or from negligent keeping, when the Horse wanteth clean dressing: for you shall know that some Horses naturally are given to have long hair from the top to the bought of the Knee down to the fetlock, and that Hair in the bought of the Knee is oft apt to curle; whereby those Horses, if they be not very carefully and clean kept, are much subject to this Disease.

Now for the Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barrel'd Herring out of the pickle with a soft row, and two spoonful of Black Soap, and so much Allom; beat all these in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the Sore, renewing it once a day for three days, and it will kill the Mallander, provided always that before you lay any thing unto the Mallander, you ever pull off the dry Scab first, and leave no Hair growing within the Sore. Other Farriers use to take a paring of a Cheese, and toasting it very hot, anoint it with Honey, and so lay it hot to the Mallander, and renewing it once a day till the Mallander be whole: or else beat Hens-dung and Gilli-flowers well together, and lay it to the Sore till it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have washed the Sore clean with warm Water, and shaved off the Hair and the Scabs, to take a spoonful of Sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paste, then spread as much on a clout as will cover the Sore, and bind it fast on with a list, renewing it every day once the space of two or three days; and at the three days end take away the Plaster, and anoint the Sore with Oyl of Roses made luke-warm, and that will fetch away scurf or crusty asker, bred by means of the burning Plaster; which scurf being taken away, wash the sore place vvell every day once with his own stale, or else vvith Man's Urine, and then immediately strow upon it the powder of burnt Oyster-shell, continuing so to do every day once until it be whole.

Others



Others of our later Farriers use to take a quart of water, half a pint of Oyl, and as much flower as will thicken it with seething : then lay that hot to the fore twice a day, for four days together ; then take Mastick, Frankincense beaten into fine powder, Quick-silver, killed either in the juyce of Lemons, or in strong Vinegar, of each an ounce ; then of Liturgy half an ounce, of Ceruss ten ounces ; and as much of Swines grease clarified ; incorporate and mingle all these together with Vinegar and Oyl, and lay it to the fore until the Mallender be killed ; then heal it up as is afore shewed. Others use, after they have washed it and shaved it, to rub it with Piss and Soap until it be raw ; then lay to it Nerve-oyl, Honey, and strong Mustard, until it be whole. Others use to take Sulphur, Vitriol, Sal-nitre, Sal-gem, mixed with Oyl de Bay, and to rub the Mallender well therewith. Now to conclude, you shall understand, that some Horses will have two Mallenders upon one Leg, one above another, and sometimes one a little above the inward bending of the Knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the Knee, but the cure is all alike ; and as you dress one, so you may dress two or three.

Now for mine own part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallender, than after the fore is cleansed, to take the ordure or dung of a Man, and anoint the fore therewith, and it will kill it and heal it.

## C H A P. LXXVII.

*Of an Upper Attaint, or Over-reach upon the Back-sinew of the Fore-leg, somewhat above the Pastorn-joynt.*

**T**HIS which vve call an upper-attaint, is nothing else but a painful swelling of the Master-sinew, or back sinew of the shank-bone, by reason that the Horse doth sometimes over-reach and strike that sinew vvith the Toe of his hinder Foot, and thereby causeth the Horse to halt much. Now the signs are both the swelling and the halting ; and the Cure, according to some of the old Farriers, is, to dress the sore place with a Plaister made of Wine lees and Wheat flower, laid hot to ; or else to take of black Soap and Bores-grease, of each a like quantity scalding hot ;  
I i make



make a Plaister of Sear-cloth thereof, and clap it all about the fore place; or else if the swelling by no Salve will dissolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his Leg all downward with the hair in many small strikes from the one end of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thick together, and somewhat deep, then anoint his burning for two or three days with black Sope, and so turn the horse to grass; but if he will not run at grass, then every day give him some moderate exercise; but this burning I fancy not much, for it is foul, and albeit it take away the swelling, yet the seams of the burning, when they are cured, will keep the member big, as if it were still swelled. Now other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the Leg with warm water, then to shave off the hair as far as the swelling goeth, then to scarifie the fore place with the point of a razor, that the blood may issue forth: then take of Cantharides and Euforbium of each half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of Soap, and with a slice spread some of this oyntment over all the fore, suffering him to rest there where you dress him for one half hour after, and then you may carry him into the Stable, and there let him stand without Litter, and so tyed as he may not touch the fore with his Mouth; and then the next day use him in the same manner again; then the third day anoint the place with fresh butter, continuing so to do the space of nine days, and at the nine days end make him this Bathe, take of Mallows three handfuls, a Rose-cake, of Sage an handful, boyl them together in a sufficient quantity of Beer; and when the Mallovs be soft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl; and then being somewhat warm, wash the fore place therewith every day once till it be whole. Others use to cleave a Chicken or a Pigeon, and to clap it hot to the swelling, and it will abate it; or else take Dialthea Agrippa and Oyl, and mixing it together, lay it to the swelling. Others use to take of Frankincense, of Rosin, of Tar, of Euforbium, of Turpentine and Fenugreck, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Suet one ounce, of Oyl an Ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of myrrh; mix and melt them all together, and Plaister-wise lay it to the fore place till it be whole; or else take for this Sorance, three quarters of an ounce of Sanguis Draconis, an ounce of Bole-armony, as much Oyl, three ounces of Mastick, and as much Suet, and as much Swines Grease, the whites of half a dozen of Eggs, melt and mix them together, and lay them together, and lay it



is to the swelling, and it will take it away; then make the shooes of his hinder feet shorter than the horns of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horn hang over uncut away, and make the fore-shoe no longer than his heel, but rather shorter.

## C H A P. LXXVIII.

*An excellent approved Medicine for any Sinew-strain whatsoever.*

**T**AKE of Vinegar a pint, the whites of three or four Eggs, and as much Bole-armonick, and Bean-flower, as will bring it to a thick salve over the fire; then when it is very hot, lay it Plaister-wise upon the strain, and round about the Leg, and do this not only till the grief be gone, but also till the swelling be taken away.

## C H A P. LXXIX.

*Of a neather Attaint, or over-reach on the Pastorn-Joynts.*

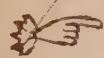
**T**HE neather attaint, or over-reach on the midst and in the hollow of the Pastorn-joynt, is a little Bladder full of Jelly, like unto a wind-gall; and though it be not apparent to the eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some wrench or strain, as by an over-reach, and it will make a horse halt much; the signs are, the neather Joynt towards the Fet-lock will be very hot, and somewhat swelled, and the little soft bleb will easily be felt.

The Cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, take a small cord, and rowel him somewhat strait from the Knee to the neather joynt, and then in the Pastorn, between the hoof and the joynt with a fleam strike him in the midst of his swelling, and let out the matter; then take the white of an Egg, and beat it with a little Salt, and then dipping flax therein, lay it unto all the swelling, and then un-rowel his Leg, and renew the Salve twice a day until the grief be gone. But in any case let him not be laboured or ridden whilst he is in curing.



## C H A P. LXXX.

*Of an Attaint or over-reach on the Heel.*

 **A**N Attaint or over-reach upon the heel, is, when a Horse striketh the toe of his hinder shoe into the heel, just upon the setting on of the hoof, and this over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will fiet and rankle so much inward, that it will endanger the horses hoof, and you shall commonly see by the cut the skin hang over the horses heel, and it will make a horse halt. Now the cure is, first to cut away the skin, and also the hoof, and the flesh, till you have made the fore even and plain without any hollownes; then wash it very well with Beer and Salt, then bind unto it a little flax dipt in the white of an Egg, mingled with a little Bole-armony, renewing it every day once the space of three or four days, and that will heal it.

## C H A P. LXXXI.

*Of the Mellet on the Heel.*

**A**Mellet is a dry Scab that groweth upon the heel, sometimes through the corruption of blood, and sometimes for want of clean rubbing and dressing, when he is wet set up: It appeareth like a dry Chap without any moisture, and it will be sometimes as well on both heels as on one. The Cure, according to the practice of the old Farriers, is, to take half a pint of honey, and a quarter of a pound of black Sope, and mix them together; then put thereto four or five spoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allom unburnt as a Hens Egg, and two spoonfuls of Rye-flower; mix them all well together, and then take it away, and wash all his leg and foot with salt beef broth, and then rope his Leg all the day with wet hay-ropes, and he will be found; provided always, that before you dress him, you ever take off the dry Scab or Scurf, and make the Sore as clean and as plain as is possible.



## C H A P. LXXXII.

*Of False Quarters.*

**A** False Quarter is a rift or open back seam, sometimes in the out-side, but most often in the inside of the hoof, because the inside is ever the weaker part, which sides are ever called Quarters, whence this sorance taketh this name, and is call'd a false quarter, as much as to say, a sick and unsound Quarter; for it is as if it were a piece set unto the hoof, and the hoof not all of one entire piece as it ought to be. It cometh many times by evil shooing, and evil paring; and sometimes by pricking the horse, and such like hurts. The signs to know it are, the horse will halt much, and the rift will bleed; and when the shooe is off, the whole sorance is apparent to be seen. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take off the shooe, and cut away so much of the shooe on that side where the sorance is, as the shooe being immediately put on again, all the whole rift may be uncovered; then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a rowel of Tow dipt in Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole; and the rift being closed in the top, draw him betwixt the Hair and the Hoof with a hot Iron overthwart that place, to the intent that the hoof may shoot all whole downward; and when the horse goeth upright, ride him either with no other shooe than this, or else with such a shooe as may bear in every part but only upon the false quarter until the hoof be hardned. Others use to anoint it once a day with Sheep-suet and Oyl mixt together, and that will close the rift.

Others use to cut away the old corrupt hoof, and then take seven whites of Eggs, the powder of Incence, of unslackt Lime, of Mastick, of Verdigrease, and of Salt, of each three ounces; mix them well together, then dip in as much hurds as will cover the sore hoof, lay it on, and then about it lay Swines Grease an inch thick; and likewise below it also: Bind this on in such sort that it may remain unstirred a Fortnight, then renew it so again, and it will make perfect his hoof. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the false quarter, and thereby causeth the horse to halt, then shou shall lay your finger upon it, and if the Horse shrink thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter,




matter, then lay on Horfe-dung, Oyl, Salt, and Vinegar mixt together, Plaister-wise, and that will heal it, and make the Hoof good ; yet however, you must have care in shooing him till his Hoofs be hardned, as is before shewed you.

## C H A P. LXXXIII.

*Of a Horfe that is Hipped, or hurt in the Hips.*

**A** Horfe is said to be hipped, when either by strain, blow, or other accident, the hip-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a Sorance as hard to be cured as any whatsoever ; for if it be not taken even at the first Instant, there will grow within the pot of the huckle-bone, such a thick hard substance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly incurable. The signs to know the Sorance are, the Horfe will halt much, and go side-long, and will trail his legs a little after him ; the fore hip also will be lower than the other, and the flesh will fall away on the side of his Buttock. The cure is, according to the best Farriers, if you take him in good time, first to cast him on his back, and then having a strong Pastorn on his grieved Leg, with a Rope draw that Leg upright, and with your hands on each side his thigh-bone, guide it directly into the pot : that done, let him down gently, and so suffer him to rise with all meekness ; then go with him into the Stable, and there charge all his hip and back with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on warm, and then some flecks of his own colour to be clapt upon the same, and so turn the horse to grafs until he go upright.

 But if the horse be not hipped, but only hurt in the hip, and that newly, then first take of Oyl de Bay, Dialthea, of Nerve Oyl, and of Swines greafe, of each half a pound ; melt them all together, stirring them continually until they be thoroughly mingled together, then anoint the sore place therewith against the Hair, every day once the space of a fortnight, and make the Oyntment sink well into the flesh, by holding a hot Bar of Iron over the place anointed, weaving your hand to and fro till the Oyntment be entred into the skin : and if at the fortnights end you see the horse not any thing amended, then slit a hole downward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole so wide, as you may easily thrust in a rowel with your finger ; and then with a Cornet and a quill blow the skin from the flesh above the bone, and round about the



the same, so broad as the rowel may lye flat and plain within the skin and the flesh: and this rowel will be made of soft Calves Leather, with a hole in the midst, and a thread tied unto it, to pull it out when you would cleanse it, and the hole; and if the rowel be rolled about with flax fast tyed on, and anointed with the Oyntment under written, it will draw so much the more.

Now you must thrust in your rowel first double, and then spread it abroad with your finger: that done, tent it with a good large tent of flax dipt in a little Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together and made warm, and cleanse the hole and the rowel every day once; and also renew the tent for the space of a fortnight, and before you dress him, cause him every day to be led up and down a foot-pace a quarter of an hour, to make the humours come down; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with the same Salve, making the tent every day lesser and lesser, until it be whole: and so soon as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw cross lines of eight or nine inches long right over the hip bone, so as the rowelled place may be in the very midst thereof, and burn him no deeper but as the skin may look yellow; and then charge all that place, and over all his Buttocks with this charge. Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a Pound, and of Tar half a pint, boyl them together, and then being good and warm, spread it on with a Clout tyed in a riven stick, and then clap on a few flocks of the horses colour; and if it be in Summer, let the horse run to grafs a while, for the more he travellet at his own will, the better it is for him.

C H A P. LXXXIV.

*Of Stifling, and Hurts in the Stifle.*

**T**Hat Horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying between the nether end of the thigh-bone, and the upper end of the great hough-bone of the hinder Leg, is by any strain, stroke, slip, or such like, thrust out of his right place; but if the stifling bone be not removed nor loosened, and yet the horse halteth by means of some grief in that place, then we say the horse is hurt in the stifle, and not stifled. The signs are these; If the horse be stifled, the stifle-bone will stick out more of the one side than of the other, and it is apparent to the eye



eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his Toe.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to thrust two round pins cross the stifling bone, through the skin, in such sort as you were taught for the shoulder pight; but the pins would not be any thing near so big, nor so long, because the stifling bone is not so broad as the shoulder: and standing in the Stable, let him have a pastern and a ring upon his fore Leg, and thereunto fasten a Cord, which Cord must go about his Neck, and let it be so much strained, as it may bring his fore Leg more forward than the other, to keep the bone from starting out: But this Cure is foul and troublesom, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, use only to set a patten shooe upon his sound foot, and so turn him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his lame Foot, and that straining of it will in a day or two make him as sound as ever he was, and put the stifling bone into its true place again. But if you cannot readily get a patten-shooe, then you shall take either a plain surcingle, or any other broad binding web that will go three or four times about the horses Leg, and with it you shall garter up the horses sound Leg three fingers above the ham, even upon his main great sinew, so strait as your self and another man can draw it; and then turn the horse abroad where he may go up and down, and in eight and forty hours the horse will be as sound as ever he was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered up with fresh Butter, for it will be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of stifling happen unto your Horse in your travail, and that your occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these Cures, then you shall take your Horse either to some deep Pond, or deep River, that hath easie going in and out, and there swim him up and down a dozen turns; which done, you may after travail him at your pleasure: for the more he is laboured the founder he will go. Now if your horse be not stifled, but only hurt in the stifle, either with some stripe or some strain, then the bone will not stand out, yet perhaps the place will be much swelled. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to make a little slit in his skin, a handful below the fore place, and then with a quill blow all the skin from the flesh upwards, and then with your hand press out the wind again, and then thrust in a rowvel of Horse-hair, from the first slit to the upper part of the stifle-bone:

this



this done take a pottle of old piss and boyl it to a quart, and cleanse it well; then take a handful of Mallows, and half a pint of Sallet-oyle, and add them to the piss, and then boyl them well together; then bath all the sore place therewith every day once, the space of seven or eight days, and let him not stir out of the stable during the Cure, and in twenty one days he will be sound.

Other Farriers use only to take a pound of Bole-armony, a quart of red Wine-vinegar, six Eggs beaten, shells and all, two penny-worth of English-honey, and as much Venice-Turpentine, one quart of flower, and one good handful of Bay-salt; put all these in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keep them close one night, and the next day anoint the sore place with some of it, and thus dressing it once a day the space of nine days, it will make the Horse sound.

## C H A P. LXXXV.

*Of the bone Spaven, or the dry Spaven.*

**T**H E bone Spaven, or dry Spaven, is a hard knob as big as a Walnut, growing in the side of the hoof hard under the joynt near unto the Master-vein; it groweth at the first like a tender gristle, and by process of time, it cometh to be a hard bone, and causeth the Horse to halt much. This Sorance will come sometimes by nature or descent, as when either the Sire or Dam of the Horse have had the same Disease; and sometimes (which is most generally) it cometh when a Horse is Laboured too young; for a Horse in that part of his hinder Leg hath small bones knit altogether upon one cluster, which being pressed before they be naturally hardened, cannot chuse but thrust forth these unnatural excretions. Other whiles it proceedeth from extream labour and heat, dissolving humours which do descend through the Master-vein, continually feeding that place with evil Nutriment, and causes the place to swell, which swelling in continuance of time becometh so hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone Spaven. The signs are the apparent sight of the Sorance; and truly for my own part, I am of the mind of other Farriers, that it is very hard absolutely to Cure it, yet that the eye-sore may be taken away, and the halting much eased, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Then to proceed to the Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus; First,

K k

flit



flit the skin just over the head of the Spaven or Excretion, and open it with a Cronet, and in any case have a care that you touch not the Master-vain, but put it by: then with your Launcet lay the Spaven all bare, then with a fine Chizel about a quarter of an inch broad, or a little more, strike off the dead of the Spaven, to the quantity of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the bigness of a Spaven: then take two penny-weight of Verdigrease beaten to fine powder, and two penny-weight of Nerve-oyl, and beat them all well together: then laying some of it upon fine Lint, lay it upon the Spaven; then lay dry lint betwixt the Medicine and the vein, that the Medicine may not touch the vein; then lay a plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and Hogs-grease molten together, all over the hough, both to comfort the joynt, and to keep in the Medicine. And thus dress him the space of three days, and it will cleanse away the Spaven even to the bottom; at the end of three days you shall wash away the corrosive and the matter, either with Tanners water, or with Vinegar, and lay no more of that Salve thereto for hurting the bone; then make a plaister of Diaculum, and lay it upon a Linnen cloath and lay that plaister upon the Spaven, renewing it every day once for the space of seven days, and it will heal him up.

Others of the old Farriers use, first to wash the Spaven with warm water, and shave off the hair so far as the Spaven extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleed: then take of Cantharides one dozen, and of Euforbium half a spoonful; beat them into powder, and boyl them together with a little Oyl de bay, lay this boyling hot upon the sore, and let all his tail be tied up from wiping away the Medicine; and then within half an hour after set him up in the stable, and tie him so as he may not lie down all that night, for fear of rubbing off the Medicine; and the next day anoint it with fresh Butter, continuing thus to do every day once the space of five or six days; and when the hair is grown again, draw the sore place with an hot Iron in this sort, just upon the Spaven: then take another hot Iron like a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the point and thrust it in at the neather end of the middle line, and so upward betwixt the skin and the flesh, an inch and an half, and then tent it with a little Hogs-grease and Turpentine molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once the space of nine days; provided that first immediately after his burning, you take up the Master-vein, suffering him to bleed a little from





from above, then with a red silk tie the upper end of the vein, and leave the neather end open, to the intent that he may bleed from beneath until it cease of it self; and this will diminish the Spaven, but not take it clean away.

Now there be other Farriers which use it after they burn it in manner aforesaid, and taken up the Master-vein, to anoint it with fresh Butter, till the burning begin to scale; and then take of Sage, or Nettles, of each a handful, and boyl them with four handfuls of Mallows in fair water, and then put thereto a little Butter, and with that bath him every day once for three or four days till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his Feet during the Cure.

Others use to prick the Spaven with a sharp pointed knife, then take a piece of candle, and lay a piece of brown paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the Tallow, and after anoint it with Butter. Others use first to prick the Spaven well, then to lay upon it, for three or four days together, every day Mans-dung: after that, lay to it *Galbanum* till the fore-matter and rheum, and the humour come forth, then wash it with Urine; and lastly, heal it up with Oyl and Honey boyled together, for that will bring on the hair.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the surest and the cleanest way to take the bone-spaven quite away, if it be used with discretion and care, is to take of *Unguentum Apostolorum*, and of white Mercury, of each a little quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mix them well together: then after you have cast your Horse, make a slit just the length of the Spaven, so that you touch not the Master-vein, then opening it, and laying all the Spaven bare, with a sharp instrument scale the Spaven a little; then make a plegant of lint just so big as the excretion or bone-spaven is; then spreading some of the Salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, especially the Master-vein from the corrosive: then lay the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogs-grease before spoken, round about his hoof, and so let him rest four and twenty hours: then take away all that medicine, and scaling the bone a little, if you find the corrosive have not gone deep enough, then dress it in the same manner the second time, and that will be altogether sufficient: then take of Turpentine, of Deers-suet, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and mix and melt them well together, then dress the sore place there with being warmed,



ed, and lint or tow dipt therein, and within a day or two you shall see the whole crust of the Spaven come clean away, then may you with the same Salve, heal up the wound; and this hath never failed me in any practice. Also understand that whatsoever taketh away the Splint, taketh away the Spaven also.

## C H A P. LXXXVI.

*Of the blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.*

THE blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, (for all is one disease) is a soft swelling growing on both sides the hoof, and seems as though it went through the hoof, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but, for the most part the swelling on the inside (because it is fed continually of the Master-vein) is greater than the swelling on the out-side. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and flegmy humor, and not so viscous and slimy, as the other Spaven doth, and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much easier Cure than the other. The signs thereof are like the other, the apparent sight thereof, and for the Cure, it is according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: First, wash the Spaven with warm water, and then dress it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in such sort as was at large shewed in the former Chapter; only you shall not boyl them, but only mix them together, and dress the sore therewith two days together: then anoint it with Butter, and after burn it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is shewed also in the former Chapter; but you shall by no means tent it: then immediately you shall take up the Master-vein, and let it bleed, as was shewed before; and then for the space of nine days, anoint him every day once with Butter, until the burning begin to scale, and then wash it with this bath. Take of Mallows three handfuls, of Sage one handful, and as much of red Nettles; boyl them in water until they be soft, then put thereto a little fresh Butter, and bath the place every day once for the space of three or four days, and until the burning be whole, let the Horse come in no wet.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved off the hair, and taken up the vein, to take of Mustard-seed, of the great Mallow-root, and of Ox-dung, of each a like quantity, and as much strong Vinegar as will



will mix them together like a Salve, then beat them all well together and make thereof a soft Plaister, or else an Ointment, and lay it upon the Spaven; change it evening and morning, and bind it in such sort to the Sorance with some piece of cloth, that it may not fall off or be removed; and when the Spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a Plaister of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, until it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers use unto this former Medicine to add Oyl de bay, Turpentine, and Bole-armony.

And other Farriers use but only to take up the vein, both above and below the Spaven, and suffering it to bleed well; then to knit up the vein, and anoint it with Butter till it be whole, and it will consume the Spaven.

## C H A P. LXXXVII.

*A most rare and well approved Medicine, which will take away any blood Spaven whatsoever.*

**A**FTER you have taken up the vein, knit it fast above, and then cut it in sunder, you shall take of Lynseed two or three handfuls, and bruise it well in a mortar, then mix it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a frying pan, heat it well upon the fire, and very hot apply it to the Spaven, renewing it morning and evening till it bring the Spaven like a Byle to Impostumation, and to break it, then after it hath run a day or two, you shall only apply to the fore a plaister of Pitch, till it be whole,

## C H A P. LXXXVIII.

*Of the Sellender.*

**T**HE Sellender is a certain kind of dry Scab, growing in the very bent of the Ham of the hinder Leg; and it extendeth out into ill-favoured chaps or chinks, which if it be not prevented by Medicine, it will fret in sunder the Sinews of the Hoof: It is in all points like unto a Mallander, and it proceedeth from the self like Causes, and requireth the self same Cures; therefore look into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatsoever you find there, that will Cure the Mallander, the same will also Cure the Sellender.

CHAP.



## C H A P. LXXXIX.

*Of the Hough Bonny.*

**T**HE Hough Bonny is a round swelling like a Paris ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the hoof, and cometh ever of some stripe or bruise; but especially when he beateth his hoof either against the post which standeth behind him, at the neather end of his stall, or against the bar which doth divide him from another Horse, which many Rammish Jades will do, when they seek to strike at the Horse which standeth next them.

Now the Cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron somewhat sharp at the end, like a good big bodkin, and let it be somewhat bending at the point; then holding the fore with your left hand, pulling it somewhat from the sinews, pierce it with the Iron, being first made red-hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottom, and so upward into the jelly, to the intent that the same jelly may issue downward out of the hole: and having thrust out all the jelly, tent the hole with a tent of Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together; and also anoint the out-side with Hogs-grease made warm, renewing it every day once until the hole be ready to close up, making the tent every day lesser and lesser until it be whole. Now for my own part both for this Sorance, or any other bruise in this part, I have found this Cure ever the best: First, either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old urine, or else with a plaister of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower boyled together, to ripen the swelling, and bring it to putrifaction, or else to drive the swelling away; but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the lowest part of the softness, with a thin hot Iron, and so let out the matter: then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers suet, and Wax, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a Plaister of the same Salve over it, to hold in the tent until it be perfectly well.



## CHAP. XC.

*Of the Curb.*

A Curb is a long swelling a little beneath the Elbow of the hoof of the great sinew behind, hard above the top of the horn, which causeth the horse to halt after a little labour: for the more his sinew is strained, the greater is his pain, and the more he hath rest, the lesser is his grief; it cometh as the Spavens come, either from descent, or from great burthens when the horse is young, or else from some strain or wrench. The signs are the apparent view thereof; and the Cure according to the old Farriers, is first to shave off the hair, then prick it with a fleam in three or four places, and for three or four days together, lay unto it twice aday Mans-dung; then lay *Galbanum* to it likewise twice aday until it rot, and that the matter doth Issue forth; then wash it with Urine: and lastly, heal it up with Honey and Oyl boyled together, renewing the same twice aday till the Curb be gone; and in any case let all your Salves be applied warm and new made, and if you make an Issue with a hot Iron in the bottom of the Curb, it will not do amiss.

Others use to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the sore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warm, vent it in six or seven places; then take a spoonful of Salt, half a spoonful of Nerve-oil, and a penny-weight of Verdigrease, and the white of an Egg; mix these well together, and dipping flax in the same, lay it to the Curb, and this in few dressings will take it away. Other Farriers use to chafe and rub the Curb well with their hands: then take red Wall-wort leaves, and Burrage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curb, renewing it once aday for a seven-night together. Others use to slit the Curb all the length, then take a piece of Linnen cloth, and wet it in wine made warm: then strow Verdigrease thereupon, and bind it to the sore, renewing it once aday until the Curb be gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of Wine-lees a pint, of Cummin half an ounce, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and stir them well together; and being made warm, charge the sore place therewith, renewing it every day once the space of three or four days, and when the swelling is almost gone, then



then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin, in this sort, and cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on good and warm, and clap thereon some flocks of the Horses colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not until they fall away of themselves; and for the space of nine days let the Horse rest, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this last recited Salve, will add Tar, and it is not amiss, only it will not stick so well.

✂ Now for mine own part, I have ever found this practice the best.

First, With a broad incle to bind the Hoof strait a little about the Cod: then with a smooth hazel stick to beat, rub, and chafe the Curb; then with a fleam strike it as deep as you can in two or three places of the Curb; then thrust out the corrupt blood; and after upon the point of your knife, put into every hole as deep as you can thrust it, the quantity of two Barly corns of white Mercury, and so let the horse rest four and twenty hours after; then after, only anoint the fore place with hot molten Butter till it be whole, once aday at the least. And likewise here understand, that whatsoever Cureth the Splint or the Spaven, that Cureth the Curb also.

## C H A P. XCI.

### *Of the Pains.*

**T**HE Pains is a certain Ulcerous Scab growing in the Pastorns of a Horse, betwixt the fetlock and the heel, full of fretting matterish water, and cometh only for want of good rubbing and clean dressing, after the Horse hath been journeyed in the Winter-ways by means whereof the sand and dirt remaining in the hair, fretteth the skin and flesh, and so breaketh to a Scab; and therefore your Friscons, and Flanders Horses and Mares, which are now so much in use with us for the Coach, are the soonest troubled with this Disease, if the Keeper be not much the more careful. The signs hereof are, his Leg will be swoln and hot, the Scab will be palpable to be felt, and the water will issue out of the Scab; which water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the hair, and breed Scabs where it goeth. The Cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, Take of Turpentine, Hogs-greale, Hony and black Sope, of each a like quantity, and



and having molten them upon a soft fire, take it off, and put in a little Bole-armony, finely beaten into powder; then work all these things well together with a stick in your right Hand, and a dish of Wheat-flower by you, that with your left Hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thick like an Oyntment or soft Salve; then spread it upon a Linnen-cloth, as big as the Sore, having first cut away the hair, and made the Sore raw, apply to the Salve, and dress him thus once aday until it be whole.

This Medicine is well approved to Cure all sorts of Pain, Scratches, Mouldy Heels, or any other skirvy Scalls whatsoever, that may breed in Horses Legs or Heels, whether they come by means of evil Humours, or for lack of good Dressing or clean Keeping, whether they be Mattry or filthy running Sores, or else dry Scabs. Others of the old Farriers use for this Sorance to take a pint of Red-Wine Lees, and a handful of Wheat-bran, a saucer full of Honey, and half a pound of the powder of powdred Beef burnt, and as much of Bark dust, and half a pound of Allom, and a quarter of a pound of Swines-grease, and half a handful of Vervine: beat all these together in a Morter, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, as hot as the horse can suffer it, letting it abide there the space of three days: and in once or twice thus dressing him, it will make him sound; yet some hold, if you do with a hot drawing Iron sear the great vein over-thwart, a handful above the fetlock, and then put a spoonful of Tar, a spoonful of Butter, and a spoonful of Honey, and warming them well together, anoint the vein therewith every day till the cure be perfected, and it is much available.

Other Farriers use, first to wash all the Horses Pastorns with Butter and Beer well warmed together, and then his Leg being somewhat dried, clip away all the hair that doth annoy the sore: then take of Turpentine, of Hogs-grease, and of Honey, of each like quantity; mingle them well together in a pot, and put thereunto a little Bole-armony, the yolks of two Eggs, and as much wheat-flower as will thicken the things afore-said, and so by long working it make it like a Plaister; then spread it upon the Linnen cloath, and lap it round about the Horses Pastorn, and bind it fast on with a rowler, renewing it once aday till the Horse be whole; and in no wise let the Horse come in any wet during the Cure. Others use first to chafe the sore place with a hay-rope, or with a hair-cloth, till it either bleed or be raw; then take a little strong Mustard,



Bean-flower, and fresh greafe, with a little Fenugreek ; then mix all together in a dish, and make thereof a Salve, and therewith anoint the fore, until it leave mattering ; then take Honey, the white of an Egg, and fresh Butter ; mix them together, and anoint the fore place therewith until it be whole. Others use only to bath the fore with Beef-broth, and then for four or five days after, to anoint it with Sope, or else first to plunge his Feet in scalding water twice or thrice ; and then bath the fore in scalding water ; then have ready a hard roasted Egg, cleave it in the mid<sup>t</sup>, and lap it too as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night ; use this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

✂ Others use to take Pepper, Garlick stamp<sup>t</sup>, Coleworts, and old Hogs-grease, of each a like quantity ; then beat them in a mortar till they be come to a Salve, and so lay it to the fore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

✂ Others use first to take up the Shackle-veins on both sides, then take the soft row of a Red-herring, and Mustard, and black Sope, and when they are well beaten together, boil them in Vinegar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the fore ; this will Cure the Pains, albeit you do not take up the Shackle-veins. If you cannot readily get this Salve, you may take Butter and Honey molten together ; and it will help them, or else take a pound of Hogs-grease, a penny-worth of Verdigrease, two ounces of Mustard, half a pound of Honey, half a pound of English Wax, one ounce of Arsnick, two ounces of Red-lead, and half a pint of Vinegar ; boil all these together and make an Ointment of it : then having clipt and made the fore all bare, apply the Medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a day until it be whole. Others use to take five ounces of Orpiment, five of Tartar, one of Verdigrease, half an ounce of Sulphur, as much of Vitriol made into powder, the juyce of four Citrons, the whites of two Eggs, with three ounces of Sallet-oyl ; let all these be very well beaten together, and applied once a day to the Sore, and it will not only heal this Disease, but any salt humour whatsoever : Mingle with soft Grease, Vinegar, Honey, Orpiment, and Arsenick ; but let Arsnick be the least, and it will Cure this Disease ; so will also White-wax, Turpentine and Camphire mixt together. Others use to take an hundred Black-Snails in the Month of *May*, slit them, and put them in a bag with a pint of Bay-salt, then hang them over the



e fire, with a Vessel set under to receive what drops from them, and keep it in a close glafs: then anoint the fore every day therewith, and it will heal this Sorance. Others take Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and fuet of a Hee-goat, of each alike, also boil them with a soft fire and stir it well: when it waxeth red, add of Verdigrease and Vitriol, of each a like quantity made into powder, stirring it till it be red and thick: then being warm, anoint the sore place therewith once a day, after it hath been washed with warm water: and this not only helps the pains, but also any Sorance whatsoever of like nature about the Legs.

Also green Copperas and Roch-allom, of each half a pound, and a handful of Bay-salt boiled in a gallon of running water, will heal it; or else unto it add a pint of Honey, and boil it over again, and it will be the better; then when you have anointed the sore therewith, rub it with the powder of Glafs, Mustard and Vinegar mixed together, and afterward skin it with Cream, and the inner rind of Elder beaten to a Salve, which must be applied to the Sore twice a day at the least.

## C H A P. XCII.

*Of the Mules or Kibe-Heels.*

**T**Hese Mules, or Kibed-Heels, are certain dry scabs or chaps breeding behind upon the Heels of a Horse, and so a little inward even to the Fetlock, in long chaps and chinks; it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being bred in wet marriish grounds, or else from unclean and negligent keeping, in such manner as the Pains are bred; this Sorance will make the Horses Leg to swell much, especially in the Winter, and about the Spring time, and he will go stily, and halt much.

Now for the Cure, you shall understand, that whatsoever healeth the Pains, the same will in like sort heal those Kybed-Heels; yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did use for this Sorance, if they took it at the beginning, but only to anoint it for two or three days with Sope, and then after to wash it with strong Urine, or Beef-broth till it were whole; but if it were of any long continuance, then first to cut away the hair and lay the sore open and plain; then take two ounces of unslaked Lime, one ounce




of Sope, and the White of an Egg, or else an ounce of unflaked Lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of Soot, and mingling them with strong Vinegar, anoint the sore therewith, and it will heal and kill them.

Other Farriers use to calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it to Water; then congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Sope like an Oyntment, and then dress the sore therewith, and this will in eight and forty hours heal any Mules, Pains, or Scratches whatsoever. If you take the juice of the leaves and roots of Elder, it is very good to dry up any of these evil humours.

## C H A P. XCIII.

*Of Wind-galls.*

**T**HE Wind-gall is a little Bleb or Bladder full of corrupt jelly, and like the white of an Egg growing on each side of the Master-sinew of the Leg, hard above the Pastern. Now of them some will be big, and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more than one or two of a cluster, and they are so painful, especially in the Summer season, when the Weather is hot, and the Ways hard, that the Horse is not able to travel, but halteth down-right; they proceed commonly from extream labour in the Summer-time upon hard Ways, whereby the humors being dissolved, do flow and resort into the hollow places about the nether Joynts, which are most beaten and feebled with travel, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skin like a bladder; they are most apparent to be seen and felt.

The Cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a Knife, and open it in the length of a Bean, piercing no further into it than through the skin of the Bladder, and then thrust out the Jelly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an Egg; then take the yolk of an Egg, and as much Oyl de Bay as a good Nut, and mixing them together, make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three days it will heal it. Others of the old Farriers dress it with Euforbium and Cantharides, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the splent; but if that will not serve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the wind-gall in this sort:  then to open the middle Lane with a Launcet, the length of a Bean. and



and thrust out the jelly, then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few flocks, and that will take it clean away. Other Farriers use to take up the Master-veins on the inside of his Legs, and suffer him only to bleed from below: Then having put up the Vein, cover all his Leg over with a Plaister of Wine-lees and Wheat flower mingled together, and rowl it with a long rowler; dress him in this sort once a day till it be whole.

Others use to open the skin and put out the jelly; then take a spoonful of Oyl de Bay, a spoonful of Turpentine, a penny-worth of Verdigrease, the white of an Egg, and a quarter of an ounce of Red Lead, boil them together till it come to a Salve; then lay it to the Wind-gall, and it will Cure it; or else, after you have let out the jelly, take Rozen, Sheeps-suet, and Brimstone, of each alike, and melt them together, and lay that upon the Wind-gall, so it be not too hot, and it will Cure it. Others take the roots of Cummin, and beat them well with a little Salt, and lay that to the Wind-gall; or else anoint them with the juice of Onions or Leek-blades, and that will allay them, or else ground-ivy and Worm-wood with the roots sod in Wine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of White-wax, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw Honey, three ounces of Swinesgrease, two ounces of Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, five ounces of Oyl de Bay; mix all these well together, and strain them; then rub them into the Wind-gall, by holding a hot bar of Iron against the Oyntment and it will take the Wind-gall away. Now for the making of the Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, it is thus: First, seeth the Eggs hard, then stamp them, and seeth them in an earthen pot with a soft fire, and so strain them. Now this Medicine will not only heal the Wind-gall, but the Ring-bone also; it is very good for the abating of the Wind-gall, and for making the Medicine to work the better, to let the Horse stand in a cold running stream an hour, morning and evening. The scum of the four Salts sod in mans Urine, and laid to the VVind-gall, will take it away.

There be others which take a pottle of Vinegar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of Galls, and as much of the herb Mollayn stamped small, mingle these well together, and put them into a pot, then every day therewith bath the VVind-gall; and in three weeks it will dry them clean up; it will also take away a Curb, or a Spaven, or a Ring-bone, if you take them at the breeding. Other



ther Farriers take of Sevil-oyl and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, and seeth them in Mans urine, and stir them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of Sope, to keep the hair from scalding off; then bath the Wind-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in; then anoint it above with Nerve-oyl, and Oyl de Bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot Bar of Iron, or a hot Firepan, to sink into the flesh, and in three days it will dry up any Wind-gall.

✂ Now for mine own part, the best Medicine I have found in my Practice for this Sorance, and the easiest, is, with a fine Launcet to open the Wind-gall, making the hole no bigger than that the jelly may come forth; then having thrust it clean forth, lap a wollen wet cloath upon it, and with a Taylors hot pressing Iron, rub upon the cloath till you have made the cloath suck in all the moisture from the Wind-gall, and that the Wind-gall is dry; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and of Mastick, of each a like quantity, and being very hot, daub it all over the Wind-gall; then clap good store of flocks of the colour of the Horse upon it, and so let the Horse rest or run at grasse till the Plaister fall off by its own accord, and be sure the Wind-gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a Rule, that by no means you use to a Wind-gall, either Arsenick, or Resalgar; for commonly then the Wind-gall will come again; neither must you burn much; nor make any great incision: For any of these will turn the soft substance of the Wind-gall to hardness, and then the Horse will be lame without Cure.

#### CHAP. XCIV.

##### *Of a Strain in the Pastorn-joynt, or Fet-lock.*

A Horse may be strained in the Fet-lock, or Pastorn-joynt, either by some wrench in the Stable, when the Planchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon some stone, or upon some Cartrut, as he travelleth by the way. The signs whereof be these; The joynt will be swoln and sore, and the Horse will halt; and the Cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of stale Urine, and seeth it till the scum arise; then strain it, and put thereto a handful of Tansie, and a handful of Mallows, and a Saucer full of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps suet; then set it on the



the fire, and seeth them all together till the Herbs be sodden soft; and then being very hot, lay this Pultus to the Joynt, and cover it over with a Blew-cloath; and in three times dressing it will help the strain.

Other Farriers take of Dialthea half a pound, and as much Nerve-oyl, mingle them well together, and anoint the sore place therewith, chafing it well with both your Hands, that the Oyntment may enter in; continuing so to do every day once until the Oyntment be all spent, and let the Horse rest; but if this will not prevail, then they will use Cantharides, as in case of the Splint; but I do not hold that Cure convenient, because it will make a double grief. Therefore I had rather you should take Pompilion, Nerve-oyl, and Black-sope, of each alike, and heat them hot on the fire, and then anoint the Sore place therewith, and it will make the Horse sound.

## CHAP. XCV.

*To remedy any manner of Halting that cometh by Strain, Stroak, or any other Accident.*

NOW forasmuch as Halting is such a general Sorance amongst Horses, that not any Man that is Master of a Horse, but even in his smallest travel, is at one time or other vexed with the same. I will here, before I do proceed any further, set you down certain general Receipts, selected and culled out of the private practice and experiment of the best Farriers in Christendom, of which I may give the bolder Testimony, because I have made practice of their virtues.

If then your Horse have taken any halt, either by stiffness of Sinews, Strain, Wrench, Stroak, or any other accident, if the grief be in his Leg, you shall take Smallage, Ox-eye, and Sheeps suet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together, and boil it in Men's Urine, and bath all the Leg therewith; then with Hay-ropes wet in cold water, rowl up his Leg, and he will be able to travel the next day.

If you seeth a pound of Black-Soap in a quart of strong Ale till it look like Tar, and anoint the Leg therewith, it will supple the sinews, and bring them to their true course. If you wash his Limbs with the grounds of Beer or Ale made warm, and then rope them up with Hay-ropes wet in the same, it will recover a strain. If you  
take



take of the flower of Linfeed, of Turpentine and Life-honey, of each alike, and boil them with White-Wine until they be thick like unto an Ointment; then spread it on a cloath, and lay it to the grief, and it will take away any Ache or Pain in the Sinews; likewise a Plaister of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower, or a Plaister of Black-Sope and Boars-grease will do the like.

✂ If you mix Nerve Oyl, Oyl de Bay, and *Aquavita* together, and warm it, and chafe it in, and upon, and about the strain, it will take the anguish quite away. If the grief be in the Shoulder, or the hinder Leg, then burn him upon the very Joint, by taking up the skin with a pair of pinsons, and thrust the skin through with a hot Iron over-thwart; and if this Cure him not, then his pain is betwixt the thin skin and the bone, which must then be rowelled. If the grief be in the Shoulder, or in the Hip or else-where, then let him bleed, and saving the blood, mix therewith the powder of Frankincense, and anoint the Horse with the same. If the grief be only in the sinews, then take the Plaister called Sologliatium, made of Gum-dragant, new Wax, Pitch and Turpentine mixed together, or else take the yolks of two Eggs, an ounce of Frankincense, and a little Bran, and beat them well together, and lay it to the Pain. If the Grief do proceed from a hot Cause, then let the Horse bleed, and with that blood mix Vinegar and Oyl, and anoint him, and chafe it well. But if it proceed from a cold Cause, then let him bleed a little; and with Figs soaked a day in warm water, and as much Mustard-seed, make a Plaister, and lay it to the Grief. If it come either by any rush or stripe, let the Horse bleed, and with that blood mingle strong Vinegar, Eggs, shells and all, three ounces of *Sanguis Draconis*, four of Bole-armony, and five of Wheat-meal, and daub it all over the fore place. If the Grief be in the Shoulder, and the skin broken, take Galls of Soria punned, and mingle them with Honey, and lay it to the sore. If his pain come from the stiffness of his Joynts, take a pound of Black Sope, and boil it in a quart of Ale till it be thick, and it will comfort the Joynts. If the Joynts be swelled, then take Rozen, Pitch, Turpentine, and *Sanguis Draconis* molten together, and lay it to the swelling warm, and it will either take away the swelling, or else ripen it and make it run. If you take of the Oyl of Camomile, Oyl of Dill, Butter and Agrippa, of each a like quantity; or else make a Plaister of an ounce of Turpentine, half an ounce of Verdigrease, and the marrow of a Stag; or bath the Horse



horse with warm water, wherein Rosemary hath been sod, and it will ease any pain whatsoever. If the horses pain be in his shoulder, first with a Lancet prick the skin through between the spade-bone and the marrow-bone; then putting in a quill, blow the skin from the flesh, even all about; then thrusting out the wind with your hand, put in a rowel; then take a pottle of stale Urine, seeth it with a pound of Butter, and as much Swines-grease, and a handful of Mallows, a handful of Tansie, a handful of Vervin, a handful of red Nettles, a handful of Southernwood, and a handful of Balm leaves, then beat them all well together, and so anoint his shoulder therewith, and let him not go forth of the stable for seven days. If his grief be in any nether joint, then take a handful of Lawrel-leaves, and of Primrose leaves, of Ground-Ivy, of Crowfoot, of Mallows, of red Fennel, and of fine hay, of each of them several as much; seeth them well together, and then let them stand fourteen days, then bath the joynt once a day, and bind on the herbs unto it four days together; then after chafe into the joynt fresh grease and oyl mixt together, and it will ease all his pain. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about the horse be by any flux of humours swelled, and grown out of shape, whereby the horse goeth stiff and halteth: then to dissolve those humours, take Wormwood, Sage, Rosemary, the bark of the Elm-tree, and of a Pine, together with Linseed, and boyling these together, make a Bath or Pultis thereof, and lay it to the sick member, and it will dissolve the humours; and so likewise will Figs, being stamped with Salt, and applyed to the fore.

## C H A P. XCVI.

*Three Rare and Well-approved Medicines, which will cure any manner of Strain or Swelling whatsoever, be it hard or soft, by what Accident soever it shall come.*

**I**F the Strain be newly taken, you shall then take Vinegar of the best a pint, and of sweet Butter better than a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the fire; then with fine Wheat Bran, make it into a pultis upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the strain as the horse is able to endure it without scalding, and do thus morning and evening until the strain be asswaged. But if the strain be of longer continuance, then take Mallows, and Chickweed, and boyl them either  
M m in



in the grounds of Ale or of strong Urine, and lay them very hot to the strain. Lastly, if your strain, by length of time, or evil Medicines, be grown, in mens imaginations, past cure, the sinews and swelling being bony, hard, and knotted; then you shall take Peece grease which is made of Shoo-makers threads, and melting it on the fire, anoint and bath the strain therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but also holding a hot bar of Iron against it to make the Ointment sink in; then take a fine Linen rowler, and rowl up the Leg gently; do thus once a day, and it will take away the greatest and most desperate strain that may be.

## C H A P. XCVII.

*Another certain approved Cure for any Strain whatsoever.*

**T**AKE Boars grease, Bole-armony, Black Sope and Nerve Oyl, of each a like quantity, boyl them well together, and then apply it hot to the grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and also heating it in very well, either with a hot brick-bat, a hot fire-shovel, or a hot bar of Iron. And thus do once a day till the Pain depart.

## C H A P. XCVIII.

 *Of Enterfearing.*

**E**NTerfearing is either when a horse through a natural straitness in his pace, or through evil and too broad shooing, goeth so narrow behind with his hinder feet, that he heweth the one against the other upon the inside of his Legs, even with the Pastorn Joynt; and by means of this hewing there groweth hard mattery scabs, which are so fore, that they many times make the horse to halt much. The signs are the straitness of his going, and the apparentness of the scabs. Now the Cure consisteth as much in prevention as in salve. For the prevention, which is, to keep a horse from hewing one Leg upon another, it consisteth only in the Office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder shooes, whereby he may go wider, and not touch: Of which we shall speak more at large when we treat of paring and shooing of each severall foot. For the salve, which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus: You shall take of May-butter (if



(if you can get it) or else fresh greafe, or fresh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve Oyl; then fry them all together in a pan, and then let it stand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow-dung; and then Plaister-wise apply this unto the sore, renewing it once a day, and it will not only heal this sore, but also any prick by a nail whatsoever.

## C H A P. XCIX.

*Of the Shackle-gall, or Gall in the Pastern, either by Shackle or Lock.*

**I**F a Horfe be galled in the Pastern, on the Heel, or upon the Cronet, either with shackle or lock, as it many times happens in the Champain Countries, where the Farmers use much to teather their Horses; then for such a sore you shall take Honey and Verdigrease, and boyl them together till the one half be consumed, and that it look red; then after it is a little cooled, you shall anoint the sore place therewith twice a day, and then strow upon it a little chopt flocks to keep on the salve. This is excellent for any gall whatsoever, and chiefly for the scratches.

## C H A P. C.

*Of Hurts in the Legs, which come by Casting in the Halter.*

**T**He hurts which a horse getteth by being cast in the halter, are many, and proceed from divers Accidents, as when the reins of the Collar are so long, and will not run to and fro, that the horse gets one or both his fore-legs or hind-legs over them, and then with strugling, woundeth and galleth them much; or else when a horse having a desire to scratch his ear with his hinder foot, rubbing it to and fro, in the end fasteneth his foot either in the collar, or the reins, and then the more he striveth to loosen it, the more he galleth and woundeth it, even sometimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, Take of Oyl Olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little wax, and working them all well together, lay it plaister-wise unto the sore, renewing



ing it once a day until it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which only anoint the fore with the Whites of Eggs and Sallet-oyle mixed together; and then when the fore cometh to a scab, anoint it with Butter, being molten until it look browne.

Now for mine own part, the Cure which I principally use for this Sorance, is, to take of Wax, of Turpentine, and of Hogs grease, of each one ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot; then take an ounce of Verdigrease beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hogs grease, and mix them very well together, and put that into another pot; then when you dress the fore, take of the first salve two parts, and of the later a third part, and mix them well together in the palm of your hand, anoint all the sore place therewith, doing thus once a day until it be whole.

## C H A P. CI.

*Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayls.*

**T**HE Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayls, being all but one Sorance, are long, scabby and dry chaps or rifts, growing right up and down, and overthwart on the hind Legs, just from the Fetlock unto the end of the Curb; and as the pains are under the Fetlock, so the scratches are above the Fetlock, and do proceed either from dry melancholy humours ingendred by outward filth, or else by fuming of the horses dung, lying either near or under him. The signs are both the apparent sight and the easie feeling of the same, beside the starting, dividing, and curling of the hair; as also that the Sorance will stink much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of those former Medicines whatsoever, which are already recited, either for the Pains or Mules; yet for your more particular understanding you shall know, these Medicines are most proper for this Sorance. First, you shall shave away the hair, and make the fore raw; then take of Turpentine half a pound, of Honey half a pint, of Hogs grease half a quartern, and three yolks of Eggs, and of Bole-armony a quartern beaten into powder, of Bean flower half a pint; mix all these well together, and make a salve thereof, and then with your finger anoint all the sore place therewith, and let the horse come in no wet during the cure.



Other Farriers use (and sure it is the better practice) first after they



they have shaved away the hair, and laid the fore raw, to wash it vvell with old Urine very warm, then take black Sope, Mustard, and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mix therewith some of an Ox gall; then stir them well together, and chafe and rub the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloth, so use it once a day till it be whole; then after anoint it with Neats-foot Oyl to supple the sinews again. Others use to take the finest hay, and burn it to ashes upon a fair board; then mix it with Neats-foot Oyl and make a Salve thereof; then rub the Sores until they bleed; and then anoint them with the said Salve, and rope his Legs, and keep them from wet. Others use after they have washed the fore with old Stale, then to take a quantity of strong Mustard, Vinegar, Gray-sope, Barrows greafe, and some Quick-silver; mix them together, and there-with anoint the fore.

Other Farriers take a quantity of unslaked Lime, half so much black Sope, and so much of strong Vinegar as shall suffice to make it like an Oyntment; then the hair being cut away, and the fore washed with Urine, lay to this Oyntment, renewing it not the space of two days, and it will kill the Sorance; then wash the place once or twice with warm wine; then after heal it with Turpentine and Hogs greafe molten together; and in no wise let the Horse come in any wet. Others use after they have washed the fore place with Urine, and clipt away the hair, and made the wound ravy, to take Butter and Tar, of each alike, and boyling them together, anoint all the fore place therewith every day till it be vvhole.


Others take of Honey and Verdigrease of each alike, and boyl them together until half be consumed, and then anoint the fore therewith once a day until it be whole. Others of our later Farriers use either to shave off the hair, or scald it off with Orpiment and unslaked Lime boyled in strong Lye; then wash it with warm Vinegar or White-wine, then when it is dry anoint it with this Ointment.

Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Verdigrease three ounces, of Soot five ounces, a little unslakt Lime, and of Honey one pound; mingle them all well together upon a soft Fire, and being made like an oyntment, use it as aforesaid once a day to the fore; or else take Honey, Sope, Verdigrease, unslakt Lime, and Vinegar, and boyl them with Allom, Galls, and Mail, till it come to a Plaister, and then apply it unto the fore; or else boyl Sallet-oil, with a little suet and sope, then skim it and take it from the fire; then add an ounce of




of Quick-silver dissolved, two ounces of *Verdigrease*, three ounces of unslackt Lime, and one ounce of white Wax; when all these are well mixt together, and made into a salve, then apply it once a day unto the fore, until it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have shaved the place, to boyl Vinegar and the skin of Lard or Bacon together; and apply that to the fore three days together; then take Lard, molten Lithargy, Mastick, *Verdigrease* and Soot mingled together with Goats Milk, and lay it too, renewing it once a day until the fore be healed. The scraping of a pans bottom mixt with the inner pills of Elder, are also good for the scratches; or new man's dung applyed for five days, and after anoint the fore with oil and sope mixt together. Others take of unslackt Lime, the powder of Glasse, and of *Verdigrease*, of each an ounce; of Orpiment an ounce; of oyl and of fresh grease, of each four ounces; mix all these well together, and apply it to the fore until it be whole: If you take black Snails and Bur-roots and beat them together, it will also help this Sorance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unslackt Lime, and as much Lye, or strong Vinegar as will temper it, and so dress the fore until it be whole. Others take Fenugreek and beat it, three Oranges cut in pieces, half a pound of Sheeps Suet, new Sheeps Dung; boyl all these in the ground of good Ale, and then bath the Horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him up with hay-ropes, and so let him stand three days, then bath him so again.

 Others take Hogs-grease, Sope, Brimstone, Soot and Honey, boyl them and lay them to cool, you may also add *Verdigrease*; but before you lay on this oyntment, scrape the scabs off, and make them bleed, and rub them with Sope, Mustard, and Vinegar mixt together.

### C H A P. CII.

*A most certain and approved Cure for the Scratches.*

 **A**fter you have cut away the hair, rub off the scabs, and wash the fore with old Urine, Allom and Salt mixt together, and applyed as hot as the horse can suffer it; then take the tops and tender buds of Elder, and the green brier Berries, and boyl them in a pottle of new wort, and put thereto good store of Allom, and with this



this hot, wash the horses Leg once, twice, or thrice a day ; and it is a certain Cure.

## CHAP. CIII.

*Of the Ring-bone.*

**T**He Ring-bone is a Sorance, which appeareth above, upon the Cronet of the foot, being a certain hard gristle growing sometimes round about the same. It proceedeth, as some Farriers hold opinion, either from some blow of any Horse, or by striking the Horses foot against some stub or stone, or such like accident : But surely I hold, That also it proceedeth from some imperfection in nature, for as much as I have seen many Foals foaled with Ring-bones on their feet ; These Ring-bones do breed a viscous and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their own nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some bone, and so in process of time becometh a bone. The signs of this Sorance are, the apparent sight of the Sorance, being higher than any part of the corner, the staring of the hair, and the halting of the horse.

The cure, according to ancient Farriers, is, first to scarifie the skin above the Ring-bone with a Lancet ; then take a great Onion and pick out the core ; then put into it Verdigrease and unslackt Lime, then cover the hole, and roast the Onion soft, then bruise it in a mortar, and so very hot lay it to the Ring-bone ; do thus four days together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the Sorance with warm water, and shave away the hair : then scarifie it lightly with the point of a Razor, so as the blood may issue forth ; then dress it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in such sort as hath been taught for the splent, using him, and curing him after the same manner ; but when the hair beginneth to grow again, then draw the fore place with a hot drawing-iron in streight lines, from the Pastorn down to the coffin of the hoof, in this manner : and let the edge of the drawing Iron be as thick as the back of a meat knife, and burn him no deeper than that the skin may look yellow : that done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon flocks of the horses own colour, and about three days after, lay again some of the last mention'd Plaister, and also new flocks upon



on the old, and there let them remain till they fall away of themselves. Others use to shave off the hair, and to scarifie the sore with a Lancet till it bleed: then strow upon it the powder of Tartar, and Salt, of each a like mixt together, and bind it strait; then after anoint it with fresh grease, or else soften the Ring-bone with the skin of old Bacon, the fat being scraped off, that you may see through the skin, and laid to after it is shaven and made bleed; after launce it, and let out the Ring-bone. Others use to launce the skin with a Razor, then opening the skin with a Cronet, prick the Ring-bone. Lastly, strow upon it the powder of Vitriol, and bind it on so as it may not stir in nine days; then thrust out the matter which is dissolved. Lastly, Wash it with Salt, with Urine and Vinegar mixt together. Other Farriers do use after they have shaved it, to lay unto it a plaister made of Bran and Honey, with the young leaves of Wormwood, Pellitory, and Brank-Ursine mingled with Svines grease, and beaten together, and boyled, and used as hot as the horse can suffer it. This medicine will not only cure the Ring-bone, but any other swelling vvhatssoever. Also a Plaister of the Leaves of Smallage being beaten to pieces, is not only good for this Sorance, but for any wind-gall also. To vvashe a Ring-bone continually with strong Vinegar will abate it: or else to shave away the hair, and take half a Lemmon, and sprinkle Arsnick thereon, and lay it to the Ring-bone, and it will eat it away; if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard Egg burning hot unto the Ring-bone, it will take it away. Lastly, if you take Euforbium, and mingle it with Oyl of Juniper, Salt and Pepper, and so apply it to the Ring-bone, it will in a very short space consume the Ring-bone quite away; always provided that you keep the horse from any Wet during his Cure.

## C H A P. CIV.

*Of Hurts on the Cronet, by crossing one Foot upon another.*

**I**F your horse by crossing one foot upon another, chance to wound or hurt the Cronet of his hoof, you shall then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, first wash it well with White-wine, or with warm Urine, and then lay unto it the white of an Egg mixt with Chimney foot and salt; and that, if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three days dry up the sore. Other Farriers use first to



to pare or cut away the hoof, that it touch not the hurt, and keep it clean from filth by washing it with Urine: then seeth two Eggs hard, and take off the shells, then press them with your hand long, and first rost one hot, and tye it hard too; when that is cold, use the other, after make a plaister of Soot, Salt and Oyl boiled together, and lay it to the Sore, renewing it once aday until it be whole.

## C H A P. CV.

*A most certain and approved Cure for any hurt upon the Cronet whatsoever.*

**T**AKE of Sope and Salt, of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a paste, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt, and laid it plain, first wash it with Urine and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and with a cloth dry it, then bind on the mixt Sope and Salt, not renewing it in 24 hours, and thus do (if the wound be great) for 3 or 4 days together: Then, having drawn out all the venom (as this Salve will quickly do) take a spoonful or two of Train-oyl, and as much Ceruse, which we call White-lead, and mix it together to a thick Salve, then spread that upon the Sore, morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected suddenly: for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new hoof.

## C H A P. CVI.

*Of the Crown-scab.*

**T**HE Crown-scab is a stinking and filthy scab, breeding round about the corners of the hoof, and is a cankerous and painful Sorance, it cometh oft-times by means that the horse hath been bred in a fenny marsh ground, where the cold-striking corrupt humors up to his feet, ingendreth this Sorance, which is ever more painful in the Winter than in the Summer. The signs are, the hairs of the Cronet will be very thin and staring like bristles, and the Cronets will be always mattering and run on water. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of many Farriers, is, to take the skin of Bacon, and lay thereon Soot and Salt beaten together, mingled with Grease

N n or



or Suet, Wax, and Pitch molten together; and if the flesh chance to grow proud, eat it away either with Verdigrease beaten to powder, or with the scrapings of a Harts-horn, or an Ox-horn made into fine powder.

✂ Other Farriers use to take of Sope, and of Hogs-grease, of each half a pound, of Bole-armeny a little, of Turpentine a quartern; mix them well together, and make a Plaister, and bind it fast on, renewing it every day until it leave running; and then wash it with strong Vinegar being luke-warm, every day once until the sore be clean dried up, and let the Horse come in no wet until the Sorance be whole. Others use only to bath it continually with old stale sod with Salt, and that will dry up the humor and heal it.

### CHAP. CVII.

#### *Of the Quitter-bone.*

THE Quitter-bone is a hard round swelling upon the Cronet of the hoof betwixt the heel and the quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the Foot, it breeds most commonly by means of Gravel gathered underneath the shoo, which fretteth inward, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward, or else it cometh by the cloying or pricking of some nail driven by an ignorant Smyth, the anguish whereof looseth the Gristle, and so breedeth evil humors whereof the Quitter-bone springeth: the signs are, the Horse will halt much, and the swelling is apparent to the eye, which in four or five days cometh to a head, and will break out with matter at a little deep hole like a Fistula; and surely than this Quitter-bone there is no outward Sorance whatsoever more dangerous to a Horse. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of some of the ancient Farriers, is, first to cut the hoof to the quick, then seeth a Snake or an Adder till the flesh part from the bone, and be molten as an Unguent; then anoint the sore place therewith very warm even to the botom, and during the Cure, keep the Foot clean from any filth: for this both drieth and killeth the Quitter-bone. ✂ Others of the old Farriers, first burn about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron in manner of a half Circle, and then with the same Iron draw another right through the midst thereof in this sort: then take of Arsnick the quantity of a Bean beaten into fine powder, and put it into the Hole, thrusting it down to the bottom with a quill, and stop the mouth of the hole





hole with a little tow, and bind it so fast with a cloath and a rowler, that the Horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day; and the next day if you see that the sore looketh black within, then it is a sign that the Arsnick did work well; then to allay the burning of it, tent the hole with flax dipt in Hogs-grease, and Turpentine molten together, cover the tent with a Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Wax and Turpentine molten together, but there must be as much Turpentine as of all the rest: and thus you must continue to do until you have gotten out the core, which the Arsnick did eat; then you shall see whether the loose gristle in the bottom be uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feel with your finger, or with a quill whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raise the gristle with a little crooked instrument, and pull it clean out with a pair of small nippers, or mullets made for the purpose: that done, thrust it again with a full tent, dipt in the aforesaid Ointment to assuage the anguish of the last dressing, and stop it hard, to the intent that the hole may not shrink together or close up: and the next day take out the tent, and tent it anew with Honey and Verdigrease boiled together till they look red, renewing it every day once until it be whole, keeping always the mouth of the sore as open as you may, to the intent that it heal not up too fast, and let not the Horse come to any wet, nor travel until he be perfectly whole. Other Farriers use to cut the hoof open to the quick; then take *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, Pitch of Greece, *Olibanum*, Mastick, Oyl and White-Wax, of each one ounce, with half a pound of Sheeps-suet: melt them upon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dress the sore place until it be whole. Others use, after the sore is opened, to put in Salt of Tartar, and when it hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heal it up with Honey and Verdigrease boiled as aforesaid. Others take of Goats dung two ounces, of Sheeps-tallow three ounces, and as much strong Vinegar as will suffice to boil them well in, and then therewith to dress the Quitter-bone until it be clean whole.

## C H A P. CVIII.

*Of gravelling a Horse.*

**G**Ravelling is a certain fretting of Gravel, Sand, or Dirt, under the Foot, betwixt the sole and the shoo, sometimes on the in-



side, sometimes on the out-side of the Foot, and sometimes on both sides of the Heel. It cometh, as I said, by means of little gravel stones getting between the hoof, or calking or sponge of the shoe, which by continual labour and travel of the Horse, doth eat through the hoof into the quick of the Foot; and the rather, if the Horses heels be soft and weak, or that the shoe do lie flat to his Foot, so as the gravel being gotten in it, cannot get out again.

The signs whereof are these, the Horse will halt much, and covet to go most on his toe to favour his heel, and the softer the way is, the more is the Horses ease. Now for the Cure, according to the old Farriers, it is thus; first pare the hoof till you may see the sore, then take an ounce of Virgins-wax and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Dears-suet, and half an ounce of Boars-grease, and beat them all well together in a mortar, and then melt them together, on the fire; that done, dip good store of flax therein, and so stop up the Sore close and hard, and then you may travel the Horse whither you please; and do thus once aday until the Foot be sound. Others of the old Farriers use first to pare the hoof, and to get out the Gravel with a drawing knife, leaving none behind; then stop the Sore place with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, and laid on with a little tow or flax, and then clap on the shoe, to keep in the stopping, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and suffer the Horse to come in no wet until it be healed. Now you must understand, that if a gravelling be not well stopt to keep down the flesh, it will rise higher than the hoof and so put the Farrier to much more pains both in bolstring it, and abating that ill-grown substance.

Others use only to pare the Foot, and pick out all the gravel clean, then wash it well with Beer and Salt; then melt into it Tallow, Rozen, and Pitch: then covering it hard and close with flax, set on the shoe again, and do thus once a day. Others use after they have cleansed the Sore, to lay hards into it, being dipt in the whites of Eggs, then after heal it with Salt beaten small and mixt with strong Vinegar, or else with the powder of Galls, Salt, and Tartar mixt together, which also is good for any cloying or pricking.



## C H A P. CIX.

*Of Surbating.*

**S**urbating is a continual beating of the hoof against the ground, and it cometh sometimes by means of evil shoeing, lying too flat to his Foot, or by going long bare-foot; and sometimes by the hardness of the ground, and the high lifting of the Horses feet, either in his trot or in his amble; and the Horses which are most subject to this Sorance, are those which have either great round Feet, or such as are flat footed, the coffins whereof are weak and tender, and also those which have weak heels. The signs of the grief are, the Horse will halt much, and go creeping and stiff, as if he were half foundred.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to roast a cupple of Eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heat, to burst them in the Horses feet, and then pour hot boiling Sallet-oyl amongst them, and so stop the shoe up close with a piece of leather, and two cross splents of wood, and do thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

Other of the ancient Farriers take off the Horses shoes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the shoes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tack them on again with four or five nails: that done, stop his Feet with Hogs-grease and bran boiled together so hot as may be, and also cover all the coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a cloth, and a list fastened about the joynt, renewing it every day once until it be sound; and give the Horse during the Cure, warm water to drink, and let him stand dry, and not have much travel.

Now if your Horse Surbait in your travel, if every night you stop his Feet well with Cows-dung, or with Cows-dung and Vinegar, it will make him endure out his Journey: or Cows-dung and new laid Eggs beaten together.



## CHAP. CX.

*Of the prickle in the sole of the Foot, either by treading on a nail, or any other sharp thing.*

**I**F a Horse in his travel chance to tread either on a stub, nail, thorn or any other sharp thing whatsoever, by means whereof he is prickt in the sole of the Foot, the Rider shall perceive the same by the sudden faulting of the Horse, who will instantly stand still and lift up his Foot, as desiring help: And if it chance at any other time, then the halting of the Horse, and the diligent searching of a careful Farrier must find out the mischief.

Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, first to pull off the shoo, and pare the Foot, and with a drawing knife uncover the whole, making the mouth so broad as a two pence: then tack on the shoo again; that done, do it by pouring into the hole Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, and lay some flax or tow upon it; and then stop all the Horses feet with Cows dung, and so covering it with a piece of leather, splint it with two cross sticks, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and let the Horse tread in no wet.

Now you must be very careful in the curing of this Sorance; For if it be not healed from the bottom, besides, that it is dangerous to the life of the Horse, it is also a great hazard that the fore will break out at the top of the hoof, and so loosen the hoof round about, and perhaps make it to fall clean away; but if you see that it begin to break out above, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole away, that the flesh may have the more liberty; then take of Bole-armeny half a quartern, and of Bean flower as much, and two Eggs: beat them, and mingle them well together, and make a Plaister thereof upon tow, and lay it round about the Cronet, bind it fast on, and so let it remain the space of two days, and then renew it again, not failing to do so every two days until you see it wax hard and firm above: for this Plaister being restrictive, will force the humors to resort always downward; which humors must be drawn out with Turpentine and Hogs-grease as before, until it leave Mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allom beaten into powder, and strowed upon the fore, with a little flax



flax laid again upon that, continuing so to do every day once until it be hardned; and let not the Horse come in any wet until it be whole.

Other Farriers use to tent the sore with Tallow, Tar, and Turpentine being molten together, and anoint all the coffin and Cronet of the hoof with Bole-armeny and Vinegar beaten together, till the sore be whole, especially if the thing which did prick the Horse was venomous or rusty.

## CHAP. CXI.

*To draw out either Stub, Thorn, or Iron either out of the Foot or any other part of the Body.*

**I**F either the Stub, the Thorn, the Iron, or any thing whatsoever, wherewith your Horse is wounded, be gotten so deep into the flesh, that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out; then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you find that albeit it be too deep, yet it is not much too deep) you shall take a good quantity of Black-sope, and lay it to the sore for a whole night, and it will make it to appear, so as you may pull it out with a pair of nippers: but if it lie very deep, then you may open the place with a Lancet, and thrusting in your mullets or nippers, pull it out by strength, and afterwards heal up the wound as was before taught in the last Chapter.


Other Farriers say, that the roots of Reeds being stampd and mixt with Honey, will draw out any stub or nail; so will also Black-snails, being stampd and wrought with fresh Butter. Now if the place be much swoln, then it is good to mollifie it with a Plaster made of Worm-wood, Parietary, Bears-foot, Hogs-grease, and Honey well boiled and mixed together, which will assuage any new swelling that cometh by stripe, or otherwise. Now when you have gotten out that which you sought for, then you shall pour in to the Wound scalding Oyl of Olive; when that is cold, pour in to it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold strow on the powder of Sulphur, and then bolster his Foot or the Sore with hürds, and keep it from all wet and filthiness.



## C H A P. CXII.

*Of the Fig.*

**I**F a Horse having receiv'd any hurt, as is before said, either by stub, great nail, thorn, bone, splent or stone, either in the sole or any other part of the foot, and be not well dressed, and perfectly Cured, there will grow in the place a certain superfluous piece of flesh like unto a fig, full of little white grains, as you see are in a fig. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first with a hot Iron to cut the fig clean away, and keep the flesh down with Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and a little Wax molten together, and laid on with a little tow, stopping the hole hard that the flesh rise not, renewing it once a day until the sore be whole.

 Now other of our latter Farriers use after they have, as before is said, cut away the fig, then to take the crops of young Nettles, and chopping them very small, lay them upon a cloth just as big as a Fig; then take the powder of Verdigrease, and strow it thin upon the chopt Nettles, and so bind it to the Sore, renewing it once a day until the hoof have covered the Sore, and this is a most certain Cure.

## C H A P. CXIII.

*Of a Retrait.*

**A** Retrait is, when a horse by the ill government of the Smyth, is pricked in the foot with some ill driven nail, yet in such sort, that it is immediately espied, and the nail drawn back again; and although it proceedeth oftest from the negligence of the Smyth, yet it may also come by reason of the weakness of the nail, and the hollowness of the shank: for when the nail is a little too weak, the point many times bendeth awry into the quick, when it should go right forth; and when it is hollow, it shivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quick in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth still behind. And this kind of pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rankle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth, and remaineth still in the foot: The signs hereof are, First, the apparent shrinking and struggling




ling of the horse, so soon as the quick is touched; and next, his much halting: Lastly, you shall search his foot with a Hammer, by knocking on the clench of every nail: for when you knock upon that nail where the grief is, the horse will shrink up his Foot; and if that will not serve, then grope the foot with a pair of pinsons round about until you have found the place grieved. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to pull off the shoe, and then open the place grieved, either with a Butteriss, or with a drawing-knife, so that you may perceive either by feeling or seeing, whether there be any piece of nail, or not; if there be, then pull it clean out: After take of Nettles half a handful, and bruise them in a Mortar, and put thereto a spoonful of red Vinegar, and a spoonful of black Sope, and two ounces of Boars grease, or the fat of salt Bacon, and bray all these well together, and stop well the hole of the fore with this, and then tack on the shooe again, and you may safely adventure to travail him. Other Farriers use, after they have opened the fore, to stop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and so poured hot into the hole; and then lay a little tow upon it, and clap on the shooe again, renewing it thus once every day until it be whole; during which time, the Horse must not come in any wet, and it must be stopped in this sort, though it be but a prick, without any piece of nail remaining; and if for lack of looking to in time, this Retrait causes the horse to break out, then you shall cure it either with a restrictive Plaister of Bole-armony, Bean-flower and Eggs, mentioned in the 78 Chapter, or else vvith chopped Nettles and Verdigrease spoken of in the last Chapter.

Now there be many Farriers, which not only, for this Retrait, but for any prick on the horses foot, use after they have laid open the Wound, to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of Beef suet one ounce, and one head of Garlick, boyl them all together, and lay them to it so hot as may be suffered: and if it chance to break out above the hoof, then apply also the same Medicine unto it, and it will cure it.



## C H A P. CXIV.

## Of Cloying.

 A Horfe is faid to be cloyed with a nail, or pricked with a nail, when the whole Nail is ftricken into the quick of the foot, and fo remaineth ftill in the fame, and is clenched as other nails be, by means whereof the horfe halteth extremely. Now this grief is known by fearching the grieved place with a hammer or pinsons, as is before faid. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus; If the horfe halt immediately, then pull off his fhoe, and open the hole until it begin to bleed, and then ftop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day until it be whole, and let the horfe tread in no wet; and let his fhoe be tacked on again as foon as he is drest. Others ufe only to pour into the hole hot fcaiding butter, and that will heal it; or elfe to burn the hole with another nail, and that will heal it. Other Farriers ufe, after they have open'd well the fore, to take half a pound of Frankincenfe, a pound of Rozen, a pound of pitch of *Greece*, half a pound of black pitch, a pound of new Wax, a pound of Goats greafe, half a pound of Varnish, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of Oyl Olive, and melt them all together, and lay this to the hoof plaifter-wife, and it will not only heal any prick whatfoever, but alfo any cracks, chinks, or clifts in the hoofs, howfoever they breed; provided that you let the horfe tread in no wet during the cure: But if the fore chance to break out on the top of the hoof, then you fhall take two or three yolks of Eggs, Whites and all, beaten together, and add thereunto an ounce of Bole-Armony, and as much Bean or Wheat-flower as will thicken the fame: then make a plaifter thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will go round about on the top of the Horfes hoof; bind it faft on with a rowler, and renew it once a day until it be whole.

Other Farriers ufe, after they have fearched and laid open the Wound, to put into it hurds dipt in the white of an Egg; then ftop the hole with Salt beaten very fmall, mingled with Vervine and ftrong Vinegar, and cover it with flax dipped in ftrong Vinegar; or elfe holding up the horfes foot, pour into the wound hot fcaiding Oyl Olive; and when that is cold, pour in hot Turpentine, and that being cold



cold, strow upon it the powder of Sulphur, then lay on the bolster of flocks, then shooe him, and keep him from treading in any wet.

Others use to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphur, Mallows, and very strong Vinegar; boyl them together until they be thick like an Oyntment; then lay the same to the fore as hot as the horse can endure it, renewing it once in twelve hours till it be whole.

Others use to take of Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and suet of a Hee-Goat, boyl them with a soft fire, and stir it: when it waxeth red, add Verdigrease and Vitriol, of each a like made into powder, still stirring it till it be thick and red; then stop the fore every day therewith until it be whole, after you have washed it well with Salt and Vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlick, and Cabbage-leaves beaten with Swines grease, and lay that to the fore; or else take Tallow and Horse-dung, and mixing them well together, stop the fore therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers use to take off the shoe, and having open'd the fore, to wash it with Wine: then lay upon it the inner rind of elder, and through that melt in grease with a hot Iron: then tack on the shoe again, and do thus divers days together, and it is a certain cure.

## C H A P. CXV.

*General Observations for the Feet and Hoofs of a Horse.*

**F**Orasmuch as the Feet and Hoofs of a Horse are the only instruments of labour, and that a small grief in that part deprives a man of the benefit and use of the rest; I think it not amiss before I speak of particular Diseases of the Hoofs, to shew you some general notes and observations which you shall observe for the benefit of the feet. Know then, that first it is meet that you let your shooes before be rather too short than too long, with strong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nails to have special good Heads.

Let your shooes behind have no cawkins on the out-side; but if he enter-fere, let the cawkin be on the in-side, to make him cast outward, and let the in-side of that side inward have a welt an inch deep, or be twice as thick as the out-side; but if all this help not his enter-fering, then bring him unto an Amble; but if he will not amble, burn him with a hot Iron between the Legs, that the forenefs thereof may make him go wide behind, which is an ordinary practice amongst the Italians and Frenchmen.



Let your shooes be made of Iron that will not break, of which our English is the best, the Spanish next, and the Dansk worst. Let them also be light, yet so, as they may be able to bear the burthen of the horse, being broader at the toes, than at the cawkin or spunges.

Let your cawkins be short, and blunt at the points, and your spunges long and thick.

Let your shooe be full as strait as the horn of the hoof, so far as the Nails go, and from the two heel nails backward, let the shooe be broader than the hoof, that the shooe may be without the horn.

✂ Give unto every shooe nine nails, on each side four, and one in the midst, and let the shanks of the nails be very flat and thin, that if the hoof be naught, they may yet keep the shooe firm with little hold: and the neerer that your nails are driven backward towards the heel, (so it be without danger) the faster the shooe will sit, and the harder to be pull'd away.

Let your cawkins fit a straws breadth behind the corner of the coffin, and let your nail head enter into the shoe, especially on the outside, and by all means hollow your shoe so little as possible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heel of a horse: yet open his heels as sufficiently as may be, because ever the heel must be thick and the toe thin.

In fair ways pare the sole thin, but in Frost, or stony ways, pare as little as may be.

✂ To conclude, when the hoof is higher on the out-side than on the in-side, it will make a horse enter-feer; and when it is higher on the in-side, it will make a horse straddle, so that a fair smooth table is of all most convenient. After travel, ever stop the inside of the hoof with Cows dung, and rub the out-side and the Cronet with the sword of fat bacon: For that will keep a tough, smooth, and a sound hoof. As your Nails have strong heads, so let them have thin shanks, for that will best prevent hurting, and keep the shooe close unto the hoof.

#### C H A P. CXVI.

*Of loosning the Hoof, and how to make the Hoofs grow.*

⚠ A Horse is said to be loosned where there is a dissolution or parting of the horn or Coffin of the hoof from the flesh, at the setting



setting on of the Cronet. Now if this dissolution or parting be round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by means of some foundring; but if it be put in part, then it proceedeth from some anguish, caused either by the pricking of some channel nail, or other nail piercing the sole, or quarters of the foot; or by some Quitter-bone, retrait, gravelling, or cloying, or such like accident. The signs of the disease be these: When it is loosened by foundering, then it will break first, and the dissolution will appear on the fore-part of the Cronet, right against the toe, because the humour doth covet always to descend towards the toe; but if it proceed from pricking, gravelling, or such like, then the hoof will loosen round about equally, even at the first; but when it proceeds from some Quitter-bone, or hurt from the Cronet, then the hoof will break right about the place that is offended, and most commonly will go no further.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, of what cause soever the loosening proceed, first to be sure to open the hoof in the sole of the Foot, so as the humour may have free passage downward; and then to bind about the top of it the restrictive plaister spoken of in the seventy eighth Chapter, and in the 117th Chapter, and in such sort as is there written; and then heal it up with Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three spoonfuls of Tar, and a quarter of a pound of Rozin, and a handful of Tansie, and half a handful of Rue, and half a handful of Red Mint, and half a handful of Southernwood, and bray all these together in a Mortar; then add half a pound of Butter, and a penny-worth of Virgins Wax; then melt them all together over the fire, untill it come to a thick Plaister or Salve: then spread some of it upon a cloth, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for seven days, and it will heal it.

Others use to take the brains of a Swine, or a Pig, and to stop his hoof very well therewith three days together, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and it will grow fast, and endure as well, or rather better than ever it did. Other Farriers use to cut out the sole below, letting it bleed well; after stop it with hurds dipt in the Whites of Eggs: tie this too for twenty four hours, then wash it with strong Vinegar warm, after fill it with Tartar and Salt, of each a like quantity; let that remain two days; then anoint it with the oyntment made of *Olibanum*, Maystick, Pitch of Greece, of each a like, and



a little *Sanguis Draconis*, and of new Wax and Sheeps suet as much as of the first, and melt and boyl them very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once aday till the sore be whole. But if you perceiue that any new hoof come, then cut away the old, lest the hardnes of the one hinder the tendernefs of the other; and then anoint the new hoof with suet, oyl, and wax, of each alike, boyled together, to make it grow; or else with the pitch of *Greece*, Mastick, *Olibanum*, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Galbanum*, of each alike, being molten with suet; for this will make the new Hoof to grow also.

✂ So will also new Wax, Honey, Oyl, Swines greafe, and Sheeps suet, being boyled together; and when it is cold, add Mastick, *Sanguis Draconis*, and Frankincense, and incorporate them all together, for nothing sooner than this will make either new or old hoofs grow. Others use to take Shel-snails, and stamp them, and lay them twice a day to the sore, and it will either fasten the old hoof, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers, which first fill the sore with Turpentine, and after it hath lain twenty four hours, then wash the sore with Urine and Coperas-water, then fill it either with Verdigrease, or with Sheeps tallow, Pitch, and Rozen boyled together; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the sore very hot twice a day till it be whole.

## C H A P. CXVII.

## Of Casting the Hoof.

✂ THE casting of the hoof, is, when the whole coffin thereof falleth clean away from the foot, which cometh of all the former causes rehearsed in the last Chapter, and is so apparent to the eye, that it needeth none other signs. Now for the cure, it is thus; take of Turpentine one pound, of Tar half a pint, of unwrought Wax half a pound, of Sheeps suet half a pound, and of Sallet oyl half a pint: boyl all these things together, and stir them continually until they be thoroughly mixt together; then make a boot of Leather, with a strong sole fit for the horses foot, to be laced fast about the pastorn; then dress his foot with the Salve aforesaid laid upon flax or tow, and bolster and stop his foot with soft flax, so that the boot may grieve him no manner of ways, renewing it every day once until the new hoof come; then as the hoof beginneth to harden, if it grow either thick, crumple, or out of order; with a fine Rape-file keep it



it smooth, and plain, until the hoof be perfect, and then put him to grafs, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughness.

## CHAP. CXVIII.

*Of the Hoof-bound.*

**T**He Hoof-bound is nothing else but a shrinking in of the whole hoof in the upper part thereof, and at the heels, making the skin to stare above the hoof, and to grow over the same. It proceedeth from keeping the horses hoofs too dry in the stable, or from strait shooing, or from some unnatural heat after foundring; and the signs of the disease are, that the Horse will halt much, and his hoofs will be hot; and if you knock upon them with a Hammer, they will sound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feet be not hoof-bound, then the fore foot will be ever the lesser: and you shall also understand, that this disease of some Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take a pound of the Sward of Bacon, and a quarter of a pound of white Sope, and a handful of Balm, and a handful of Bay-leaves, and four or five branches of Rue, and stamp them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the cronet of the hoof very hot, suffering it so to abide the space of five or six days, and then renew it; but in no case let him tread in any wet place, and this will help him.

Others of the ancient Farriers use, first to pull off his shooes, and to shooe him with half-moon shooes, called Lunets, or Lunet, the shape whereof you shall see in another place; then raze both the quarters of the hoof with a drawing-knife, from the Cronet unto the sole of the foot, so deep that you may see the dew come forth: and if you make two Rases on each side, it shall be so much the better, and enlarge the hoof the more; that done, anoint all the hoof above, next to the Cronet round about, with the oyntment described before in the last Chapter of casting the hoof, continuing so to do every day once until he begin to amend; and let him be ridden upon some soft ground an hour or two every day once for the space of a month; and if he go not well at the months end, then take off the half shooes, and pare all the soles, frushes, and all so thin, that you may see the dew come forth, and tack on a whole shooe, and stop all the foot within with Hogs grease and bran molten together, and layd very hot to the



the foot, renewing it every day once the space of nine days, to the intent the sole may rise; but if this will do good, then take away the sole clean, and clap on a whole shooe, and stop the foot vvith Nettles and Salt brayed together; yet stop it not too hard, to the intent the sole may have liberty to rise; and let this be renevved every day once till the sole be grovvn again: and let him be shod with Lunet, and so sent to grass. Other Farriers use only to raze the hoof from the Cronet to the verge of the hoof in four or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt, and that will open the hoof. Others use only to open the horse exceeding much at the heels once a Week, and to shooe him with very wide open shooes, and then for a month or two to dravv him in some Cart, that being forced to set his foot hard on the ground, he may thereby stretch forth and widen his hoof. Novv to prevent this Sorance, it is good to anoint his hoofs with Neats-foot oyl, or Turpentine, and stop them underneath with Covv-dung.

## C H A P. CXIX.

*Of the Running, or Rotten Frush.*

**T**He Frush, which of some is called the Frog of the foot, is the tenderest part of the hoof toward the heel, and is fashion'd like a forked Arrow-head, being only that part of the foot which Farriers cut forth when they say they cut forth the sole of the horses foot. Novv this Frush breedeth many times a rottenness or corruption proceeding of humours, which come out of the Legs, by which the Leg is kept clean from Wind-galls, and all other humours or swellings, by means that the humours have passage that way: notwithstanding the mischief of this Sorance is greater than the benefit, because it maketh the horses foot so weak and tender, that he is not able to tread upon any hard ground. The signs of the Sorance are, the horse will halt much when he travelleth either upon loose stony ground, or upon stiff dirty ways, and goeth ever best upon green Swarth; but above all he halteth most when the passage of the humour is stopped with any Gravel gathered into the Frush, and not being stayed or stopped, it will continually run, and stink so extremely, that a man can hardly endure the sent of it; besides in some places it will look raw.

Novv



Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is thus ; First, take off the shoe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, so as you may see the water issue out of the raw places ; then tack on the shoe again, being first made wide and large enough ; that done, take of Soot one handful, of Salt as much, bruise them well together in a dish, and put thereto the Whites of three Eggs, and temper them all together ; and with a little Tow dipped therein stop all the Foot, and especially the Frush, and splent it in so, as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the space of seven days, and certainly it will Cure him. Now during the Cure, the Horse must rest, and come in no wet ; and at the seven days end leave stopping him, and ride him abroad, and always when he cometh in, let his fore foot be clean washed ; for there is no greater enemy unto the Sorance than gravel and dirt. Others of our latter Farriers only take off the shoe, and pare him well, and keep the fore clean both from dirt and his own dung, by washing it three or four times a day with Urine, and that only will Cure him as well as any Medicine.

## C H A P. CXX.

*An approved and certain Cure for the running and rotten Frush.*

**A**fter the Foot is cleansed, take a quart of old Urine, and boil it with a quarter of a pound of Allom beaten to powder, and keep it in a close Vessel by it self ; then take a good handful or two of green Nettles strong and keen, and spread them on some Plate or other Vessel, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven after household bread is drawn, then crush and bruise them into a very fine powder, then look what quantity of powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine powder, and mix them both very well together, then keep this powder in a close Gally-pot or Bladder.



Now, when you have occasion to use it, first wash the fore place with the Urine and Allom made very warm, and the sores thoroughly scoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine Rag of Lawn, Cambrick, or fine old Linnen, and strow or pounce the powder upon them, so much as may cover all the Sores, and thus do ever after travel, as once a day in the time of rest.



## C H A P. CXXI.

*Of the Evil-Hoofs.*

**H**Orses partly through a natural inclination, partly through the stoniness of the Soil wherein they are bred, and partly through mischance or ill-government, will have ill-favoured and naughty hoofs, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or else moulded awry, or such like; all which needs no signs, because of the apparent sign thereof: Then to amend them, the best Cure is, with a fine Rape file to smooth the wrinkles away, and to anoint the cronet of the hoof with a fat sward of Bacon rubbed in foot; then let the Horse stand for at least a fortnight upon his own dung, whereon you shall cast good store of VWater, only remove away the dung every night; and then presently after the change of the Moon, shoe the Horse with strong shoes, keeping the sole of the Foot by paring, so hollow as you can possible, and it will shape his hoof to your pleasure.

## C H A P. CXXII.

*Of Brittle Hoofs.*

**I**F a Horse either through the heat of his own nature, or in that he hath been either heated on his Foot by labour, or foundred, and evil Cured, shall happen to have his hoofs so brittle and short, that they will hardly bear a shoe: The signs whereof are, the hoof will be white and crumbling: Then the best Cure, according to the opinion of the best Farriers, is, to take Ox-dung and Vinegar, and mixing them very well together, warm them on the fire, and so bind it both under and above round about the Horses foot, and then lace on his boot of strong Leather, as is aforesaid in the Chapter of casting of the hoof. Other Farriers use to let the Horse stand upon his own dung, and anoint all the upper part of his hoof with the fat of Bacon sod and mixt with Turpentine: And this you must do every day once till you see his hoofs come to some toughness.

Others use to take Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Honey, of each alike; melt them well together, and being warm anoint all the hoof therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the Horses foot.



foot both under and above; and then put on his boot, dress him once a day, and once in two days let him stand four hours without his boot, that his hoof may grow as well hard as tough.

## C H A P. CXXIII.

*How to preserve Hoofs.*

**I**F you mean to preserve your Horses hoofs, either from any of the former Sorances, or any other grief whatsoever, you shall, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of Garlick, a little bundle of Rew, six ounces of Allom beaten into powder, two pound of old Grease, and the dung of an As; boil them all very well together, and stop your Horses hoof therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of Vinegar a quarter, of Tar half a pint, of Hogs-grease half a pound, of Oyl a pint, and a good handful of Wormwood, and four or five heads of Garlick; boil all these together to a thick ointment and therewith anoint all the Horses hoofs. Others use to boil Beans till they burst, and then temper them with Honey, and therewith anoint all the hoofs: or else wash all the Hoofs with warm Vinegar, and then anoint them with Hore-hound, Wormwood, and Grease molten together.

Other Farriers take of *Olibanum*, and new Wax, of each one ounce, of Dialthea and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Butter four ounces, of old Oyl six ounces, and of Sheeps-suet and Plaintain, of each a pound; boil them all well together, and therewith anoint the hoofs twice a day. Other Farriers use to anoint his hoofs with Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Honey warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the Foot well, and shoe him in the New of the Moon two or three days after the Change.


Others use to take Chalk and White-lead mingled together, or else Bark-dust and Honey mixt together, and being heated in a posnet, laid hot on the bare flesh, is most excellent to make any Hoof grow: To conclude, if a Horse stand upon his own dung, (being very well watered) so he do not lye in it, it is most soveraign for the preserving of hoofs.



## C H A P. CXXIV.

*For any hurt upon the Hoofs.*

**I**F your Horfe shall receive any hurt upon his Hoofs, either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any false treading, or crossing one Foot upon another, or by any bruise upon cogle stone, flint, or such like, then for the Cure thereof, you shall first stop the hoof with Honey and Vinegar mixt together, for the space of three days at the least; and then afterwards with leaves of Tamarisk well bruised and beaten together, until the Hoof be sound again.

 Other Farriers use only to stop the Hoof with Sheeps-grease and Horfe-dung mixt together, renewing it once a day until it be well.

## C H A P. CXXV.

*How to soften the Hoofs.*

**T**HE Hoofs of Horfes will by long and dry standing upon dry plaunchers, grow so hard, that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butterife: Besides, they will so take from the Horfe the sense and feeling of his Feet, that the Horfe will go very stiff and unnimble: Wherefore, when you shall perceive any such defect, which is best known by offering to pare the Hoof, then presently you shall take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unslakt lime, with as much strong lye as will make it soft like a Lenwick salve, then with that stop the Horfes Feet daily till they come to a convenient softness. Hot glowing Embers put upon the Hoof will soften it.

## C H A P. CXXVI.

*How to harden Hoofs.*

**A**S dry standing, and dry keeping doth harden the Hoofs too much, so wet and moist keeping, as continual going in Marrish grounds, or continual standing either upon dirt, or the Horfes own dung, or too hot stoppings will make a Horfes Hoofs too soft; inso-much that the Horfe through the tenderness thereof, will neither be



be able to go, nor bear any shoe, which you shall perceive by the soft and easie cutting of the Hoof. The manner then to harden and Cure them, is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to burn an old shoe sole, then seeth it well in Vinegar, and therewith bath the Horses Hoofs at the least twice a day, and it will harden them.

Other skilful Farriers use to take of the powder of Galls, or Bran, and of Salt, of each a handful; boil these well in a pottle of strong Vinegar, and therewith bath the Hoofs, and in a short space it will harden them.

## C H A P. CXXVII.

*Of the Malt-long of the Hoof.*

**T**HE Malt-long, or as some Farriers call it, the Malt-worm, is a Cankerous Sorance above the Hoof, just upon the Cronet, which will break out into knobs and branches, and out of the same will run a watrish sharp lye or humour, which will venom the whole Foot: as for the signs, they are the apparent sight of the Sorance, and the continual running out of the thin water. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, if it be in the Summer-time, to take Black-snails, and Bur-roots, and beating them well together, lay them unto the Sore, and renew them once in 24 hours. But if it be in the Winter, then take the scrapings of a Pans bottom, or of a Cauldron, and put thereto a handful of the inner Green-bark or Pills of the Elder-tree, and having beaten them well together in a mortar, lay it unto the Sore, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it. Others use to take Garlick, Pepper, and Honey, of each a like quantity, stamp them very well together, then anoint his Tongue with a little thereof, and then lay some to his Pastorns, and that will Cure the Sorance.

## C H A P. CXXVIII.

*How to skin any sore Foot.*

**T**HERE is nothing better to skin any sore Foot, of what accident or Sorance soever it proceed, then to take Turpentine simply of it self, and therewith every day to anoint the sore Foot, and it will  
not




not only gather skin but hoof also, if it be in a place where any need requireth. Also White-lead, and Train-oyl beaten together, will do the like.

### CHAP. CXXIX.

#### *Of goured or swoln Legs.*

**T**HE gource, or goured Legs, is an ill Sorance, being a grievous swelling in the nether part of the Legs, proceeding either from the melting of the Grease by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoid that Grease out in excrements, it falleth down into the limbs, and there breedeth this swelling; or else when a Horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set up, and taketh cold, in so much that the blood falleth down into his Legs and there congealeth and maketh his Legs to swell. To conclude, they do sometimes proceed from hard beating, in hard ways, in the Summer time, which first raiseth up Wind-galls, and then those Wind-galls offending the sinews, make them to swell, and this is the worst gourding, because ever for the most part lameness doth follow it.

The signs are, the Horses Legs will ever be most swoln when he standeth still in the House, and least when he is in travel, especially if he travel in much Water: and the swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small scabs, and in the end it will break out into the cratches. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handful above the knee, and then rope his Legs with a soft rope of hay wet in cold Water, and let it so remain a day and a night, and it will take away all the swelling. Other Farriers take two pound of Nerve-oyl, two pound of Black-Sope, a pound of Boars-grease and melt and boil all these well together; then strain it, and so let it cool; then when you have any need, anoint and chafe your Horses Legs therewith, and to make it sink in the better, anoint him first with Nerve-oyl, and hold a hot Iron against his Legs to make it melt, then use the other ointment in the same manner, which done, keep his Legs clean from dust by lapping a linnen rowler about them.

 Others of our latter Farriers use to take up the veins beneath the knee and let him bleed well: then knit the vein both above and below, and then anoint his Legs with this Ointment: Take of Frankincense, Rozen



Rozin and fresh Grease, of each a like quantity, and having boiled them well together, then strain it, and use it once a day as you shall have occasion, and it will heal any Gource whatsoever; only for the taking up of the veins, you may, if you will, forbear it, sith, if it be not done with great cunning it will make the Horse stiff ever after. See further in the new Additions, for any strain general noted thus &

## C H A P. CXXX.

*A certain and approved Cure for any Surded or swell'd Legs by what accident soever.*

**F**irst with a Fleam prick the sweld parts; then take a pint of Wine-les, an ounce of Cummin-seeds, and a handful or more of Wheat-flower, and boil them till they be thick, then apply this pultus very hot to the swel'd part, and renew it but once in 24 hours, and if this in two or three days draw it to an head, then launce it, and heal it either with a Plaister of Shoo-makers Wax, or else with the yolk of an Egg, Wheat-flower and Honey beaten together to a Salve.

But if it do not draw to any head, and yet the swelling continue, then take of Pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgins-wax, of Rozen half a pound, of juyce of Hyssop half an ounce, of *Galbanum* half an ounce, of Myrrh secondary half a pound, of *Bdellium Arabicum* half an ounce, of Deers Suet half a pound, of *Populeon* half an ounce, of the drops of Storax half an ounce, boil all these together in an earthen pot, and after it is cooled, take of Bitumen half a pound, of Armoniack an ounce and a half, and of Costus as much, beat these into fine powder, and then incorporate them with the other and boil them all over again, which done, pour the whole mixture into cold Water, and then roll it into several rolls plaister-wise; after spread this plaister upon Sheeps-leather, and fold it about the sweld member, and this will both assuage it, and give much strength to the sinews. You shall by no means remove this Plaister so long as it will stick on.

This Plaister is wonderful soverain, and of a singular use, for the Horse that is continually kept therewith, I mean, that hath it apply'd to his Limbs, ever when he cometh from travel; he shall never be troubled with sweld Legs, nor yet ever put out VVind-gall.

Now if you will neither go to this cost, nor endure this trouble,  
yet



yet would have your Horſe Cured of his infirmity, then know, there is not any thing better, or more approved, than continually both before and after Travel, and in the Houſe many times in the day, to lave and waſh your Horſes Legs, or other ſweld parts, with the coldeſt and cleareſt fountain Water that you can get, and ſometimes let the Horſe ſtand in ſome cold running ſtream the ſpace of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees and Cambrels, but in any caſe no farther.

This Medicine, how poor ſoever it look, is of much vertue, and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery: Only this you muſt take to your remembrance, that this application appertains not to impoſtumations, but unto ſtrains, and ſwellings, and bruifes, which are without much anguiſh.

## C H A P. CXXXI.

*Of the Farcy, or Faſhions.*

**T**HE Farcy (of our ignorant Smyths called the Faſhions) is of all outward Sorances the vileſt, the moſt poyſonous, infectious and the moſt dangerous, (being any whit neglected) or otherwiſe the moſt eaſie, and with the leaſt coſt or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping Ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongſt ſome one vein or other, and ſometimes alongſt divers or ſundry Veins, according to the ſtrength of the infections. It proceedeth ſometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, ſometimes from outward wounds or hurts receiv'd by cankerous or poyſonous instruments, as ruſty ſpurs, ruſty forks, biting of Dogs or Horſes, biting of Ticks, Hogs-lice, or ſuch like; ſometimes by the rubbing of Swine againſt the Legs of the Horſe, or by lying in the litter where Swine have lain, or by inter-fering, or hewing one leg upon another; but generally it proceedeth from an evil habit of the body, being ſurfeited by diſorderly and unruly Travel, whereby the blood being heated, the greaſe melted, and ſudden cold taken, there groweth ſuch obſtructions in the blood, and ſuch putrifaction in the body, that can in no way evacuate or avoid, but by theſe ſmall Knots, Puſtules, or Ulcers, which are ſo infectious, that as many Horſes as do gnaw or gnaw upon the Horſe infected will within one month have the ſame Diſeaſe, or if the Horſe infected do bite any other, he will infect him alſo; and this infection without preſent Cure is mortal, and will kill any Horſe:



Horse: therefore, vvhensoever you have any Horse troubled with this Sorance, see that you separate him from other horses to prevent the danger.

Novv for the signs, they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the Knots, which knots are never but accompanied vvith great swellings and ranklings, running along as the veins run, and dividing themselves as the branches of the vein divide, the number of the knots multiplying and encreasing until the body be universally covered over, or else that the number (if it be in a member) be utterly deformed and mis-shapen.


Now the cure, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, first let him bleed on the neck vein, and on both his spur veins, then give the Horse this drink: Take a Gallon of Water, and put into it a good handful of Rue, and a pound of Hemp-seed, both being first bruised in a mortar; then boyl them in Water till the one half be consumed, and give the horse this to drink in the morning fasting, being cold, for divers mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the ancient Farriers use first to let the horse bleed in that vein vvhere the Sorance first riseth, as nigh the fore place as may be, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every Knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his Body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the bigness of a mans forefinger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned, being little or much: That done, anoint every knot so burn'd with Hogs grease warm'd every day once until the cores be ready to fall; and in the mean time, prepare a good quantity of old Urine; and when you see the Cores ready to fall, then boyl the Urine, and put therein a little Copperas and Salt, and a few strong Nettles, and with that Water being warm wash out all the cores, and all the corruption; that done, fill every hole immediately with the powder of unslakt Lime, continuing thus to do every day once until the holes be closed up; and if any be more rank than others, fill those with Verdigrease; and during this cure, let the Horse be thinly dieted, that is to say, with straw and water only, unless it be now and then to give him a loaf of bread, or a little other Provender: for the lower he is kept in flesh, the sooner he will heal; and in any wise let his neck either be yoaked in an old bottomless pail, or else splented with staves in such fort, that he may not come to lick any of his sores; and the less he hath, the better will be his

Q 9 amendment



amendment. Now there be other later Farriers, which for the Sorance take a good quantity of Mistleto, Honey, and black Sope, and boyl them very well in old Urine, and being very warm, wash your Horfe all over therewith, every day once for the space of five or six days, and it will help it. Others use to cut the Horfe two inches long down the forehead, and upon it on the midst thereof on both sides two inches, and put thereto Atampin made of the inner rind of Elder bark which is green, and look that it lye cross the cut; for so it will destroy all the venomous humour in his Body; and it will heal him very perfectly, having been very oft approved. Others use to take a very sharp bodkin, and to thrust it cross-wise through the nether part of the Horses nose, even through the small gristle, so that he may bleed well; or else to let him blood in the neck-vein; then feel the knots, and as many as are soft, launce them, and let them run; then take strong Lye, Lime, and Allom, and mixing them well together, bath all the fore therewith, and it will cure him.

 Others take a sharp lance-knife, and in the top of the horses forehead, somewhat above his eyes, make a long slit even unto his skull; then with a blunt instrument for that purpose, loose the flesh from the scalp a good compass, then take carret roots cut into little thin round pieces, and put them between the skin and the skul; or, for want of carret-roots you may take red Dock-roots, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no means thrust out the roots: but if the roots do not stay in, then with a needle and silk stitch the wound together that it may hold in the Medicine; then once a day anoint the wound with fresh butter: This is held a very certain cure for the Farcy; for look how this Wound made thus shall rot, waist, and grow sound, so shall the Sorance break, dry up, and be healed; only the fault of the cure, is, that it will be somewhat long in healing, and is a foul eye-fore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which, after the putting in of roots, as is aforesaid, use to burn all the fore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burn the fore in the midst till the white matter come forth, then with a pair of pinsons pluck out the knots; this done, anoint all the fore place with Sope, and then dress him no more the space of four or five days, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong piss, with the which you must wash him every day, the piss being first made scalding hot, and rub the sores well until they begin



gin to bleed; then having dried all the fore places, throwv on the powder of unslakt Lime, or of Burnt Allom, which will heal better than Lime. Now if you see that in any of the fores through negligent dressing there riseth proud flesh high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the aforesaid povvder, then yon may burn any such place so fore or forer as you did at the first, and dress it as before. Novv there be other Farriers, which, when they see the Farcy to have been old and long gone, and that it is so far entred into one Member or other, that the member is disfigured, they will then first purge the Horse vvith some strong purgation, of vvhich you may find choice in a Chapter before written; and then under his Belly, put in one rowel either of hair or Leather; or on the pitch of his shoulder of his grieved Leg, (if it be before) or else in the stifling places, if his grief be behind, put in another Rowel, and so keep those two places together, with the issue in his Fore-head open, until the cure be finished; then with another hot Iron burn all his Leg down with long strikes, even from the body to the hoof, not above an inch one strike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a straws breadth and dravv your stroak ever dovvnvard with the hair, and burn him no deeper than that the skin may look brovv. Novv, vvhen by this practice you have cured the disease; if then the Member be unfashionable, or by Svvellings out of all form, then you shall lay unto the member a plaister made of Wine-lees, and Wheat-flower, and rovv it vvith a vvoolen Rowler, renevving it once in twenty four hours, till the member be assuaged; and this practice vvill heal any great swelled Leg, if it be applyed and continued vvith patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings, or cuttings of some ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny substance grovv about the member, vvhich the plaister afore-said will not resolve, then you shall take of Virgins Wax half a pound, of Myrrh one pound, of Raisins a pound, of *Galbanum* half a pound, of Costus six ounces, of Armoniack six ounces, of Swines grease two pound; put your Swines grease first in an earthen pot, and having placed it in a broad Cauldron full of water; then make a soft fire under it, to the end that your water may boyl; and vvhen you do perceive your Swines grease is almost melted, then shall you put in all the other Simples, except the Costus; and when they are all molten, which will ask five or six hours boyling at the least; then your Costus, which is a white Root, being beaten into fine povvder, you shall add to the fore-said things after it is taken from the fire, and incorpo-

Qq 2 rate



rate them all very well together, then make a plaister thereof upon a piece of Sheeps leather, somewhat bigger than the fore, and this Plaister without renewing will serve for at the least thirty days, with a very little refreshing, only you must once a day take it off, and rub his Leg very well for fear it itch, which may cause the horse to beat and stamp with his foot, and so rather increase than decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you do not rowl him too strait, for that is most hurtful. It shall not be amiss now and then to ride him into the Water, and walk him an hour after, then bringing him into the Stable, rub his Leg well; then warm his Plaister over a Chafing-dish of coals, and so lay it to again: and this practice in two or three months will take away any deformity of swelling, be the Member never so uncomely.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this Farcy, if it be but young, and especially if it be about the head or face of a Horse, will take only of *Aquavita* two spoonfuls, of the juyce of Garlick two spoonfuls, and of the juyce of Rew, or herb of Grace, two spoonfuls; mix them well together, then take Plegants or round balls of Flax, and steep them therein, and then stop them hard into the horses Ears; then take a needle and thred, and stitch the tips of his two ears together, by means whereof he cannot shake out the Medicine, and use the horse thus three several mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy, as hath been oft proved.

✂ Other Farriers use to take Drag-worts, or Ground-fel: and beat it well in a mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard into the Horses ears, and so either stitch them together, or with a broad inckle bind them up, renewing it once in fourteen hours for three or four dressings, and it will heal any reasonable Farcy.

Others use to anoint all the sores either with Tansey and Verjuyce boyled together; or else with Boars greafe very hot, and that will kill it. Others use first to wash the sores with old Urine, then take the powder of Glas, Brimstone and Hogs greafe well stamped and beaten together; then opening, and flitting the knots, anoint them all therewith, and it will cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the Horse blood, if it be at the beginning of the disease, or else not; and then to burn all the knots as is aforesaid, and then to heal the burnings with Tar, Oyl and Honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of Malmsey, two or three spoonfuls of the powder Diapente: or else give him four ounces of the powder of Wall-wort, or Dan-wort, with a pint and a half of Malmsey three days together  
afte



after that take an ounce of Aloes, one ounce of Centaury, one ounce of Opoponax, beat them all into fine powder, and give them him to drink in a pint and a half of Malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the aforesaid herb called Wall-wort, or Dan-wort, have been sodden: Use to ride him oft until he sweat, and when the Disease is killed, turn him to Grass: for running in the open Air is very wholsom.

There be others, which take black Sope, Arsnick, unslakt Lime, Verdigrease, and Red Lead, work all these well together, and opening the knots, dress them therewith till you see them begin to dry up and die. Others open the knots with a hot Iron, and then take black Sope and great Bay Salt beaten together, and half so much as of them, of Verdigrease, and boyl the Verdigrease with fresh grease, and then take a faucerful of Mustard, and put them all together, and dress the fores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quick-silver, and put it into a bladder, with two spoonfuls of the juyce of Oranges or Lemmons, and shake them together to cool the Quick-silver: then take half a pound of fresh Hogs grease, and Verdigrease an ounce; put all these in a trend dish, and work them well together: then anoint the knots with this Oyntment till they rot: then let them out with a sharp Knife, and anoint them still, and put into his ears the juyce of Ragweed, and the fores will dry up. This Medicine is very well approved. Others take black Sope, Mustard made of Wine-Vinegar, and Red Lead; mix all these together, and anoint the vein all along, holding a hot Iron close to the fore, to make the Oyntment strike in, and do thus once a day until the fores dry up. Other Farriers take the juyce of Hemlock a good quantity, and dipping tow therein, stop his hears therewith; then open all the knots and thrust in Salt. Lastly, give him to drink sweet wort mixt with Fennel and Treacle. Other Farriers take the Butter Bur, and being dried and beaten to powder, strew it upon the knots after they have been opened, and then give two or three spoonfuls of the same powder with a pint of Malmsey to drink, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is also exceeding good for all manner of Ulcers; the root is strong in smell, and bitter in taste.

Others take Sulphur, Orpiment unslakt Lime, and mixing them together, put it into the knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, anoint him with Bole-armony made into powder, and incorporated with strong Vinegar, the juyce of Housleek, and of white Leeks



Leeks and Solatro. Other Farriers, after they have let the Horſe blood, will boyl in Vinegar, Bean-flower and Swines Greafe, then add a pretty quantity of Oyl, and then ſtrain it, and then add one part of Aloes, and two of Brimſtone, and boyl it a little : then being warm, anoint all the fore places therewith, or elſe anoint them twice a day with the juyce of Smallage, and the yolks of Eggs beaten together.

There be other Farriers which take two Ounces of Oyl de Bay, one of Euforbium, and two ounces of Arſnick, and mixing them together, anoint the ſores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all theſe many many Receipts, of which not any but have been approved to be very good, yet theſe two which I ſhall now rehearſe, I have ever found to be the moſt excellent for any manner of Farcy whatſoever, whether it be (as our ſimple Smiths term it) a dry Farcy, a wet or watery Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cauſe; only ſome Horſes not having ſuch flux of humours in them as others have, the Knots will be unwilling to break ; then, ſay they, it is a dry Farcy. Others of the contrary part will break as faſt as the Knots ariſe, and run filthy matter, then they call it a watery Farcy. Others will ſpread in many parts of the Body, yet not break, but as it were move betwixt the ſkin and the fleſh, but that they call a Running Farcy.

Now all theſe are but one Farcy, and having but one certain Cure, which is this. Firſt, with diligent heed mark upon what principal vein of the Horſes Body the Knots do ariſe, and note how they ſpread and run, then if the Farcy be divided into ſundry Branches, according as the vein doth divide, you ſhall take the laſt knot of every branch, which for the moſt part will be hard, and not come to rottenneſs; and then ſlit them, and fill them with your Knife's point full of white Mercury : then thoſe which you find to be rotten, let the matter forth, and anoint them with black Sope and Mercury mixt together ; then within a day or two you ſhall ſee thoſe which you dreſs with Mercury ſimple, to have their cores fall out ; and the reſt vvhich you dreſs vvith black Sope vvill dry up : then anoint them all vvith freſh Butter molten till they be vvhole. Novv if you perceive any nev v knots to ariſe, then you ſhall dreſs them likewiſe vvith Mercury ſimple, as vv as ſaid before, and not leave any uncured. Novv if the Farcy be not very contagious, but as it vv ere nev vly begun, then if you only take black Sope and Mercury, as before ſaid, and



and anointing your finger and your thumb therewith, do but nip and bruise every knot, and within two or three days after they will dry up and heal. But if the Farcy be foul and desperate, that is to say, either universally spread over the Body, or so gotten into any Limb or Member, and the Limb is deformed, and hath lost his proportion, so that a man can neither judge which way the veins run, nor in what part the knots are most venomous, because that healing one, two new ones will arise.

In this same case, you shall first give your horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his Body, of all which a pint of Muskadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with half a pint of the oyl of Oats, is the most sovereign: then you shall take a pennyworth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pigeons dung, and twelve penny worth of white Mercury; mix all these very well together, and make them into a salve; then with a slice daub it all over the sore place, leaving no part of the member uncovered; then heating a bar of Iron red hot, hold it so near that it may dry the salve upon the sore: then lay more fresh salve on, and dry in like manner, and so let it rest until it fall off, and it will kill any Farcy whatsoever, at the first or second dressing. There be others which will stop the knots with the powder of Verdigrease and of Arsnick mixt together, or else wash the sores with *Aqua fortis*, but they are neither so good as the other before rehearsed.

## C H A P. CXXXII.

*Of the Canker in any part of the Body.*

**A** Canker is a poysonous creeping Ulcer, fretting and gnawing the flesh a great breadth, whose beginning is knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and spreadeth it self into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one Wound or filthy sore, from whence there runneth a thin sharp lye, which galleth off the skin wheresoever it goes, and so both encreaseth the Ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by rankness of keeping, or else by too extreme poverty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with sharp or salt humours, then it causeth more painful and grievous exulceration. It also may proceed from some loathsome Wound, which is nether clean kept nor well drest, but in such  
sort,




fort, that the corrupt matter thereof poysoneth the other clean parts  
 of the body. For signs of this Sorance, there needeth no more but  
 the description already mentioned. And for the cure, according to  
 the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is, first to let the Horse  
 blood in those veins which are next the sore, and make him bleed  
 well; then take of Allom half a pound, of green Copperas as much,  
 of white Copperas one quartern, and a good handful of Salt, boyl  
 all these things together in fair running Water, from a Pottle to a  
 Quart: and this Water being warm, wash the sore therewith with a  
 clout, and then sprinkle thereon the povvder of unslakt Lime, con-  
 tinuing so to do every day once the space of fifteen days; and if you  
 see that the Lime do not mortifie the rank flesh, and keep it from  
 spreading any further, then take of Sope half a pound, of Quick-  
 silver half an ounce, and beat them together in a pot till the Quick-  
 silver be so well mingled with the Sope, as you can perceive no  
 Quick-silver in it; then with an iron slice or splatter, after that you  
 have washed the Sore with the strong Water aforesaid, cover the  
 Wound with this oyntment, continuing thus to do every day once  
 until the Canker leave spreading abroad. And if it leave spreading,  
 and that you see the rank flesh is well mortified, and that the edges  
 begin to gather a skin, then after the washing dress it with Lime,  
 as before, continuing so to do until it be whole; and in the dressing,  
 suffer no filth that comes out of the sore to remain upon any whole  
 place about, but wipe it clean away, or else wash it away with warm  
 Water; and let the Horse during this Cure, be as thinly dyeted as  
 may be, and thoroughly exercised. Now if this Cankerous Ulcer  
 happen to be in the tale of a Horse, as it is often seen, and which you  
 shall perceive as well by the falling away of the hairs, as also by the  
 Wound, then you shall make a bolster of soft cloth or sponge, and  
 wet it with Vinegar both within and without, and so bind it on fast  
 to the sore; and always when it vvaxes dry, you must wet it again;  
 do thus tvvice or thrice a day, if it be done oftner it is better; so shall  
 you continue for three or four days, and then heal up as you heal an  
 ordinary Wound; that is, vvith Hogs greafe and Turpentine molten  
 together, or such like. There be other Farriers, which for the  
 Canker on the body do take an ounce of the juyce of the root of  
 Affedely, three ounces of unslakt Lime, tvvo ounces of Orpiment,  
 Arsnick, put this in an earthen Vessel close stopt, and either boyl  
 or bake it in an Oven till it come to a povvder; then first vvash the  
 sore with strong Vinegar, and after strevv this povvder thereon.

Others




Others use to take Garlick, and beat it in a mortar with Swines greafe till it come to a Salve, and then having washt the sore either with Vinegar, Allom-water, Copperas-water, or old Urine, anoint it once or twice a day with it till it be whole. Other Farriers take the herb Mullen, and bruise it, and mix it with Salt and Verdigrease, and dress the sore therewith Morning and Evening for the space of three or four days; then use the same salve again as long without Verdigrease; then lastly use the herb alone: but if at any time you see it do begin to Wax raw, then begin again, as is aforesaid, and ever before you anoint, wash it first with Vinegar and Grease mixt together. Others take Savin, Bay-salt, and Rue stampd with Barrows grease, and anoint the sore therewith, and when the ill humors are kill'd (which you shall know by the whiteness) then heal it with Tar, Oyl, and Honey mixt together.

Lastly, (and which I hold the best) take Vinegar, Ginger, and Allom, and mix them together till they come to a Salve, and with it anoint the sore, and it will both kill the Poyson, and heal the Ulcer. 

## C H A P. CXXXIII.

*Of the Fistula.*

**A** Fistula is a deep, hollow, crooked, mattering Ulcer, and for the most part, commonly a great deal straighter at the mouth than at the bottom, being ingendred in some Wound, Bruise, Sore, or Canker, not thoroughly healed. The signs to know it are, the hollownes of the Sore descending downward from the Orifice, and the thinness of the Matter which issueth from the same; besides, the crookedness which you shall find in the Ulcer, when you search it.

Now for the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: First search the bottom thereof with a Goose or Swans quill, or with a small Rod well covered with a fine Linnen cloth; and having found the bottom thereof, cut it so large with a Razor, that the Matter may have free passage downwards; but take heed in Launcing it, that you cut not any master Sinew, or main Tendon: then having stanchd the blood either with Swines dung, or such like, take of good Honey a pint, of Verdigrease one ounce, and boil them well together upon a soft fire three quarters of 

Rr

an



an hour; then having cleansed the sore by tying a tent of flax or fine Linnen cloth to the point of your quill, with a thred draw it softly into the Wound: then cut off your quill or feather so long that you may take good hold in the nether end of the tent, which then shall come out at the bottom of your sore: then dip another tent in the aforefaid Salve, and then with a needle and thred make fast your tent to your first clout, at the upper end thereof, then draw out your first tent downward, so shall you draw your tent with the Medicine easily into the Wound, and your first tent will have cleansed the sore very clean; and if the matter do abound much, then it shall be good to dress him twice a day: but you must not dress him with this Medicine no more but one day, and afterward you shall dress him with this Medicine following: take of Turpentine, of Swines-grease, of Honey, and Sheeps fuet, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, and make a salve thereof, wherewith you shall dress your sore four days, for one day that you dress him with the former Medicine made of Honey and Verdigrease; and take heed that you make your tent of very soft Linnen cloth, and fine flax: and let not your tent be too big after the first and second time dressing, but presently after the first dressing you must cover the sore place, and round about the same, with this Pultus here following.

First, Take two Gallons of fair Water, and having boiled and scum'd it so long till you have perfectly cleansed it of all corruption, then take two or three handfuls of Mallows, and as much of Violet leaves, and two or three of Oat-meal, and having boiled all these three things well in your former prepared Water, you shall add thereto of Hogs-wort, and fresh Butter, of each a pound; then shall you let it boil so long till it become thick, like paste or pap, and then apply it hot to the sore, and take heed that in opening this sore you let not any hair strike into it; and on the other side, that you keep it not too hot: And if this Fistula be in the Horses Withers, you must take heed that you tye his head to the rack, so as he may neither lye down, nor put his head lower than his manger: for if you suffer him to feed on the ground when he hath any grievous sore in his Withers, it shall hardly be possible ever to Cure him; but if you perceive the Wound to heal apace, and that it matter but a little, then shall it be enough to dress him once aday: and also it shall be good, take great heed, that you make not your tent too big, and see that you use your Pultus till it be perfectly Cured. Now there be



be others of the ancient Farriers, which use for this Cure, first to search the depth of the Fistula either with a quill, or with some other Instrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way: for unless you find the bottom of it, it will be very hard to Cure; and having found the bottom, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottom, so wide, that you may thrust in your finger to feel whether there be any bone or else gristle perished, or spongy, or loose flesh, which must be gotten out; and then tent it with a tent of flax dipped in this Ointment: Take of Myrrhe, of Aloes, and of Sarcocolla, of each one ounce, of good Honey six ounces, and of Verdigrease two ounces: and melt all these on a gentle fire, and make them into a Salve; then being look-warm, dress the tent therewith, and bolster the tent with a bolster of flax, and if it be in such a place as the tent cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole two ends of a Shoemakers thred right over the bolster, to keep in the tent, which ends may hang there, as two laces to tye and untye at your pleasure, renewing the tent every day once until the sore leave mattering, and then make the tent every day lesser and lesser until it be whole: for you shall understand, that this Salve doth purge this Fistula of putrefaction, incarnateth and breedeth flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you have done as aforesaid, then you shall close it up by sprinkling thereon a little unslakt Lime; but if the Fistula be in such a place, as you can neither cut against the bottom, nor tye the same, then there is no remedy, but every time you dress it, to pour into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or siringe, some strong white Copperas water, or some Allom water, so that it may go down to the bottom, and dry up the filthy matter: and this you may do twice a day at least until it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers, which use this Cure, after they have searched the Fistula to the bottom, to take a pottle of White-Wine Vinegar, of Camphire half an ounce, of Mercury precipitate half an ounce, of green Treacle three ounces, of Red Sage an handful, of Yarrow and Rib-wort of each an handful, of Honey half a pint, of Boars-grease half a pint, boil all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the Wound. Then to heal up the same, you shall take Oyl of Roses, Virgins Wax and Rozen, of each a like quantity,

R r 2



tity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the Gum of Ivy and Dears suet as much, boil these together unto a Salve, and then dress the fore therewith until it be whole; observing ever, both in this Cure, and all the rest, that as soon as you have put in your Tent, to clap a Plaister over it of Pitch, Rozen, Mastick, Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evil humors, and also keep in the Tent from falling out. Now if the Fistula be in or about the head of the Horse, then you shall take the juyce of Housleek, and dip therein a lock of Wool, and put it into the Horses ears, and it will stay the Inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you shall cut away all the rotten and false flesh, and then bath it well with the grounds of Ale made warm, and then wipe the blood clean away: then take Butter, Rozen, and Frankincense a little, and boil them all together, and boiling hot pour it into the Wound, and then clap on the Plaister; do thus once a day till the Horse be whole. Now if there be any Inflammation behind the Horses ears, or that it grow to any Impostumation in that place, then you shall boil the roots of Mallows in Water till they wax tender, then bruise them, and strain out the Water clean, and being warm, apply it to the fore, and it will heal it.

There be other ancient and skilful Farriers, which for the general Fistula use a prevention thereof, to take Honey and Sheeps suet, and making it scalding hot, to scald the fore extremely therewith upon the first swelling, and it will keep the Fistula that it shall not breed; but if it breed, then you shall Launce it in the nethermost part, and put into it as much Mercury *Sublimatum* as a pease, being first abated with Sallet-oyl, and laid on with a Feather; after that take of Verdigrease four penny-worth, of Vitriol a half penny-worth, of Red Lead three penny-worth, beat these together, and every day wash the Wound with Copperas Water, made with Copperas and Elder leaves in Summer, and with the inner green bark in Winter; after the washing take the powder, and put it on the fore, and after it drop on a little Oyl.

✂ Other Farriers take the outermost green shells of Wal-nuts, and put them in a Tub, strowing three or four handfuls of bay Salt upon them, some in the bottom, some in the midst, and some on the top, and so keep them all the year; and when you will use them, take a pint of them, a little bay Salt, and half a quarter of a pound of black Sope, with half a spoonful of May Butter, (and for want thereof, other



other Butter) and mix and incorporate them together; and then spread it on the sore, or Tent the sore therewith; but two hours before you lay it on, anoint the place with *Venice Turpentine*, and do thus till the *Fistula* be whole.

Other Farriers take *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, which is made of Honey a pint, Vinegar half a pint, Allom a quarter of a pound, and Verdigrease one ounce and a half; and seeth them all together till they be thick, and of a tauny colour; this is called *Egyptiacum*, and to make it the strongest way, is to put in of Mercury *Sublimatum* one ounce made into powder, and of Arsnick two scruples, and boil it together; with either of these, especially the stronger, dresse any *Fistula*, Canker, or foul old Ulcer whatsoever, and it will kill it; and the weaker of these, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arsnick, may be applied to the *Fistula* in the mouth of a Horse. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midst of well Leavened bread slack baked three ounces, of Nenin ten drams, mingle them together with a little Rose-water, and make Tents thereof, and dry them upon a Tile, and at your pleasure Tent your *Fistula* therewith, and it will assuredly kill it. Others take strong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allom, and Mercury, and seeth them together, and squirt it into a *Fistula*, and it will kill it at the bottom, and when you mean to dry up the *Fistula*, take red Wine, Goats-dung, and Bean-flower, and seeth them together, and apply it to the *Fistula*, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to sink down the swelling of a *Fistula*, first of all sear it with a drawing Iron in this proportion †, and then take Rosin, Sheeps suet, and Brimstone, and boil them together, and lay it upon a *Fistula* very hot with a cloth, and it will sink down the swelling. It is also most excellent to take away a Wind-gall, if it be laid on after the Wind-gall is prickt, but not too hot, but very reasonable, and it will keep it also very clean.

There be other Farriers, which for a *Fistula* take Verdigrease, Butter and Salt melted together, and pour it scalding hot into the Sore; and use this till all the Flesh look red; then Tent it with Verdigrease, burnt Allom, Wheat-flower, and the yolks of Eggs well beaten and mingled together; Last of all, skin it with Barm and Soot mixt together.



## C H A P. CXXXIV.

*A rare and true approved Medicine to Cure any Fistula, or hollow Impostumation whatsoever.*

**T**AKE a pint of the strongest Vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mix therewith the lome of a clay Wall, which hath not any Lime in it, but by no means do not pick out the chopt straws or hay that is in the lome, but boil them all together till it come to a Salve: then being reasonably hot, spread it over all the swell'd place, and over every part which you shall feel hard: and you shall thus do twice a day, and it will not only ripen and break the hollow Ulcer, but also search it to the bottom and heal it. This Medicine Cureth any sore back whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gall'd or bruised.

## C H A P. CXXXV.

*Of the Ambury.*

**A**N Ambury is a great spungy Wart full of blood, which may grow upon any part of the Horses body, chiefly about the Eyebrows, Nostrils, or Privy-parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks stone. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to tye about with a thred or hair so hard as you can pull it, and the thred will eat in by little and little, in such fort as within seven or eight days it will fall away of it self; and if it be so flat, that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and so deep as you leave none of the root behind, and then dry it up with the powder of Verdigrase, but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eat out the core with the powder of Resalger, or Mercury, and then to stop the hole with flax dipt in the white of an Egg, for a day or two: and lastly, to dry it up with the powder of unslakt Lime, and Honey, as is before taught. Other Farriers, in stead of tying the Wart with a thred, do tye it with some Horse hair: and that is a great deal the better, and it will rot it off sooner, and faster.



## C H A P. CXXXVI.

*Of the Cords.*

THE Cords is a certain string, which cometh from the Shackle-vein to the Gristle in the Nose, and between the Lip, the length of an Almond; or there be two strings like threds, which lye above the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and go like a small cord through the body to the nostrils, making a Horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall also; and it is a Disease very much incident to many young Horses. The signs are, an apparent stiff going, and much stumbling, without any outward or visible Sorance; the Cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers, to take the end of a crooked Harts-horn that is sharp, put it under the cords, and twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horse be constrained to lift up his Foot; then cut the Cord asunder: and put a little Salt into the issue, or cut it first at the Knee, then at the end of his nose, and so draw it upward a span length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the Horse blood in the vein that descendeth in the inside of the Leg, by the Brest, and take away at least a pottle of blood, and after seven days wash him with Beef-broth, and it will heal him.

Other Farriers take Mustard, *Aquavita*, and Sallet-oyl, and boil them on the Coals, and make a plaister, and bind to a place that is grieved, and it will heal him.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warm, bath his Legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet hay-ropes, and it will make the Horse perfectly sound.

## C H A P. CXXXVII.

*Of the String-halt.*

THE String-halt, of some called the *Mary hinchcho*, is a suddain twitching up of the Horses hinder Legs, as if he did tread upon needles, and were not able to indure his Feet upon the ground; the signs whereof be an apparent ill-favoured manner of halting most visible to the Eye. And the Cure is, to take up the middle vain above the Thigh, and underneath the same, then under the said vein there



There lies a string, which string must be cut away: and then a noint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well, and go well.

## C H A P. CXXXVIII.

*Of a Horse that is Spur-gall'd.*

**I**F a Horse by the indiscretion of an Evil Rider, be spur-gall'd, which is a Disease most plain both to be felt and seen: then the Cure is, either to bath it with Urine and Salt mixt together, or with Water and Salt, or with warm Vinegar, or else bind unto the place the crops of leaves of Nettles stamped; and any of these will Cure him.

## C H A P. CXXXIX.

*Of Wounds in general.*

**W**OUNDS, according to the opinion of all Farriers, is a solution, division, or parting of the whole: for if there be no such solution, or division then it is rather called a Bruise than a Wound; and therefore, Wounds are most commonly made with sharp or piercing Weapons, and bruises with blunt weapons: notwithstanding, if by such blunt weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken, then it is to be called a Wound, as well as the other, and these wounds do proceed from some stroak, prick, or violent accident. Now of Wounds, some be hollow, and some be deep and hollow: Again, some Wounds chance in fleshy parts, and some in boney and sinewy places; and those which chance in the fleshy parts, though they be very deep, yet they be not so dangerous as the others, and therefore I will speak first of the most dangerous. If then a Horse have a wound newly made, either in his Head, or in any other place which is full of Sinews, Bones or Gristles, then, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the Wound well with White-Wine warmed, and keep it ever whilst you are in dressing it, covered with cloths wet in warm White-Wine: that done, you shall search the bottom of the wound with a probe or small instrument of Steel made for the purpose, suffering the Wound to take as little wind or air as you can possible: then having found the depth, stop the hole close with a clout until your salve be ready: then take of Turpentine, *Mel-rosatum*, Oyl of Roses, of each a quarter,



tern, and a little unwrought Wax, and melt them together, stirring them continually, that they may be well mingled together; and if the Wound be a cut, make an handfom roll or round plegant of soft Tow, so long and so big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the mouth of the Wound; then make another roll or plegant somewhat bigger, to fill up the rest of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both these rolls be anointed with the ointment afore-said, made luke-warm: Only this you must ever observe, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conveniently, to stitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimson silk; for that will make it heal the sooner, and make the scar less. But if the hurt be like an hole made with some prick, then make a stiff tent either of Tow or Lint, such an one as may reach the bottom, anointed with the afore-said Ointment, and bolster the same with a little Tow; and over both this and the other, or any wound whatsoever, as soon as your rowels, plegnants or tents are put in, you shall clap a sticking plaster made of Pitch, Rosin, Mastick and Turpentine, melted together, as hath been before taught, both to keep in your salve, and to comfort the fore. Now if the mouth of the wound be not wide enough, so as the matter may easily run forth, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hurting any sinew, then give it a pretty slit from the mouth downward, that the matter may have the freer passage; and in any wise, have an especial regard that the tent may be continually kept in by one means or other, and also that it may not be drowned within the wound, but by tying some thread about the upper end thereof, so kept, that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the hole be deep, and in such a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as big as the hole of a dry sponge that was never wet, so long that it may reach the bottom; and the tent being made somewhat full, with continual turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it down, and then dress the wound with this twice a day, cleansing the wound every time with a little White wine, luke warm; for the sponge anointed with the ointment afore-said, will both draw and suck up all the filthy matter, and make it so fair within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heal, so make your tent every day lesser and lesser, until it be ready to close up; and never leave tenting it, so long as it will receive a tent, be it never so short; for hasty healing of wounds breedeth Fistula's, which properly be old fores, and therefore must be healed like Fistula's. Now if the

S. f. wound



wound proceed from any ancient impostumation, then you shall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores, put therein a little bay Salt, and a little whole Saffron, and so roast them in the hot Embers: then plaster-wise lay them all hot on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the upper skin of the wound be putrefied, and you would have it away, then make a plaster of Cows dung sod in milk, and clap it to for four and twenty hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the wound. Others use generally for any cure whatsoever, to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tar and black Sope, of each half as much, and a little Turpentine; boil all but the Sope together, then when you take it off the fire, put in the Sope, and with this ointment dress any cut, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers use only to take Hogs greafe and Venice Turpentine and to melt them together, and it will heal any Wound. Other Farriers take eight drams of Turpentine, four drams of new Virgins wax; melt them in a pewter vessel, and stir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whilest they be hot, pour into them half a pint of white Wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and anoint your hands with Oil of Roses, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together, after that put them into the pewter vessel again, then put to them half an ounce of the gum of Fir-tree, and three drams of the juice of Betony, then seeth them well together until the juice of Betony be wasted, then put to it three drams of Womans milk, or the milk of a red Cow, and seeth them once again until the milk be wasted; and then put it in a close pot or glass, and with this dress any wound whatsoever, and it will heal it. Others use to take Rosemary, and dry it in the shadow, and beat it to powder, then wash the wound with Vinegar, or the Urine of a child, and strew thereon the aforesaid powder, and it will heal an indifferent Wound.

Other Farriers take Worm-wood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, *Olibanum*, beat them all into fine powder, then take Wax and Barrows greafe, and boil them on a soft fire until they be as thick as any ointment or Salve; with this dress any wound and it will heal it. Others use to take the tops of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them well in a mortar till they come to a Salve, and it will dry and heal a Wound. Now the powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine simply of it self, will dry up and skin any Wound.



Wound. Take Turpentine, Honey, Hogs greafe, Wax and Sheeps fuet of each alike; melt them well together to a salve, and they will heal any wound. Now if a Horse be goared upon a stake, then you shall cast him, and pour into the wound Butter scalding hot, and so let him lie till it be gone down into the bottom; and do thus once a day till the wound be whole. If you desire to keep a wound open, put into it the Powder of green Copperas, and it will do it; but if you intend to heal it speedily, then wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together to a Salve will do it, dressing the wound once a day therewith.

## C H A P. CXL.

*Of an hurt with an Arrow.*

**I**F a Horse be shot or hurt with an Arrow, tent the hole only with Hogs greafe and Turpentine molten together, and renew it once a day until the wound be whole.

## C H A P. CXLI.

*Of the healing of any old Sore or Ulcer.*

**O**Ld Ulcers or Sores are of three kinds; the first deep, hollow and crooked, and they be called Fistulaes; the second broad and shallow, but most spreading and encreasing, and they be called Cankers; and the last broad, deep, black about the sides and bottom, yet not much encreasing, although not at all healing, and they be called old Sores or Ulcers: They proceed either from some great Bruise, Wound, or Impostume, which is either venomd or abused in healing by contrary salves; or through the flux and abundance of humors flowing down to those parts, through the negligence of a most unskilful Farrier. The signs are, the long continuance of the sore, the thinness of the matter which issueth away, and the blackness of the sore, which is ever full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, it is thus: First cleanse the sore well with white Wine; then take Copperas and the leaves of Lilies, beat them well in a mortar with Swines greafe till it come to a perfect Salve, and lay, it upon the sore with flax, and then cover it with a plaster as in



case of wounds, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough Horse-dung, and mix it very well together with Pepper, and the white of an Egg, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day, till the Ulcer be cured.

Other Farriers strew upon the sore the powder of Galls, and that will dry it up.

Others scald it once a day with hot Oil-Olive, and that will heal it.

#### C H A P. CXLII.

*A most certain and approved Cure for the healing of any old Ulcer  
whatsoever.*

**T**AKE Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, green Copperas, and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, or Myrrh, double so much as of any one of the other; beat all to powder, then burn it on a Chafing-dish and coals, but let it not flame; then, as the smoak ariseth, take a good handful of Lint, or fine Hurds, and hold it over the smoak, so that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it; then, when it is thoroughly well perfumed, put the Lint or Hurds into a very close box, and so keep it.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore with Urine or Vinegar, made warm, then dry it; and lastly, lay on some of this Lint or Hurds; and thus do twice a day, and it is a speedy and most infallible cure.

#### C H A P. CXLIII.

*Of Bruisings, or Swellings.*

**A**LL Bruisings and Swellings come unto an Horse, either by accident, or by some blow, rush, pinch, or outward venoming; or else naturally, as through the flux of Blood, or through the abundance of Wind. The signs are the sightly appearance, in what place or member soever they be: And the first, which are those which come by accident, are properly called Bruisings, or Swellings; and the other, if they do rot or corrode, and so turn to matter, are called Impostumes.

Now for the general Cure of any Bruise or Swelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take of dry Pitch,

of



of Gum, of each an ounce; of *Galbanum*, of Lime, of each four ounces, of Bitumen two ounces, of Wax three ounces; melt and boil them very well together, then anoint the sore place therewith once a day, and it will heal it. But if the swelling proceed only from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of Verjuice, one pint of Barm, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boil them very well together, then bind the Hay to the swelling very hot, and after pour on the Liquor: Do thus three or four days together, and it will take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the tops of Worm-wood, Pellitory of the Wall, Branck-Urine, beat them well together with Swines grease, then seeth them; then add a pretty quantity of Honey, Linseed-oil and Wheat-meal; then stir it over the fire, till all again be sodden together; then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day, till the swelling be gone.

Other Farriers use first to prick the swelling with a Fleam, then take of Wine-lees a pint, as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and an ounce of Cummin, boil them together, and lay this somewhat warm unto it, renewing it every day once, until the swelling either depart, or else come to an head; which if it do not, then launce it, and heal it according to a wound.


Other Farriers take of Rosin, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each half a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then strain them, and add of Myrrh, Sarcocol, and the flower of Fenugreek, and of Linseed, of each an ounce; incorporate them all together, and then make it thick like a Salve with the meal of Lupins, and lay it to the swelling, and it will assuage it.

Other Farriers take of *Galbanum*, and of Ceruss, of each an ounce, of Oil two ounces, and of Wax three ounces, mix them together over a soft fire; and when they are brought to a Salve, then lay it to the swelling, and it will assuage.

If you take only rotten Litter, or Hay boiled in strong Urine, and apply it daily unto any swelling, it will take it away. Now if the swelling be upon the legs, and come by any strain, then you shall take of Nerve-oil one pound, of black Soap one pound, of Boar's-grease half a pound, melt and boil them all well together, then strain it, and let it cool; then when occasion serveth, anoint and chafe your Horse's legs therewith, holding an hot Iron near thereunto, to make the Ointment enter in the better; then rope up his legs, and keep them clean from dust or dirt. But if the swelling



swelling be upon any part of the back or body, then take of Honey and Tallow of each alike, and boil them together, then spread it on a cloth and lay it on the swoln place, and let it there stick till it fall away of it self. Now if the swelling proceed from any windy cause, and so appear only in the Horses belly, then you shall take a sharp pointed Knife or Bodkin, and arm it so with some stay that it go not too deep for piercing his guts: then strike him therewith through the skin into his body before the hollow place of the Haunch bone, half a foot beneath the back bone, and the Wind will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow quill therein, or some feather to keep it open a while, the wind will avoid the better, then heal it up again.

It is also very good to rake the Horse, and to ride him up and down a little: but if the swelling be under the Horses jaws, or about any part of his head, then you shall take his own dung hot as soon as he makes it, and with a cloth bind it fast thereto, renewing it twice a day till the swelling be gone. See further in the new additions for the Fistula, marked thus, .

#### C H A P. CXLIV.

*Of Impostumes, and first how to ripen them.*

**I**mpostumes are a gathering and knitting together of many and most corrupt humors in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell extremely, and growing into such violent inflammation, that in the end they rot and break out into foul, mattery and running sores; they commonly proceed either from corruption of food, or corruption of blood; they are at the first appearance, very hard, and very sore: which hardness is the principal sign that they will rot. And of these impostumes, some be hot impostumes, and some be cold; yet forasmuch as every impostume must first be ripened, and brought to matter before it can be healed, we will first speak of the ripening of them. If therefore you would ripen any impostume, (according to the opinions of the ancient Farriers) You shall take of *Sanguis Draconis*, of gum *Arabick*, of new Wax of Mastick, of Pitch of *Greece*, of Incense, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and straining them, make a plaster thereof, and lay it to the impostume without renewing, and it will both ripen, break, and heal any impostume.

Other




Other Farriers take of swines greafe, red wax, and the flower of *Euphorbium*, and mixing them on the fire well together, lay it to the Imposthume, and it will do the like.

Other Farriers take of Honey, and of Wheat-meal, of each a like quantity, and either boile it in the Decoction of Mallows, or else mix it with the yolk of an Egg, and it will ripen, break, and heal; yet it must be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take Barly meal, and boile it with Wine and Pidgeons dung, and so lay it to the Imposthume plaster-wise, and it will ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful or two of Sorrel, and lapping it in a Dock Leaf, roast it in the hot Embers as you would a Warden, and then lay it to the Imposthume as hot as may be well endured, renewing it once a day; and it will ripen, break, and heal it. A Plaster of Shoemakers Wax will do the like also.

Other ancient Farriers take Mallow roots, and Lily roots, and then bruise them, and put thereto Hogs greafe and Linseed meal, and plaster-wise lay it to the Imposthume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it perfectly. See further in the new additions for the Fistula, noted thus, .


## C H A P. CXLV.

*Of old Impostumes.*

**I**F the Imposthume do proceed from any old Causes, as those which rise after cold taking, or when a Horse is at grass, in the Winter season, then you shall take the herb called Balm, and stamp it and Hogs greafe well together, and so plaster-wise apply it to the sore, and it will heal it: or else when the imposthume is ripe, open it in the lowest part with a hot Iron, then wash it with warm Urine; after that anoint it with Tar and Oil well mixt together; and if you make your incision in the manner of a half Moon, it is the better.

Other Farriers take white Mints, and seeth them in Wine, Oil, Ale, and Butter, and so lay it hot to, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Cuckow-spit, and stamp it with old greafe, and so apply it, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take a handful of Rue, and stamp it well with the yolks of Eggs and Honey, and then apply it plaster-wise, and it will heal any old imposthume. 

C H A P.



## C H A P. CXLVI.

*Of hot Impostumes.*

**I**F the Impostume proceed from any hot causes; as from the extremity of travel, parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the blood; then, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take Liver-wort, and stamp it, and mix it with the grounds of Ale, Hog's grease, and bruised Mallows, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen, break and heal it: But if you would not have the swelling to break, then take the grounds of Ale or Beer, and having boiled Mallows therein, bathe the sore place therewith, and it will drive the swelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettuce-feed, or Poppy-feed, and mix it with oil of red Roses, and lay it to the sore plaster-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it will take it clean away.

## C H A P. CXLVII.

*Of the Tetters.*

**A** Tetters is a filthy kind of Ulcer, like unto a Canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place; and many times it will remain between the skin and the flesh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not break.

The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding Farriers, is, to make a strong Lee with old Urine, Ashes and green Copperas, and bathe the knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tail, and cast them away; the rest cut into small pieces, and roast them on a spit; then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot, anoint the Sorrance therewith, and it will heal it in a short time; but look that you touch no part of the Horse therewith, save only the Sorrance, for it will poison and venom.



## C H A P. CXLVIII.

*Of Sinews that are cut, pricked, or bruised.*

**I**F an Horse, by the mischance of some wound, shall have any of his sinews either cut, pricked, or sore bruised, then if there be no Convulsion of the sinews, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take Tar, and Bean-flour, and a little Oil of Roses, and mixing them together, lay it hot unto the place; and if it do not present good, take Worms and Sallet-oil fried together, or else the Ointment of Worms, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them, they knit the sinews again, if they be not clean asunder. But if there be a Convulsion, then with a pair of Shears you must cut the sinew in pieces, and then take Rosin and Turpentine, Pitch and *Sanguis Draconis*; then melting them together, clap it somewhat hot unto the sore; then take Flax and put upon it, for that will cleanse and defend it: And than this Medicine, there is none better for any swoln Joint whatever.

Now if the joint be not much swell'd, but only that the sinews are exceeding stiff through the great bruisings, then you shall take of black Soap a pound, and seeth it in a quart of strong Ale till it wax thick like Tar, then reserve it, and when you shall see cause, use to anoint the sinews and joints therewith, and it will supple them, and stretch them forth, although they be never so much shrunk; as hath been approved.

## C H A P. CXLIX.

*Of fretting the Belly with the Fore-girths.*

**I**F when you saddle and gird your Horse, the Girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithal drawn too strait, they will not only gall and wound the Horse under the belly very much, but they will also stop the blood which is in the principal veins, called the Plat-veins, in some sort, as they will occasion most extreme and hard swellings.

The Cure whereof is, according to the general opinion, to take of Oil de Bay, and Oil of Balm two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rosin; mingle them well to-

T t

gether,



gether, and then anoint the Horses fore bowels therewith ; then take either Flocks, or chopped Flax, and clap upon it, and so let it abide until it fall away of it self, and it will surely cure him.

Other Farriers use to take Vinegar and Soap, and beat them well together, and stir it with a stick or cloth, and then fall to rub and wash the galled place therewith, and do thus at least twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three days at the most. But if the galling be about any part of the Horse's neck, then you shall take the leaves of Briony (called the Hedge-vine) and stamp them, and mix them with Wine, and then, plasterwise, lay it to the sore, and it will heal it.

#### C H A P. CL.

##### *Of Blisters.*

**B**listers are certain waterish hollow Blebs, which do arise betwixt the skin and the flesh, proceeding either from slight burnings, scaldings, or chafings, and they be very full of thin matter. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the most general Farriers, is, First, in the Sun to fret them till they bleed ; then take the roots of Ivy, and stamping them in a Mortar, mix them with as much Tar, Brimstone and Alum, till they come to a Salve ; and then dress the blister therewith, and it will heal it.

#### C H A P. CLI.

##### *To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any superfluous Flesh.*

**W**hen an Horse hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more than natural, or when he hath any lumps or bunches of superfluous flesh, otherwise than of right doth belong to his true proportion; then such bones, knots, or bunches are called Excretions, proceeding from tough and flegmatick substances, stirred up either by most sore bruises, imperfect healed wounds, or other naughty putrefaction of the blood, being most apparent to the eye, and most palpable to the hand.

Now for the Cure (according to the general opinion of the most ancient Farriers) you shall first use corrosive Medicines, after drawing Medicines, and lastly drying Medicines ; or more particularly, thus you shall cure them ; first, with an Incision-knife, scarifie the  
Excretions,



Excretions, then apply Sulphur and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and sifted; and when it hath eaten the Excretion away, then heale it up with drying Salves, as powder of Honey and Lime, or Bole-armoniack, or such like. Other Farriers use, after they have made the Excretion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the ashes of Vitis, and as much unslack'd Lime, mixed with six ounces of strong Lee, first strained, then sod till half be consumed, and so brought to a firm substance; then keep it in a glass, in a dry place, and apply it to the Excretion, till it have eaten it away, and then heal it up, as is before-said. Other Farriers use to take a pound of strong Lee, and Soap, and a quarter of a pound of Vitriol-Roman, one ounce of Sal-armoniack, and as much Roch-Alum, and boil them together until they be very thick; and then, with that Ointment eat away the Excretion. Others use to take of *Egyptiacum* the strongest kind, and lay it on the Excretion with a Cotton three or four times, and it will take it clean away. This Medicine is most excellent for any splint; and of no small importance, if it be used against any Fistula; for it will sink it, although it were in the Crown.

## C H A P. CLII.

*How to eat away any superfluous and dead flesh.*

**I**F when your Horse hath any Wound, Ulcer, or other sore, you shall perceive that there groweth therein dead flesh, which dead flesh you shall know, partly by the insensibility thereof, and partly in that it is a spongy, hollow, naughty flesh, not substantial, as the true flesh is, and either of a blackish, or an high red colour; then it shall be meet that you seek all means possible how to consume and eat away that superfluous and naughty flesh, because the sore that is pestered therewith, neither can nor will ever heal, till it be cleansed of the same: Therefore, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, the best means to eat it away, is, to boil fresh Grease and Verdigrease, of each a like quantity together, and either to tent or plaster the sore therewith, until the dead flesh be consumed.

Other Farriers take either the scrapings of Harts-horn, or Ox-horn, and mixing them with old Soap, dress the sore therewith, and it will eat away dead flesh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or Sea-sponge, and therewith dress the sore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers use the



powder of Risagallo, Risagre ; but it is a great deal too strong a fretter. Others use Litharge, or Lime in Lee ; but they are likewise very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either white or black Elleborus, Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Litharge, Vitriol, unslack'd Lime, Roch-Alum, Galls, Soot, or the ashes of Avellan, of each half an ounce ; and they will consume dead flesh : Likewise Quick-silver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce, made into powder, will do the like : The juice of Borrage, of Scabious, of Fumitory, and of a Dock, of each half an ounce, a little old Oil and Vinegar ; boil with a soft fire, put to it Tar, and it will likewise eat away any dead flesh.

There be other Farriers which take Cantharides, Ox-dung and Vinegar, and mix them well together, and lay it to the sore, and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others use first to pounce the sore with a Razor, then anoint it with Grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farriers use, instead of Risagallo, to take the powder of Verdigrease and Orpiment, of each an ounce ; of unslack'd Lime and Tartar, of each two ounces ; mix them together, and therewith dress the sore, after you have washed it well with strong Vinegar ; and if you please, you may add thereunto Vitriol and Alum, for they are both consumers of dead flesh. Other Farriers take the powder of Tartar, and Man's Dung, burnt with Salt, and then beaten into powder, and strewed on the sore : Or else take Salt, unslack'd Lime, and Oister-shells, and beat them in a Mortar with strong Lee, or old Urine, till it be like a paste ; then bake it in an Oven, and after beat it to a powder ; strew it on the sore, and it will eat away the dead flesh.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein Nettle-seeds have been sodden, and then strew upon it the power of Verdigrease.

Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these Medicines, you do shave away the hair, that it be no impediment to the Salve ; also when you have dressed it once, and see that there is no Asker raised, then you shall dress it with some mollifying, or healing Salve, till the Asker come away, and then dress it with your eating Salve again ; and thus do, until you behold that all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh, and then heal it up, as in case of Wounds. Also Precipitate, simple of it self, will eat away any dead flesh.

C H A P.

*Handwritten note in the left margin:*  
 The powder of Risagallo, Risagre, is a great deal too strong a fretter. Others use Litharge, or Lime in Lee ; but they are likewise very violent and strong eaters. Others use to take either white or black Elleborus, Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Litharge, Vitriol, unslack'd Lime, Roch-Alum, Galls, Soot, or the ashes of Avellan, of each half an ounce ; and they will consume dead flesh : Likewise Quick-silver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce, made into powder, will do the like : The juice of Borrage, of Scabious, of Fumitory, and of a Dock, of each half an ounce, a little old Oil and Vinegar ; boil with a soft fire, put to it Tar, and it will likewise eat away any dead flesh.



## C H A P. CLIII.

*For Knots or Joints, Hardness, Cramps, or any Inflammations.*

Here do grow in joints three sorts of swellings; namely, an hot swelling, an hard swelling, and a soft swelling; all which you may easily distinguish by your feeling: And they do proceed, either from abundance of gross humours engendred by foul keeping, or else by accident, as from some Wound, Rush, or Strain. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of most ancient Farriers, is, to beat the powder called Diapente, together with Oil, till it be like an Ointment, and then apply it once a day to the grief, and it will take it away; especially if it be a Cramp, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers use to incorporate with Oil, half an ounce of liquid Storax, two ounces of Turpentine, five of Wax, and ten of Bird-lime; and apply that to the grief, and it will ease it. Other Farriers take Wine, and old Oil, and Tar, mingled and boiled together, and therewith dress the sore place, and it will help it.

Others of your old and later Farriers take half a pound of grease, three scruples of Mustard, and the like of Bay-salt; mix these with Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Others use to take a plaster of Figs, and the roots of Fern and Rocket; or mingle them with Grease and Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Other Farriers use to take the *Unguentum Basilicon*; which is made of Honey, Storax, Galbanum, Bdellium, black Pepper, Bay-berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniack, and of the powder of Frankincense as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with Sheeps-suet, and apply it to the grief, and it will help it.

Other Farriers take dry Pitch, Pitch of Greece, of each one part; of Galbanum, and of Lime, of each four parts; of Bitumen two parts, of Wax three parts; melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grief, and peradventure also the eye-sore.



## C H A P. CLIV.

*How to cure any Wound made with the shot of Gun-powder.*

**A** Ccording to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first, with a Probe, or long instrument, search whether the Bullet remain within the flesh, or no; and if you find that it doth, then, with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth, if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remain; for in the end, Nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any grief or impediment, because Lead will not corrode nor canker: Then to kill the fire, you shall take a little Varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, anointing it within even unto the bottom; then stop the mouth of the wound with a little soft Flax, dipped in Varnish also; then charge all the swollen place with this charge; Take of Bole-armoniack a quartern, of Linseed beaten into powder half a pound, of Bean-flour as much, and three or four Eggs, shells and all, and of Turpentine a quartern, and a quart of Vinegar, and mingle them well together over the fire; and being somewhat warm, charge all the fore place with part thereof, and immediately clap a Cloth or piece of Leather upon it, to keep the wound from the cold Air; continuing both to anoint the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of four or five days; then at the five days end, leave anointing of it, and tent it with a tent reaching to the bottom of the wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hog's-grease melted together, renewing it every day once or twice, until the fire be thoroughly killed; which you shall perceive by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling; for as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thick matter will issue forth, but only a thin yellowish water, neither will the swelling assuage; and then take of Turpentine, washed in nine several waters, half a pound, and put thereunto three yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this Ointment, renewing it every day once, until the wound be whole. But if the shot have gone quite through the wound, then you shall take a few Weavers Linethrums, made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them clean through the wound, turning them up and down in the wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either side, upon the swoln places, with the charge aforesaid, until



until you perceive that the fire is killed ; then clap on a comfortable Plaster upon one of the holes, and tent the other with a tent in the Salve, made of washed Turpentine, Eggs and Saffron, as is before said.

Other Farriers use only to kill the fire with Oil of Cream, and after to heal the wound up with Turpentine, Wax and Hog's-grease, molten together.

Other Farriers kill the fire with Snow-water, and charge the swelled place with Cream and Barm beaten together ; and then heal up the wound, by dipping the Tent in the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, Saffron, well beaten, and mixed together.

## C H A P. CLV.

*Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.*

**A**ccording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the fore round about, and in every part, very clean, with warm Urine ; then kill the fire, by anointing the place with Oil and Water beaten together ; dressing him so every day, until the fore be all raw ; and then anoint it with Hog's grease, and strew thereupon the powder of unslacked Lime ; dressing him thus every day once, until he be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash and cleanse the fore with Sallet. Oil only warmed, then to kill the fire with Cream and Oil beaten together ; and when it is raw, then to spread upon it Cream and Soot mixed together ; and lastly, to strew upon it the powder of Honey and Lime, until it be perfectly skinned.

## C H A P. CLVI.

*Of the Biting with a mad Dog.*

**I**F your Horse at any time be bitten with a mad Dog, the venom of whose teeth will not only drive him into an extream torment, but it will also infect and inflame his Blood in such sort, that the Horse will be endangered to die mad. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Goat's-dung, of Flesh that hath lain long in Salt, and of the herb Ebulus, generally called Dane-wort, of each half a pound, and forty Wall-nuts ;



nuts ; stamp all these together, and lay part thereof to the fore, and it will suck out the venom, and heal up the wound ; but upon the first dressing, you shall give the Horse Wine and Treacle mixed together to drink.

There be other Farriers, which first give the Horse Sack and Sallet-oil to drink, then with an hot Iron cauterise and burn the fore; and lastly, heal up the wound with the Salve first recited.

Other Farriers first give the Horse two or three spoonfuls of the powder of Diapente, to drink in a pint of Muscadine; then take a live Pidgeon, and cleaving her in the midst, lay it hot to the wound, and it will draw out the venom; then heal the fore with Turpentine and Hog's-grease well molten together. The leaves of Aristoloch bruised will take away any poison.

#### C H A P. CLVII.

*Of Hurts done by the Tusks of a Boar.*

**I**F an Horse be stricken with the tusks of a Boar, you shall then take Copperas or Vitriol, and the powder of a Dog's head, being burned, after the tongue hath been pulled out, and cast away, and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the Sore, and it will cure it: Yet, before you dress it, first wash the sore very well, either with Vinegar, or with White-wine, or Urine.

#### C H A P. CLVIII.

*To heal the biting or stinging of Serpents, or any venomous Beast whatsoever.*

**I**F your Horse be either bitten or stung, either with a Serpent, or any other venomous Beast, which you shall easily know by the suddain swelling either of the body or member; then you shall first chafe him up and down until he sweat, and then let him blood in the roof of the mouth; and lastly, take a young Cock, or a Pidgeon, and cleaving it in the midst, clap it hot to the wound, and then give the Horse White-wine and Salt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the herb called Sanicula, stamp it, and temper it together with the Milk of a Cow, till it be all of one colour, and give it the Horse to drink, and it will heal him. Other Farriers clap to the



the fore Hog's-dung, or Ox dung, or Hen-bane bruised, or else the ashes of Reeds ; then give him to drink Mug-wort, or great Tansie, and Wine, and Camomil, stamped together : Or else give him Wine and *Olenm Rosatum* mixed together.

Other Farriers make a Plaster of Onions, Honey and Salt, stamped and mingled together, and lay that to the fore place, and give the Horse Wine and Treacle to drink, or else white Pepper, Rue and Thime, mixed with Wine. Other Farriers take Aphodillus, *Hastula Regia* ; stamp it with old Wine, and lay it to the fore, for it is most soveraign good.

## C H A P. CLIX.

*Of Lice or Vermin, and how to kill them.*

**T**He Lice or Vermin which breed upon an Horse, be like unto Geese-Lice, but somewhat bigger, and do breed most commonly about the Ears, Neck, Mane, Tail, and generally over the whole body ; they do proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where Trees are continually dropping upon them : The signs are, the Horse will be always rubbing and scratching ; and albeit he eat much meat, yet will not prosper ; and with this continual rubbing, he will fret and wear away all his Mane and Tail, and you shall also perceive the Lice, when the Sun doth shine, running on the tops of the Hairs. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Soap one pound, and Quick-silver half an ounce ; mix and beat them together well, until the Quick-silver be killed, and then anoint the Horse all over therewith, and it will consume the Lice presently.

Other Farriers take Stavesacre and Soap, and mixing them together, anoint the Horse all over therewith. Others take unripe Mulberries, and their roots or stalks, and seeth them in strong Urine, and then wash the Horse therewith ; after that, anoint all his body over with *Sanguis Draconis*, the juice of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Oil, and Swine's Grease, very well mixed together.


Others use to chafe all the body over with Quick-silver and soft Grease, mixed together, till the Quick-silver be killed ; and in two or three dressings the Lice will be consumed.



## C H A P. CLX.


*How to save Horses from the stinging of Flies in Summer.*

**I**F you will save your Horses in the Summer time from the stinging or biting of Flies, which is very troublesome unto them, then you shall anoint all the Horse's body over either with Oil and Bay-berries mingled together, or else bind unto the Head-stall of his Collar a Sponge dipped in strong Vinegar. Some use to sprinkle the Stable with Water wherein Herb of Grasse hath been laid to steep; or else to perfume the Stable with the smoak of Ivy or Calamint, or with Gith burnt in a pan of Coals.

 But the surest way of all, both in the Stable, and abroad, is, to make two good wisps of Rue, and therewithal to rub the Horse's body all over, and no Fly will light upon him, or touch him; as hath been often approved.

## C H A P. CLXI.

*Of Bones being broken, or out of joint.*

 **O**ur common English Farriers are very far to seek in this Cure, because they do neither perfectly acquaint themselves with the members of an Horse, nor have so much invention, in this extremity, to make an Horse, being an unreasonable Creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also that in the old Traditions in Horse-leach-craft affirm, that all Fractures above the Knee are incurable; and so despairing, they cease to make practice. But they are much deceived; for neither the Fracture above the Knee, nor the Fracture below the Knee, is more incurable in an Horse, than in Man, if the Farrier can tell how to keep the Horse from struggling, or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your Horse have any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned, by the deprivation of the use of that member, and as easie to be felt, by the separation of the bones, and one part being higher than the other, besides the roughness and inequality of the place grieved; you shall then, for the Cure thereof, first take a strong double Canvas, which shall be as broad as from the Horse's fore-shoulder, to the flank; and shall have another double Canvas, which



which shall come from between the Horse's fore-booths, up to the top of the withers; where meeting with the rest of the Canvas, and having exceeding strong loops, to which strong ropes must be fastned, you shall by main force sling up the Horse from the ground, so as his feet may no more but touch the ground: And if it be a fore-leg that is broken, then you shall raise him a little higher before than behind; if an hinder-leg, then a little higher behind than before, so that the Horse may rest most upon the members most sound. When your Horse is thus slung, then you shall put the bones into the right place; which done, wrap it close about with unwashed Wool newly pulled from the Sheep's back, binding it fast to the leg with a smooth Linen Roller, soaked before in Oil and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roller lie as smooth and plain as may be; and upon that again lay more Wool dipped in Oil and Vinegar, and then splint it with three broad, smooth and strong Splints, binding them fast at both ends with a Thong, and in any case the Horse's legs be kept out very streight, the space of forty days, and let not the bones be loosned above thrice in twenty days, unless it shrink, and so require to be new drest and bound again; but fail not every day once to pour on the fore place, through the splints, Oil and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty days end, if you perceive that the broken place be sowed together again with some hard knob or gristle, then loose the Bonds, and ease the Canvas, so as the Horse may tread more firmly upon his fore-foot; which when he doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, using from henceforth to anoint the fore place either with soft Grease, or else with one of these Plaisters, or Ointments; Take of *Spuma argenti*, of Vinegar, of each one pound, of Sallet-oil half a pound, of Armoniack, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces; of Wax, and of Rosin, of each two ounces; of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of Verdigrease, of each half a pound; boil the Vinegar, Oil and *Spuma argenti* together, until it wax thick, then put thereunto the Pitch; which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the Bitumen, without stirring at all; and that being also molten, put in then all the rest; set the pot again to the fire, and let them boil all together, until they be all united in one; that done, strain it, and make it in Plaster-form, and use it as occasion shall serve.



Other ancient and well experienced Farriers take of liquid Pitch one pound, of Wax two ounces, of the purest and finest part of Frankincense one ounce, of *Amoniacum* four ounces, of dry Rosin, and of *Galbanum*, of each one ounce, of Vinegar two pints; boil first the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the *Amoniacum*, dissolved first in Vinegar; and after that, the aforesaid Drugs; and after they have boiled all together, and be united in one, strain it, and make it into a Plaster, and use it according to occasion.

Other Farriers take of old Sallet-oil a quart, and put thereunto of Hog's Grease, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boil together until it begin to blub above; then take it from the fire: And when you use any of the Ointment, let it be very hot, and well chafed in, and then one of the two former Plasters folded above it; and it is most soveraign and comfortable for any bone that is broken.

## C H A P. CLXII.

## Of Bones out of joint.

**I**F an Horse have any of his Bones out of the joint, as either his Knee, his Shoulder, his Pastern, or such like; which you shall perceive both by the uncomliness of the joint, and also feel by the hollowness of the member that is dis-placed; then your readiest Cure is, to cast the Horse on his back, and putting four strong Pasterns on his feet, draw him up so as his back may no more but touch the ground; then draw the grieved leg higher than the rest, till the poise and weight of his body have made the joint to shoot into its right place again; which you shall know when it doth, by a suddain and great crack which the joint will give when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentleness loose the Horse, and let him rise; and then anoint the grieved place, either with the last Ointment rehearsed in the last Chapter, or else with the Oil of Mandrake, or the Oil of Swallows; both which are of most soveraign virtue.



## C H A P. CLXIII.

*To dry up Humours, or to bind; being astringive, or binding Charges.*

**T**Ake of *Unguentum Tripharmacum*, made of Litharge, Vinegar; take old Oil, boiled till they be thick; only take as much Oil as of both the others; and it will stop and stay the flux of any humours.

If you take strong Lee, it is a great drier and binder of humours.

Dissolve in Vinegar, Rosin, Asphalto and Myrrh, of each an ounce, of red Wax half an ounce, and of Armoniack half an ounce, mingle them well together in the boiling; for this Salve drieth wonderfully, bindeth all loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of Lard two pound, and when it is sodden, strain it with three ounces of Cerufs, and as much Alum melted; and it both drieth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry Figs, beaten with Alum, Mustard and Vinegar, do dry abundantly.

Oil and soft Grease beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol, Galls and Alum, and the powder of Pomegranates, Salt and Vinegar, both dry and bind sufficiently.

Soap and unslack'd Lime mixed together, drieth perfectly after any Incision.

Verdigrease, Orpiment, Sal armoniack, and the powder of Colloquintida, of each a-like, made into a Plaster, with Milk or Wax, drieth and bindeth.

The Grease of Snakes roasted, the head and tail being cut away, is a great drier.

To conclude, The Bark of a Willow-tree burnt to ashes, is as a great drier, and binder, as any Simple whatsoever.

## C H A P. CLXIV.

*A Plaster to dry up superfluous Moisture, and to bind Parts loosned.*

**T**Ake of Bitumen one pound, of the purest part of Frankincense three ounces, of *Bdellium Arabicum* one ounce, of Deer's Suet one pound, of *Populeum* one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of Storax one ounce, of common Wax one pound, of Resin Cabial



Cabial half a pound, *Viscus Italicus* one ounce and an half, of Apoxima one ounce, of the juice of Hyssop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniack one ounce, of Pitch half a pound; let all these be well and perfectly molten, dissolved and incorporated together according to Art, and then make a Plaster thereof.

## C H A P. CLXV.

*Another Plaster to dry up any Swelling, Wind gall, Splent, or Bladders, in or about the Joints.*

**T**Ake of Virgins Wax half a pound, of Rosin one pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce and an half, of Bitumen half a pound, of Myrrh Secondary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Costus three ounces; boil all these things together in an earthen pot, saving the Armoniack and Costus; which being first ground like fine Flour, must be added unto the other things, after that they have been boiled and cooled, and then boiled all together again, and well stirred, so as they may be incorporated together, and made all one substance, and then applying as occasion shall be administred.

## C H A P. CLXVI.

*Reciets to dissolve Humours.*

**T**Ake of Wormwood, Sage, Rosemary, and the bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boil them in Oil, with a good quantity of Linseed, and make a Bath thereof; bathe the grieved part, and it will dissolve any humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of Figs, stamped with Salt, till they come to a perfect Salve, dissolveth all manner of humours, by opening the pores, and giving a large passage.



## C H A P. CLXVII.

*How to mollifie any hardnes.*

TAKE of Linseed punn'd, and of Fenugreek, of each four ounces ; of Pitch and Rosin, of each three ounces ; of the flowers of Roses two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* three ounces ; boil them together, then add three ounces of Turpentine, six ounces of Honey, and a little Oil ; and then applying the Salve, it will mollifie and soften any hard substance.

Malvavisco well sod, and stamped with *Oleum Rosatum*, being laid hot to any hardnes will make it soft.

Boil Branck-ursine and Mallows together, and beat them with Oil and Lard, and they will soften much.

Malvavisco, Cole-worts, Branck-ursine, Herb of the Wall, and old Grease pounded, doth mollifie very much.

The Oil of Cypress both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheat-meal, Honey, Pellitory, Branck-ursine and the leaves of Worm-wood, being beaten with Swine's Grease, and laid hot unto any hard tumour, doth suddainly mollifie it, and is passing good for any stripe also.

Grease, Mustard-seed and Cummin boiled together, doth mollifie very much.

Take of Soap half an ounce, of unslack'd Lime an ounce, and mix them well with strong Lee, and it will mollifie even the hardest hoofs.

The juice of the leaves and roots of Elder, or a Plaster made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours marvellously.

So doth the juice of the tops of Cypress, and dry Figs, macerated in Vinegar, and strained, of each three ounces : And if you add to it of Salt-Niter one ounce, of Armoniack half an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponax a little, and make it into an Ointment, it will mollifie any hardnes very sufficiently.

Mallows, Nettles, Mercorella, and the roots of Cucumbers, and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old Grease, will mollifie any hardnes speedily.



## C H A P. CLXVIII.

*To harden any Softness.*

**T**He Sole of any old Shooe burnt, and sodden in Vinegar, will harden Hoofs; and so will also the powder of Galls, boiled with Bran and Salt, in strong Vinegar.

The powder of Honey and Lime, or the powder of Oyster-shells, or the powder of a burnt Felt, or thick Cream and Soot mixed together, will harden any fore whatsoever.

## C H A P. CLXIX.

*To conglutinate.*

**I***Ris Illyrica* beaten and sifted, mingled with Pepper, Honey, Currants, and given the Horse to drink with Wine and Oil, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward Rupture or Burstness whatsoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruit of the Pine, with the yolks of Eggs, given likewise to drink with Wine and Oil, doth also conglutinate any inward member or vein broken.

Incense, Mastick, and cut, doth the like also. Poligano sod in Wine, and given to drink, is good also.

The roots and seed of Asparagus, sod in Water, and given to the Horse; then after, for three days, give him Butter and Opoponax, with Honey and Myrrh; and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatsoever.

## C H A P. CLXX.

*To mundifie and cleanse any Sore.*

**T**Ake Oil of Olives, Swine's Grease clarified, the Grease of a young Fox, Turpentine, Alum, and white Wax; seeth them all together, till they be most thoroughly incorporated together; and with this Ointment dress any foul sore whatsoever, and it will mundifie and cleanse it most sufficiently.

C H A P.



## C H A P. CLXXI.

*Of repercussive Medicines, or such as drive back Humours.*

**R**epercussive medicines, or such as drive evil humours back, are commonly called amongst Farriers, Plasters, or Salvors defensive, and are to be used about every great Wound or Ulcer, lest the flux of humours flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of these Repercussive medicines, these are the best; either Vinegar, Salt and Bole-Armoniack, beaten together, and spread round about the sore; or else White Lead and Sallet-oil, beaten also together; or Red Lead and Sallet-oil; or else *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, and such like.

## C H A P. CLXXII.

*Of burning Compositions.*

**B**urning Compositions are for the most part Corrosives, of which we shall have occasion to speak more at large in a Chapter following; yet forasmuch as some are of better temper than others, you shall here understand, that of all burning compositions, the gentlest is *Unguentum Apostolorum*; next to it, is Verdigrease and Hog's Grease beaten together; next to it, is Precipitate and Turpentine mixed together; next to it, is Arsnick, allayed with any Oil, or healing Salve; next to it, is Mercury sublimate, likewise allayed with some cooling Salve; and the worst is Lime and Soap, or Lime and strong Lee beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the foundest part or member whatsoever.

## C H A P. CLXXIII.

*For all manner of Hurts about an Horse whatsoever.*

**T**ake an ounce of Oil, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little Wax, mingle them at the fire: This will heal any Wound or Gall, and keep it clean from filth, water and dirt.

Take Vinegar and Honey, and boil it together; when it is cold,

X x

add



add the powder of Verdigrease, Copperas and Brasse burnt, mingle them well together: This will take away all ill and dead flesh, and cleanse and heal any old Ulcer.

Take Wax, Pitch, Swine's Grease and Turpentine, and mix them well together: This will heal any bone, spell, or any other stub.

Take House-snails, and seeth them in Butter, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being often renewed. So will also the roots of Reeds, being bruised and applied.

The roots of an Elder, beaten to powder, and boiled with Honey, is good for any old Sore whatsoever.

Take Salt, Butter and Honey, or white Wax, Turpentine and Oil-*Rosatum*, of each a like quantity, with twice as much Bean-flour as of any of the other; mix it very well together, and make it into a Salve, and it will heal any Sore, either old or new, whatsoever.

Take Wax, Turpentine and Deer's Suet, or the Marrow of a Stag, and mix them well together, and it will heal any Wound, or any Impostume whatsoever: So will also Wax, Oil, Mastick, Frankincense and Sheep's Suet, well molten together; or the powder of Mastick, Frankincense and Aloes, mixed and molten well together.

The Whites of Eggs, beaten with *Oleum Rosatum* and Salt, and so laid upon Flax-hurds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principal part, where the Muscles are.

If you will purifie, cleanse and heal any old Sore, take three pints of well clarified Honey, and boil it with one pint of Vinegar, and one of Verdigrease, and so apply it: Or else, take of Mastick and Verdigrease, of each half an ounce; of Frankincense one ounce, of new Wax four ounces, of Turpentine six ounces, and of Hog's Grease two pound; boil and incorporate all these together, and then apply it to the sore place, and it will both cleanse, purifie and heal.

Chick-weed, Groundsel, Graise and stale Urine, very well boiled together, will heal any galling or hurts by Halter, or other accident; or any strain, or stripe, or swelling, which cometh by any such like mischance.

Take of new Milk three quarts, a good handful of Plantain; let it boil till a pint be consumed; then add three ounces of Alum made into powder, and one ounce and an half of white Sugar-candy made likewise into powder; then let it boil a little, till it have an hard curd, then strain it; with this warm, bathe any old Ulcer, then dry it, and lay on some *Unguentum Basilicon*: This cleanseth, drieth,



h, strengthneth and killeth the Itch, and healeth the foulest Ulcer, either in Man or Beast, that may be. Also, if you take of Milk a quart, of Alum in powder two ounces, of Vinegar a spoonful; when the Milk doth seeth, put in the Alum and Vinegar, then take off the Curd, and use the rest, and it will likewise dry up and heal any foul old Sore whatsoever.

## C H A P. CLXXIV.

*How to make the Powder of Honey and Lime.*

**T**Ake such a quantity of unslack'd Lime as you shall think fit, beat it into very fine powder; then take so much Honey as shall suffice to mingle it together, and make it into a very stiff paste, in the form of a thick Cake, or Loaf; then put the same Cake or Loaf into an hot Oven, or a burning fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing red; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into very fine powder, and then use it as occasion shall serve. It drieth, healeth and skinneth any Sore whatsoever very marvellously.

## C H A P. CLXXV.

*The Order of taking up of Veins, and wherefore it is good.*

**F**irst, before we speak of the order of taking up of Veins, you shall understand, that all Veins, except the Neck-veins, the Eye-veins, the Breast-veins, Palate-veins, and the Spur-veins, are to be taken up, and not stricken with the Fleam; partly because they are so little and thin, that if you strike them, you shall either endanger the striking thorough them; or partly because they are so near adjoining to Arteries and Sinews, that if, in striking, you should hit and prick either Artery or Sinew, it were a present laming of the Horse, as I have oftentimes seen and noted in the practice of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a Vein, it is thus.

First, You shall cast your Horse either upon some soft ground, grass, some dung-hill that is not very moist, or in some lightsome house, upon good store of sweet straw; then, when the Horse is thus cast, you shall look for the Vein which you intend to take up; and if it be either so small, or lie so deep, that you can hardly perceive it, then you shall, with warm Water, rub, chafe and bathe



all that part where the vein lieth; then take a narrow silk garther, and an handful or two above the vein (if it be of any of the Horſe's legs) garther the member very ſtreight: But if it be a vein to be taken upon the body or breſt, then with a good ſurſingle, either cloſe behind the hinder point of the ſhoulder, or within an handful of the place where you mean to take up the vein, gird him very ſtreight, and preſently you ſhall ſee the vein to ariſe; then mark that part of the ſkin which covereth the vein, and with your finger and your thumb, pull it ſomewhat aſide from the vein, and then, with a very fine Inciſion-kniſe, ſlit the ſkin clean through, without touching the vein, and in any wiſe cut no deeper than through the ſkin, and that long-wiſe too, in ſuch ſort as the vein goeth, yet not above an inch at the moſt in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumb, and the ſkin will return again into its place, right over the vein, as it was before, inſomuch that but opening the oriſice or ſlit, you ſhall ſee the vein lie blew and bare before your eyes; then take a fine ſmooth Cronet, made either of the Browantler of a Stag, or of an old Buck, and thruſt it underneath the vein, and liſt it up a pretty diſtance (that is to ſay, half the thickneſs of the Cronet) above the ſkin; that done, you ſhall then looſe either the Garther or Surſingle, for they are but only helps for you to find out the vein; and when the vein doth appear, have a ſpecial care that you touch not the ſinews.

Now when you have thus taken your vein upon your Cronet, you ſhall then either put a red ſilk thred, dipp'd in Oil of Butter, or elſe a ſmall Shooe-maker's thred underneath the vein alſo, ſomewhat higher than the Cronet, which ſilk or thred muſt ſerve to knit the vein when time requires; then the Cronet ſtanding ſtill as before, with your Knife ſlit the top of the vein long-wiſe, the length of a Barley-corn, that it may bleed; then ſtopping the neither part of your vein with the ſilk, or the thred, ſuffer it to bleed from above; then with your ſilk or thred removed above, knit it faſt with a ſure knot above the ſlit, ſuffering it only to bleed from beneath; and having bled there alſo ſufficiently, then knit up the vein beneath the ſlit with a ſure knot, then fill the hole of the vein with Salt, and heal up the wound of the ſkin with Turpentine and Hog's greaſe molten together, or elſe with a little freſh Butter, laid on with a little Flax, or ſoft Tow, is ſufficient.

Now the virtue which redounds from this taking up of veins; firſt, it is very neceſſary, and doth eaſe all griefs, ſtrains and ſtiffneſs



efs of the limbs ; for the taking up of the plat-veins easeth all pains in the breast, and griefs in the chest : The taking up of the fore-thigh-veins easeth Farcies, and swellings of the legs : The taking up of the shackle-veins before, helpeth Gourding, Quitter-bones, and the swelling of the joints, scabs and scratches : The taking up of the hinder hough-veins, helpeth Spavens of both kinds ; most especially, any Farcy in those parts ; and generally, all swellings, or Impostumes : The taking up of the pastern-veins behind, helpeth swellings about the Cronet, or nether joints, Pains, Mules, and all manner of Kibed Heels ; besides sundry other such like diseases.

## C H A P. CLXXVI.

*Of Cauterizing, or giving the Fire, the Kinds and Uses.*

**T**He giving of Fire, which, amongst the best Farriers, is called Cauterizing ; and amongst the simpler, Burning, Searing, or Blistering ; is (according to the general opinion of all the most ancient Farriers) the chiefest Remedy, and, as it were, the last refuge of all diseases incident to any Horse's body, whether they be natural or accidental ; for the violence of fire separating and digesting all manner of humours into a thin air, and loose body, cleanseth and avoideth those grossnesses which are the material causes of Putrefaction and Ulceration. Now of Cauterization there be two kinds ; the one of them actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the Instrument ; that is to say, of the hot Iron, of what fashion soever ; the other potential, which is done by the applying of a Medicine, whose nature is either Corrosive, Putrefactive, or Caustick.

Now the first of these, which is the Cauterise actual, is principally to be used when there is any Apostumation in any sinew, part, or member, or amongst any of the most principal veins ; also when you shall dis-member or cut away any joint, or make any incision, where there is fear of any Flux of Blood, or where you shall find either the skin or muscles shrunk or straitned ; and in many such like cases.

The Cauterizing potential is to be used in old cankered Ulcers, Wens, or any spongy excretions, either of flesh or bone whatsoever ; of whose natures and properties you shall read more hereafter, in a following Chapter.



## C H A P. CLXXVII.

*Of the Cauterize actual, and the form of Instruments.*

**A**N actual Cautery, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately used, is a notable remedy to stop all corruption in members, to keep perfect the complexion of the same, and also stanch the blood; only you must have a careful regard that in the handling of your Iron, you touch neither Sinews, Tendons, Cords, nor Ligaments, lest you do utterly disable the member, or breed Cramps or Convulsions; except it be when you dismember or cut away any joint; as when you do make Curtals, geld Horses, or such like; and then your Cautery is to be used only to sear the Veins, Sinews, and Ligaments, till such time that you are perfectly assured that all Flux of blood is stopped whatsoever.

Now again, the actual Cautery bindeth together parts loosened it doth attenuate things blown and puffed up, it drieth up superfluous moisture, it both looseth, disperseth and divideth evil matter gathered into knots, it asswageth old griefs, it rectifieth those parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect estate, and suffereth no abundance of evil humours to grow or increase; for the skin being separated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrefaction whatsoever, through the virtue of the fire, is first digested and ripened, and then so dissolved, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or sickned member is now healed, and eased of all pain and grief; yea, and insomuch that the holes being once closed, and close shut up, the place is stronger, and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skin than ever it was before: Only the greatest blemish that can any way be found in Cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great skar, which is many times an eye sore more than is tolerable; and therefore the use of Cauterizing is only to be preferred, but in desperate cases of great extremity; for, albeit it works foul, yet I am persuaded it is most certain, and it works most sure.

Now as touching the Instruments wherewith you must cauterize, their substance and proportion, you shall understand, that the most curious Farriers do prefer either Gold or Silver to be the best metal to make them of, in that few or no evil accidents do follow where they burn: But the wisest, best and most skilful Farriers take

Copper



Copper to be sufficient enough, and a metal without any lawful exception; yet where Copper Instruments cannot be had, there you may, with commendations enough, use such instruments as are made of Iron, and find your work nothing at all hindered.

Now for the fashion or proportion of your instruments or Irons, they are only to be referred to the Sore, or place grieved, where-with you are to meddle; according to the diversity whereof, your instruments are to be made of divers fashions: As, some are to be made Knife-wise, either with thin edges, or broad edges; and they be called Drawing-knives, or Searching-knives, because they are principally employed in the drawing of streight lines, shallow or deep, and sometimes in circular, or divers squares. Some are made like streight, and some like crooked Bodkins; and they are employed either in fleshy Excretions, to cause Exulcerations; or else impostumes, to open small passages for the Matter. Some are made like Hooks, or Sickles; and they are to be used, where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead flesh, or such like hidden evils, which cannot be reached by any streight Instruments. Others are made either with great Buttons, or little Buttons at the end; and they are used to open Impostumes, or else to burn into the sound flesh, where you intend to make any new Sore or Issue, for the drawing, or keeping back of other evil humours. And in making of these Irons, the Farrier's own Judgment is to be of great value, because he must either increase or diminish them, according to the manner of the place grieved; and be sure that he ever make them fit for his right purpose.

Now for the use of these Instruments, there are two principal things to be regarded, first, the heating of the Iron; and next, the true temper, or bearing of the Farrier's hand.

Touching the heating of the Iron, you shall understand, that the back of the Iron must never be so hot as the edge; that is to say, you must never make the back of the Iron red hot, for fear that thereby it yield too much heat, and consequently breed Inflammation: Therefore, whensoever you see the back of your Iron as hot as the edge, you shall a little cool it with Water.

Now for the temper of the bearing of your hand, you shall understand, that the more evenly and light it is done, so much the better it is done: And herein is to be considered the fineness or thickness of the Horse's skin, which you shall know most commonly by his hair; for if it be short and fine, then the skin is thin; if it be long and rough, then is his skin thick and boisterous.

Now.



Now the skin that is fine must be cauterized or seared with a very light hand, in as much as the skin is so soon pierced through; and the thick skin with a heavy hand; and both of them with such a tempered hand, that the skin must no more but look yellow; wherein you shall ever find, that the fine skin will sooner look yellow, than the thick skin; the main reason being, because the thickness and roughness of the hair of the thick skin doth cool and choak the heat of the Iron; insomuch that if it be not laid to with a more heavy hand, and the instrument so much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot work that effect which in Art it should do.

Now you shall also observe, that in drawing of any Line, or other Cauterize whatsoever, that you ever draw with the hair, and never against the hair, whether the Lines be short, long, deep, shallow, straight, crooked, or over-thwart, according as the grief doth require.

Now, to conclude, you are to observe, in Cauterizing, these few precepts: First, that you do not give fire to any finewy place, except there be some apparent swelling, or else impostumation. Secondly, that you give not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of joint, for fear of breeding a general weakness in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire so deep, or suffer your hand to be so heavy, that you may mis-shape or deform the Horse, either by unnecessary figures, or uncomely skars. Fourthly, not to be too rash or hasty in giving fire, as if every Cure was to be wrought by that practice only (as I know some very well reputed Farriers hold opinion) but only to attempt all other good means before; and when all hope else is desperate, then to make the fire your last refuge, as an extremity that must prevail, when all other practices do perish.

Lastly, I would not have you, like the foolish Farriers, which know nothing, utterly to condemn and neglect it, as if it were useless; but with all moderation, and judicious discretion, to apply it in fit time and place. So the poor Horse may gain ease, your self good reputation, and the owner profit; which is most certain, as long as you are governed by wisdom.

#### C H A P. CLXXVIII.

*Of Cauterize by Medicine, which is Cauterize-potential.*

**T**He potential Cauterize, or searing of the flesh by medicine, is (as I said before) when the medicines are either corrosive, putrefactive,



Putrefactive, or Caustick, Corrosive, as when they do corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh. Putrefactive, when they do corrupt the complexion of the member, and do induce a main Scar like dead flesh, causing infinite pain, in such sort, that they are often accompanied with Fevers and Mortality, and therefore are not to be administered, but to strong bodies, and in very strong diseases; and Caustick, which is as much to say as burning, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and cometh nearest to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoever it toucheth.

Now these Potential Cauterizes do exceed and excel one another by certain degrees, as thus: The Corrosives are weaker than the Putrefactives, and the Putrefactives are weaker than the Causticks; the Corrosives work upon the upper part in the soft flesh, the Putrefactives in the depth of the hard flesh, and the Causticks have power to break skin sound or unsound, both in hard and soft flesh, and that very deeply also.

Now of Corrosives some be simple, and some be compound: The simple Corrosives are Roch allum, burnt, or unburnt, the Sponge of the Sea somewhat burnt, Lime, red Coral, and the powder of Mercury, the shavings of an Ox or Harts-horn, Precipitate, Verdigrase, and such like. The compound Corrosives are, black Sope and Lime, *Unguentum Apostolorum*, and *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Caraceum*, and many such like: And these are to be applied unto Sores, Ulcers, or Excretions, after they are Corroded.

The Putrefactives are Arsnick, either white or yellow, Resalgar, or any Medicine compounded with any of them; besides, Sandarach, Chrysocola, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your Putrefactive Medicines to be caustive, that is, breeding a great Scar, and hot in the fourth degree: Then they are unslakt Lime, and the burned dregs of wine; and these are to be used to Carbuncles, Cankers and Amburies.

The Caustick Medicines are those which are made of strong Lee, called *Capitellum*, or Magistra, of Vitriol Roman, Sal niter, *Aqua fortis*, *Apium*, Cantharides, Ciclamine, onions, strong Garlick, *Melanacardium*, the stones or grains of Briony, and many such like.

Now in conclusion, I would wish every diligent Farrier, seldom or never to use either Arsnick, Resalgar, or Mercury sublimate, simply of themselves, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to work be very great) with *Unguentum Apostolorum*; but if it be very little, then with Hogs grease, Turpentine, or such like. And

Y y

thus



thus much for this potential Cauterizing, and the proper uses.

### CHAP. CLXXIX.

*Of the rowelling of Horses, and the use thereof.*

**T**He rowelling of Horses, is, amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and general Practice of all other whatsoever, insomuch that not any Disease can almost be found about a Horse, either how slight or great soever it be, but presently without any reason or sense therefore, they will rowel him for the same; whereby they not only put the Horse to a needless torment, but also bring down (now and then) such a flux of naughty humours, that they lame the Horse, which otherwise would be perfectly sound. But it is not my Theam to dispute of those ignorances; only this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practice as necessary and commendable for the good estate of a Horses Limbs, and Body, as any medicine whatsoever, so it be applied in his due time, and in his due place: otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodness.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are these; it separateth and dissolveth all evil Humours, which either through natural or unnatural corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluity or evil substance; it looseneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it giveth strength unto sick joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold flegm, or hot cholerick substance: The general use of Rowelling, is either for inward strains, especially about the shoulders or hips, or else for great hard swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either Plaster or Unguent, for you shall understand, that when a Horse receiveth any strain or bruise, either in the upper joints of his shoulder, or his hips, which joints do not stand one upon another, as the lower joints do, but they go one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the Spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I say, when a bruise is received in these parts, if by present application of hot and comfortable medicines, the grief be not taken away, then est-soons there gathers between the pot and the bone, a certain bruised jelly, which continually of-

fending



fending the tender Gristle which covers the end of every bone, makes the Horses to halt vehemently, and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by Rowelling only; and as I spake of the shoulder, so I speak of the hips, also, where the upper thigh-bone, goeth into the pot of the cancell-bone, and there breeds the like Infirmary. Now for the manner of Rowelling it is in this sort. First, when you have found out the certain place of the Horses grief, as whether it be on the fore-Pitch of the shoulder on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hip, then you shall (having cast the Horse upon some Dung-hill, or soft ground) make a little slit more than a good handful below the place of his grief through the skin, and no more, so big as you may well thrust in a Swansquill into the same: Then with your Cronet raise the skin a little from the flesh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skin from the flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the shoulder: Then stopping the hole with your finger and your thumb, take a small Hazel stick, and all to beat the blown place all over; and then with your hand spread the Wind into every part, and after let it go: Then take a tampin of Horse-hair twound together, or which is better, of red Sarsenet, half the bigness of a mans little finger, and about a foot or sixteen inches in length, putting it into your Rowelling needle, which would be at the least seven or eight inches long; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it upward, draw it out again at least six inches above; and then, if you please, you may put in another above that: And then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the skin, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to anoint them well with Butter, Hogs grease, or Oil de Bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opinionated, that these long rowels, or tampins of hair or silk, do make both a double sore, and a great scar, therefore they make their rowels of round pieces of stiff Leather, such as is the upper part of an old shooe, with a round hole in the midst, according to this form: And then doubling it when they put it in, as soon as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat between the flesh and the skin, and so as the whole of the Rowel may answer just with the hole that is made in the horses skin; and then once in two or three days to cleanse the Rowel, and to anoint it, and so put it in again.





Other Farriers do use to make the Rowel of Lanthorn-horn, in the same fashion as is made of Leather, and in like sort to use it. But for mine own part, I have used them all, and truly in my practice find not any better than another: Only the Leather or the horn is somewhat more cleanly, and less offensive to the Eye, yet they ask much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowel your Horse for any swelling, then you shall ever put in your long Rowel the same way that the veins run, and seldom or never Cross-wise, and the more you blow the skin for a swelling, so much the better it is: For the wind is it which only occasioneth Putrefaction, and makes these festred humours to dissolve, and distil down from the secret hollows of the joints, into these open places, where it falleth away in matter, and so the Beast becomes cured.

### CHAP. CLXXX.

#### *How to geld Horses or Colts.*

**T**Here is to be observed in the gelding of Horses, first, the Age. Secondly, the season of the year: And lastly, the state of the Moon. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteen, if his stones be come down: For to speak the truth, the sooner that you geld him, it is so much the better, both for his growth, shape, and courage: Albeit, some hold opinion, that at two years old should be the soonest, but they are mistaken, and their reasons are weak therein.

Now if it be a Horse that you would geld, then there is no speech to be made of his age: For it is without any question, that a perfect Farrier may geld a Horse without danger at any age whatsoever, being careful in the cure.

Now for the Season of the year, the best is in the Spring, between April and May, or in the beginning of June at the farthest, or else about the fall of the Leaf, which is the latter end of September.

Now for the state of the Moon, the fittest time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane; as touching the manner of Gelding it is in this sort, whether it be a Foal, Colt, or Horse: First, you shall cast him either upon straw, or upon some dunghil: Then taking the stone between your formost finger, and your great finger, you shall with a very fine incision Knife slit the Cod, so that you may  
press



press the stone forth, and no more: Then with a pair of small Nippers, made either of Steel, Box-wood, or Brasil, being very smooth, and clap the strings of the stone between them, very near unto the setting on of the stone, and press them so hard, that there may be no flux of blood: Then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red hot, sear away the stone; then take a hard Plaster made of Rosin, Wax and washt Turpentine well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the strings: Then sear the strings, and then melt more of the Salve, till such time as you have laid a good thickness of the salve upon the strings: Then loose the Nippers, and as you did so with that stone, so do with the other also: Then fill the two flits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outsides of the Cod, and all over the Horses belly and thighs with Hogs grease clean rendered, and so let him rise: And keep him either in some very warm stable, or otherwise in some very warm pasture, where he may walk up and down; for there is nothing better for a Horse in this case, than moderate exercise.

Now if after the gelding you do perceive that his Cod and sheath doth swell in any extraordinary fashion, then you shall chase him up and down, and make him trot an hour in a day, and it will soon recover him, and make him sound without any impediment.

## C H A P. CLXXXI.

*Of the making of Curtails, or cutting off of the tails of Horses.*

**T**HE Curtailing of Horses is used in no Nation whatsoever, so much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reason of much Carriage, and heavy burthens which our Horses continually are exercised and imployed withal, and the rather, sith, we are strongly opinionated, that the taking away of those joints doth make the Horses chine or back a great deal stronger, and more able to support a burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily find it by continual experience.

Now for the manner of Curtailing of Horses, it is in this sort: First you shall with your finger and your thumb, grope till you find the third joint from the setting on of the Horses tail, and having found it, raise up all the hair, and turn it backward: Then taking a very small strong Cord, wrap it about that joint, and pull it both with your own strength and another mans, so streight as you can possible pull it: Then wrapt it about again, and draw it as straight  
or



or straighter again: and thus do three or four times about the tail, with all the possible straightness that may be; and then make fast the ends of the cord: Then take a piece of Wood, whose end is smooth and even, of just height with the strunt of the Horses tail, and setting it between the Horses hinder Legs, after you have tramelled all his four Legs, in such sort that he can no ways stir, then lay his tail there-upon, and taking a main strong sharp Knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so near as you can guess it, between the fourth and fifth joint, and then with a great Smiths Hammer, striking upon the back of the Knife, cut the tail asunder: Then if you see any blood to issue forth; you shall know that the cord is not straight

**I**f no blood follow, then it is well bound: This done, you shall take a red hot burning Iron, made round after this fashion, of the full compass of the flesh of the Horses tail, that the Bone of the tail may go through the hole, and with it you shall sear the flesh till you have mortified it; and in the searing you shall plainly see the ends of the veins start out like pap-heads; but you shall still continue searing them, until you see all to be most smooth, plain, and hard, so that the blood cannot break through the burning: Then may you boldly unloose the Cord; and after two or three days, that you perceive the sore begin to rot, you shall not miss to anoint it with fresh Butter, or else with Hogs-grease and Turpentine, until it be whole.

## C H A P. CLXXXII.

*To make a white Star in any part of a Horse.*

**I**F you will at any time make a white Star, either in your Horses fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take a Tile stone, and after you have burned it, beat it into fine Powder: Then take Lily Roots, Dasie Roots, White brier Roots, of each a like quantity, and having dried them beat them also into fine Powder, and mix them with the first: Then with a Razor shave that part of your Horse where you would have your Star: and then with this Powder rub it so vehemently, that you scarce leave any skin on; then take a good quantity of Honey-suckle flowers, & a like quantity of Honey, and the water wherein a Mole hath been sodden, and then distil them



them into a water, and with that water wash the sore place the space of three days together, and keep the Wind from it, and you shall presently see the white hairs to grow; for this Receipt hath been often very well approved.

There be other Farriers, which take a Crab, and roast it, and being fiery hot, bind it to that part which you would have white and it will scald away the old hair, and the next hair that groweth will be white. Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place to take the juice of sharp Onions, or Leeks, and to bath the place very much therewith: Then take Barley bread, as fire hot as it cometh from the Oven, and clap it to the shaved place, suffering it to lie so till it be cold; and then after anoint it with Honey, and the white hair will come. Other Farriers use to anoint the shaven place with the grease of a Moldy-warp sodden, and that will bring the white hairs. Other Farriers use after they have shaved it; to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broth wherein a Moldy-warp and some Swines grease hath been sodden.

Other Farriers use to boil a Moldy-warp in Salt-water for three days together, or else with strong Lee, and ever as one Liquor consumeth, to supply it with another; then with this Decoction being warm, anoint the shaved place, and it will bring white hairs suddenly. Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goat, and rub the shaved place therewith, and it will bring white hairs also.

Other Farriers take Sheeps milk, and boil it, and in that wet a Linen cloth, and being very hot lay it to, renewing it until you may rub off the hair with your finger; this done, apply the milk to it twice aday luke-warm, till the hair do come again, which without all question will be white.

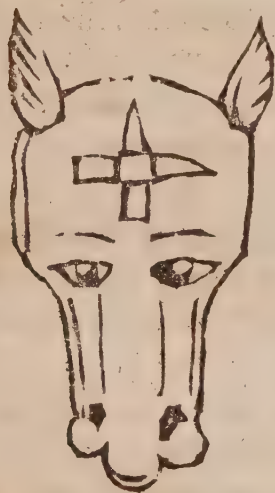
Other Farriers take the Roots of wild Cucumbers, and twice as much Nitrum mingled with Oil and Honey, or else add to your Cucumbers Sal nitrum beaten, and Honey, and anoint the shaven place therewith, and it will bring white hairs.

Other Farriers use to take a piece of a Brick-bat, and with it gently to rub and chafe the Place, till by the continuance thereof, you have rubbed away both the hair and the skin, so broad as you would have the Star, and then to after anoint it with Honey, until the hair come again: Or else to roast a Colewort stalk like a Warden, or an Egg, until it be stone hard; and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the Horses fore-head, and it will

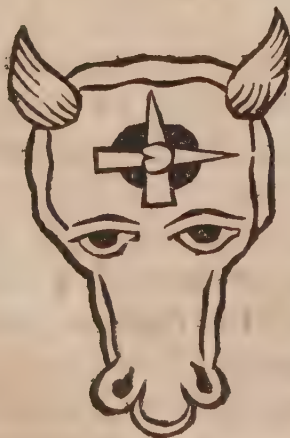


will scald of the hair, then to anoint it with Honey till the hair come again.

Now to conclude, and to shew you the most perfect and absolute experiment, which I have ever found to be most infallible, and it is thus: You shall take a very fine, sharp, long Bodkin, made for the same purpose, and thrust it up betwixt the skin and the bone upwards, so long as you would have the Star; and in thrusting it up, you shall hollow the skin from the bone, the bigness that you would have the Star: this done, you shall take a piece of Lead, made in the true shape of your Bodkin, and drawing out the Bodkin, thrust in the Lead into the same holes; then you shall thrust the Bodkin cross wise the forehead underneath the Lead; and then thrusting in such another piece



of Lead, you shall see it in the Horses face to present this figure; which being done, you shall take a very strong pack-thread, and putting it underneath all the four ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all straightness, you shall gather all the hollow skin together on a purse, folding the pack-thread oft and oft about, and still straighter and straighter, so that you shall see it then to present unto you this figure: This done, you shall let it rest at least the space of eight and forty hours, in which time the skin will be, as it were, mortified: Then may you unloose the pack thread, and draw forth the leaden pins, and with your hand close the hollow skin to the Fore-head hard again: And shortly after you shall see the hair to fall away, and the next hair which cometh be white; and this experiment is most infallible.



Now there be some other Farriers, which will not put in pins, nor use any pack thread, but only will slit the fore-head, and open the skin on both sides, and then put in either a Horn or a plate of Lead as big as the Star, and so let it remain till the skin rot: Then take out the Horn or Lead and anoint the place with Honey, and the water of Mallows sod, and it will bring white hair: And surely

ly this Experiment also is most Infallible; but it maketh a foul fore, and is somewhat long in bring his vertue to effect. Again



Again, I have seen a white Star also made by taking the guts of a Hen, or Pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly to the Horses face, having in readiness some hollow round thing made for the same purpose, to keep the guts together upon the horses face.

## C H A P. CLXXXIII.

*How to make a black Star, or white hair black.*

**I**F at any time you would have a desire to make upon a white Horse a black Star, you shall take a scruple of ink, and four scruples of the wood of Oliander beaten to Powder; incorporate this in as much Sheeps suet at will well suffice, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will no doubt make any white hair black.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fern Roots, and Sage sod in Lee, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed black hair: But you must wash the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers use to take the rust of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and stamp them with Oil: or else take Souters Ink, Galls and Rust, and beat them well together, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will turn any white hair to black.

## C H A P. CLXXXIV.


*To make a red Star in a Horses Face.*

**I**F you desire to make in your Horses face, or any other part, a Red Star, you shall take of *Aqua fortis*, one ounce, of *Aquavita* a penny-worth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence; put them into a glass, and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the hair to be of a perfect Red colour, only it will indure no longer than till the casting of the hair: And therefore, at every such time you must renew the hair again, if you would have the Star to continue.




## C H A P. CLXXV.

*How to make Hair to come very soon, very thick, and very long.*

 IF you would have Hair to come very soon in any bare place, or to grow thick where it is thin, or long where it is short, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) the Urine of a young Boy, and with it at first wash the place: After that, take Lee made of the unslakt Lime, Ceruse, and Litharge, and with it wash the hair oft, and it will make it come soon, long, and thick.

Other Farriers use to wash the place with water wherein the Roots of Althæa have been sod; Then after dry it gently with your hand, and it will encrease hair much. Other Farriers use to wash the place with Oil mingled with the ashes of Nut-shells burnt, or else Snail-shells burnt, and it will encrease hair also. Other Farriers take Agrimony pounded with Goats milk, and with it anoint the place, or else Oil wherein a Moldy-warpe hath been boiled, and anoint the place with either of them, and it will encrease hair very much. Other Farriers take the dung of Goats, Alum, Honey, and the blood of a Swine: Mingle them all together, and stir them till they be ready to boil, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-seed bruised with Honey, Water and Salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the Root of a white Lily beaten and sod in Oil, and anoint the place therewith. Others take the juice of a long Onion, or else the juice of Radishes, and anoint the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oil-Olive, and Honey boiled together, and with it anoint the bare place. Others take the Soot of a Cauldron mized with Honey and Oil, and anoint the place therewith.

 There be other ancient Farriers which use this, and it is the best of all, they take green Wall-nut-shells, and burn them to Powder, and then mix it with Honey, Oil, and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will encrease hair wonderfully, and very soon.



## C H A P. CLXXXVI.

*To make hair smooth, slick, and soft.*

**I**F you will make your Horses Coat to be smooth, slick, soft, and shining, you shall with sufficient store of cloth keep him warm at the heart, for the least inward cold will make the hair stare: Then you shall make him sweat oft; for that will raise up the dust and filth, which makes his coat foul and hard, then you shall, when the Horse is in his greatest sweat, with an old Sword blade turning the edge towards his hair, scrape, or as it were curry away all the white foam, sweat, and filth, which shall be raised up, and that will lay his coat even and make it smooth: And lastly, you shall when you let him blood, rub him all over with his own blood, and so let it remain two or three days, and then curry and dress him well, and this will make his coat shine like glass.

## C H A P. CLXXXVII.

*How to take off hair in any part of a Horse.*

**I**F you will at any time take off the Hair from any part of a Horse, you shall dissolve in water (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unslakt Lime: And then boil it till a quarter be consumed, then add to it an Ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a Plaster thereof to any part of the Horse, and it will in few hours bring all the hair away.

There be other ancient Farriers which boil in running Water, Rust and Orpiment, and with it being very hot wash the place, and it will soon bring the hair away.

## C H A P. CLXXXVIII.

*How to cast and overthrow a Horse.*

**W**Hensoever you intend to cast or overthrow your Horse, after you have brought him into a convenient place: As namely, either upon some green swarth, or upon some Dung-hill, or in some Barn upon good store of soft straw, you shall take and double a



long rope, and cast a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-Legs, and about his hinder pasterns, underneath his fetlock, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold down his head, under which always you must be sure to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your Horse on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder Legs, that he may not strike, take up his contrary fore-Leg, and when you do brand your Horse, see that the Iron be Red hot, and that the hair be both fear'd quite away, and the flesh scorched in every place before you let him go, and so you shall be sure to lose no labour.

### CHAP. CLXXXIX.

#### *How to know the Age of a Horse.*

**T**He age of every Horse is known, either by his teeth, by his hoofs, or by his tail.

It is known by his Teeth; at two years old he changeth the four fore-moſt teeth in his head, at three years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparent foals teeth but two of each ſide, above and below: At four years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foals teeth but one on each ſide, both above and below; at five years old he hath never a foals tooth before, but then he changeth his tuſhes, on each ſide: At ſix years old he putteth up his tuſhes, near about which you ſhall ſee apparently growing a little Circle of new and young fleſh; beſides, the tuſh will be white, ſmall, ſhort, and ſharp: At ſeven years old, the two out-moſt teeth of his nether chap on both ſides will be hollow, with a little black ſpeck in them: And at eight years old, then all his teeth will be full, ſmooth, and plain, the black ſpeck being clean gone, and his tuſhes will be ſomewhat yellow, without any circles of young fleſh: At nine years old, his foremoſt teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foul, and his tuſhes will be blunt: At ten years old, in the inſide of his upper tuſhes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers ends, which till that age you ſhall ever moſt perfectly feel; beſides the temples of his head will begin to be hollow and crooked: At eleven years of age his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul, only  
he



he will cut even, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another: At Twelve years old his teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper teeth will over-reach and hang over his nether teeth: At thirteen years his tusshes will be worn close to his chap if he be a much ridden Horse, otherwise they will be black, foul, and long like the fangs of a Boar.

If a Horses hoof be ruggid, and as it were seamed, one seam over another; if they be dry, full, and crusty, it is a sign of a very old age; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moist, hollow, and well founding hoof is a sign of young years.

If you take your Horse with your finger and your thumb, by the stern of the tail, close at the setting on by his buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your finger and your thumb of each side his tail, a joint stick out more than any other joint, by the bigness of a hazel Nut, then you may presume, the Horse is under ten years old, but if his joints be all plain, and no such thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at least thirteen. If a Horses eyes be round, full, and starting from his head, if the pits over his eyes be filled, smooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinkles either about his brow or under his eyes, then the Horse is young: If otherwise you see the contrary Characters, it is a sign of old age. If you take up a Horses skin on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and pluck it from the flesh; then letting it go again, if it suddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plain without wrinkle, then the Horse is young, and full of strength; but if being pulled up it stand, and not return to his former place, then be assured he is very old, and exceedingly wasted.

Lastly, if a Horse that is of any dark colour, shall grow grissel only about the Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane, it is then an infallible sign of most extreme old age: And thus much touching a Horses age.

#### CHAP. CXCV.

##### *How to make an old Horse seem young.*

**T**AKE a small crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat Corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two utmost teeth of each side the nether chap before, next to the



the tusshes, and then with an Awl blade prick it, and make the shell fine and thin; then with a sharp scraping Iron, make all his teeth white and clean: This done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the Horses eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only but through the skin, and then raising it up, put in a quill that is very small, as the quill of a Raven, or such like: and then blow the skin full of wind, till all the hollownes be filled up, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the wind will stay in, and the Horses countenance will be as if he were but six years old at the most.

## C H A P. CXCI.

*How to make a Horse that he shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.*

**I**F either when you are in service in the Wars, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion, you would not have your Horses to neigh, or make a noise, you shall take a list of woollen cloth, and tie it fast in many folds about the midst of your Horses tongue; and believe it, so long as the tongue is so tyed, so long the Horse can by no means neigh, or make any extraordinary noise with his voice, as hath been often tried and approved of.

## C H A P. CXCI.

*How to make a Horse exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur.*

**I**F your Horse be either dull of the Spur through his natural inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you shall first shave him the breadth of a saucer on both sides, just in the spurring place, on both sides the vein, then with a Lancet make six issues, or small orifices on both sides; then raising the skin from the flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt Salt, which will make the sore to rankle.

In this sort you shall keep it three days, and by no means ride the Horse; the third day being ended, you shall set a Child on his back with spurs, and make him spur the Horse in the sore place; which done, you shall wash the place with Piss, Salt, and Nettles sodden well together, and it will make his sides smart so extremely, that he will never abide the Spur after.

Now



Now you shall let him stand after his washing three days more, and then take half a pint of Honey, and with it anoint his sides once a day till they be whole. Also rub his sides with the powder of glass, and it will do the like.

## C H A P. CXCIII.

*How to make a Horse that tires, or is restiff, to go forward.*

**I**F your Horse, (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtiness of his nature, or dulness of spirit, be either so restiff, or so tired, that he will not go forward a foot, but standeth stock still: You shall then make a running snickle of a good small cord, and put it about his Cods and Stones, in such sort that it may not slip: Then you shall draw the rest of the cord between the girths and the Horses body, and bringing it up just between the Horses fore-Legs, be sure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you sit in the saddle, then ride the Horse forward, and when he beginneth to grow restiff or to stand still, then pluck the cord, and cramp him by the Stones, and you shall see that immediately he will go forward. And in this same manner you shall use him for at least a fortnight together, and it will clean take away that evil quality.

## C H A P. CXCIIV.

*Other most excellent and approved ways to preserve a Horse from tiring, never disclosed till now.*

**I**F your Horse either through violence of Labour, distemperature of Body, or naughtiness of Nature, happen to tire under you, or travel not with that spirit you desire, then when you come to a baiting place alight, and set up your Horse warm, but do not walk him: Then after he hath been well rubb'd, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the fine siev'd powder of Elicampne, and brew them together, then give it the Horse with an horn; which done, tie his head to the rack, for you need not care for Provender till night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him Oats or Bread, or both in plentiful manner, and being ready to take his back, give him the former quantity of Ale and Elicampne as aforesaid; and doubtless you shall find him



him to travel with great courage and Spirit, as hath been approved. Also if you take a bunch of Penny-royal, and tie it to the mouth of your bit or snaffle, you shall find it very comfortable, and it will cause your Horse to travel lustily.

✎ Again if you take of your best Tabaco, and dry it in the Sun in a glass close stopt, then pound it very small, and mix it with an equal quantity of Cockle-shells, then with the Oil of Dill, and the Oil of Cloves, make the powder into a paste, then make pretty round balls thereof as big as Wall-nuts, and dry them in the shadow in the Dog-days, then keep them close in a Gally-pot, and give them as Pills in the time of necessity; that is to say, a ball at a time, whensoever your Horse shall fail in travel: And this doth not only help tiring, but also takes away any cold whatsoever.

✎ Lastly, if your Horse notwithstanding for all this, do happen at any time to tire, then presently take off his Saddle, and with the herb Arsmart rub his back all over very hard, then laying Arsmart also under the Saddle, so ride him gently at the first, and if there be any Life in him, it will make him go, as it hath been made proof of.

#### C H A P. CXC.V.

*How to make a Horse to follow his Master, and find him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.*

**I**F you will have your Horse to have such a violent love towards you, that he shall not only follow you up and down, but also labour to find you out, and own you as soon as he hath found you: You shall then take a pound of Oat-meal, and put thereto a quarter of a pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and then make a Cake thereof, and put it in your bosom next unto your naked skin: Then run or labour your self up and down until you sweat, then rub all your Sweat upon your Cake; this done, keep your Horse fasting a day and a night, and then give him the Cake to eat, which as soon as he hath eaten, you shall turn him loose, and he will not only most eagerly follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he hath lost or doth miss you; and though you be environed with never so many, yet he will find you out, and know you, and you shall not fail, but every time that he cometh unto you, you shall spit in his mouth, and anoint his tongue with your spittle: And thus doing, he will never forsake you.

#### C H A P.



## C H A P. CXCVI.

*The Nature and special Qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Work, set down in the manner of Alphabet.*

## A.

**A** *Brotanum*, which we call in English Southern-wood, is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the Pipes of the Body, and is good for short wind.

*Absinthium*, which we call Worm-wood, is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second; it cleanseth, and bindeth, and is good for the Stomach.

*Aceto*, which we call Vinegar, especially if it be of wine, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree.

*Agaricum*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; it expelleth Humours, purgeth all Flegm and Choier, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys.

*Allium*, which we call Garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evil Humours.

*Agregum*, which we call Cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it burneth, draweth, and resolveth, and is exceeding good for Scurf, or wild Scabs, or for the Lungs.

*Agripa*, is a known Unguent that is good against all tumours.

*Alum*, called commonly Roch-Alum, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is good for cankers.

*Alder*, or Elder-tree, is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and flegm, and healeth wounds.

*Aloes*, is hot in the first, and dry in the third Degree: It cleanseth and dissolveth, and also comforteth the vital parts.

*Althea*, which we call white Mallows, is hot and dry: It looseneth and scattereth humours, warmeth and moistneth very much.

*Almonds*, are hot and moist in the first Degree: Provoke Urine, and are very good for the Lungs or Liver.

*Ambrosia*, which we call Wood-sage, represseth, driveth back, and bindeth humours.

*Ammoniacum* is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree: it softneth, and dissolveth humours.

*Anetum*, which we call Dill, is hot in the third and dry in

A a a the



the second Degree: It ripeneth crude humours, and expelleth heat.

*Aniseeds* are hot and dry in the third Degree: Expel cold, dissolve humours, and provoke Urine.

*Antimonium*, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

*Apio*, which we call *Smallage* or *Parsley*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: It ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

*Aristolochia* which we call *Birth-wort*, or *Hart-wort*, is hot, and cleanseth: But if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It draweth and purgeth thin water and flegm, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good against all manner of poison whatsoever, or biting of any venomous Beasts.

*Armoniack* both drieth, cooleth, softneth, and draweth.

*Artemisia*, which we call great *Tansie*, or *Mug-wort*, is hot in the second, and dry in the third Degree: It is very good for Worms, and swellings in the sinews.

*Arsnick* of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the first Degree: It bindeth, eateth, and fretteth, being a very strong Corrosive.

*Assafetida* is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the first Degree: It cleanseth evil humours.

*Asphaltum* is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*: It is hot and dry and comforteth any swelling.

*Affoneteo* is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth and drieth, and is good for to comfort the stomach.

*Assungia*, which we call the soft or fresh grease, is hot and moist in the first Degree: It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any Wound, Impostume, or Ulcer.

*Avena*, which we call commonly Oats, are naturally dry: They do dry, bind, cleanse, and comfort all the inward Parts, and are the only principal simples which do naturally agree with the composition of a Horses body; and therefore the Oil or the Quintessence of them is the only absolute and perfect medicine that can be administered for any inward sickness, as experience will approve and make perfect.

*Avelane*, which we call the ashes of Nutshells burnt, are hot and dry, and do skin or stop the flux of matter.



## B

**B***Ay-berries*, are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rheums, or shortness of Wind, especially for any disease in the Lungs: They are good against poisons, consumptions, short Breath, flegm, hardness of hearing, help tiring, Cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, stoppings of the Liver, cure the Yellows and Droplie.

*Balsamum* is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth, draweth and comforteth.

*Bdellium* is a gum that is hot and dry: It softneth, and draweth away moisture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoever.

*Bertonicum*, or *Bettonicum*, which we call Dog-stone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the first Degree: It purgeth, and cleanseth all evil humours.

*Biacca* is cold and dry in the second Degree: It closeth things opened, it softens hardness, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excretions.

*Bittole*, which we call Beets, is cold and moist, and cleanseth Ulcers.

*Bitumen* is a kind of Brimstone, or fatness from the Sea, it is hot and dry in the second Degree, and is comfortable against any swelling.

*Bottiro* is hot in the first, and moist in the second Degree, and it ripeneth Impostumes.

*Bole-Armonia* is a certain earth which is cold and dry, which bindeth and driveth back evil humours, and is also an excellent Defensive against fluxes of Blood.

*Branc-wrsin* is a wonderful great softner and mollifier.

*Brassica*, which we call Cole-worts, is very dry it doth conglutinate Wounds, it healeth Ulcers and Tumours, it holdeth the feed and killeth evil humours.

*Brotano*, which is the same that *Abrotanum* is, look there.

*Brusco* which we call Butchers Broom, or knee-holm, is hot in the second Degree, and dry in the first, it provokes Urine.

*Briony*, of these there are two kinds the white and the black, but the White is more effectual; the root of it is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good for all old Diseases; it also drieth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardness.



## C.

**C** *Alafonia* or *Colofonia*, doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are separated.

*Calaminto*, which we call wild Penny-Royal, or wild Mint, of which, that which grows on the Mountains is the best, is hot and dry in the third degree, doth resolve Tumours, and draweth away Humours.

*Calcina viva*, which we call unslakt Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it adusteth, drieth, and corrodeeth.

*Camomila*, which we call Camomile, is hot and dry in the first degree, it mollifieth and dissolveth all Grievs, and is good especially for the Liver,

*Camedros*, which we call Germander, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is good against all moist Colds.

*Camphora* is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preserveth the Body from Putrefaction, and bindeth Humours.

*Canabis*, which we call Hemp, is hot, the Seed whereof driveth away extraordinary Colds; it ripeneth and dissolveth Humours, and mollifieth and drieth Inflammations.

*Cinamon*, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward Sickneses.

*Canna*, which we call Reeds, especially the Hedge-Reed, draweth out Pricks, if you lay the Roots to the Knobs.

*Cantharides*, are certain Flies, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they will raise Blisters in the sound Parts.

*Capilli Veneris*, which we call Maidens-hair, is dry, and bindeth loose Humours.

*Cardimonium*, is hot, it extenuateth Humours, and being mixt with Vinegar killeth Scabs.

*Cloves* are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

*Carrawaies* are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth Wind and cleanseth evil humours.

*Cassia* is hot and moist in the first Degree, it expelleth Wind, dissolveth humours, and purgeth the stomach of choler and flegm.

*Castoreum* is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

*Cabbage* is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth and ripeneth humours.

*Cinere*



*Cinere*, which we call Ashes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanse mightily,

*Centuria*, which we call wild running *Bettony*, swelling like *Marjoram*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it bindeth wounds, and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the Worms, Sores and Wounds, and is commonly called *Centaury*.

*Cepe*, which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: It doth cleanse corruptions, and ripen swellings.

*Cervil* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

*Cerufa* is a white Ointment made of Oil and white Lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: And for the effects it hath all those, which *Braceha* hath.

*Cerecallo*: See *Serecocollo*.

*Chelidonium* which we call *Selandine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth all putrefactive humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellows or jaundice.

*Cicuta*, which we call Hemlock, is cold in the fourth degree, it nummeth and astonieth.

*Cicoria*, which we call Succory, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

*Comin* is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: It mollieth and ripeneth.

*Cipollo*, which is Leeks, or as we call them, chives, see *Cepe*.

*Cinabar*, or *Sanguis Draconis*, or as we call it *Vermillion*, is a certain metal drawn from quick Sulphur, and Quick-silver, it drieth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth and comforteth Ulcers.

*Cito* or *Cisto*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

*Citrons*, or *Cithrons*, are cold and moist in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

*Colloquintida*, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth only.

*Colofonia*, which we commonly call Earth-pitch, or Greek-pitch, it hot and dry in the third degree; it conglutinated and gathereth together. See *Pecce Grace*.

*Cocumeri*, see *Cucumber*.

*Consolida*, which we call Comphry, is cold: It conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

*Costro*, or *Cosso* being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

*Costus*, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second degree: and it raiseth up worms, and is that which we call Herb *Mary*, or the root of *Angelico*.

*Corne*



*Corne di cervo*, which we call harts-horn, is dry, yet it strengthneth very much, and expelleth poison.

*Crocum* which we call Saffron, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: It bindeth, comforteth, and resolveth Impostumes.

*Cucumeri Silvaggi*, is hot and dry in the third degree: It dissolveth, softneth, and purgeth flegm.

*Cucumeri elaterium*, is cold and moist in the second degree: It cleanseth much, and is made of the juice of wild Cucumbers.

## D

**D**ates are hot and moist in the second degree: They do resolve and disperse things knit together.

*Diacatholicon* purgeth all offensive humours which offend the body whatsoever.

*Diaphœnicon* or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, and comforteth all griefs of the belly which are begot by crude humours, springing from Colicks or such like pains.

*Dialtea* or *Dialthæa*, is an ointment made of Holy hox, or Sea mallow; it warmeth and moistneth.

*Dragon-wort* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

## E

**E***Buli*, which we call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree; it drieth, and driveth out Water, and expelleth Choler and thin flegm; see *Sambucus*.

*Edera terrestris*, which we call ground-Ivy, see *Hedera*.

*Elaterium* see *Cucumeri*.

*Elleboro*, which we call neefing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and black; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Eruca*, which we call Rocket, and of which the wild is the best; the seeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth Urine, Worms and Water.

*Elusa*, which is an herb like sponge, is hot in the fourth degree, and drieth and cleanseth exceedingly: and of some is called Wolf's milk.

*Euforbium* is a gum that is hot in the fourth degree; it drieth, purgeth, cleanseth, and exulcerateth much.

*Excursion*



*Excision* is that which we call *Oxigation*, is a certain composition or mixture made of *Aceto* and water, and is good to allay swellings and tumours.

F P P

**F** *Aba*, which we call a Bean, is cold and dry, and it cleanseth, and dissolveth very much.

*Farina* which we call Bran, is hot and dry in the first degree, and dissolveth very much.

*Fern* is dry and binding, but the root is hot and cleansing, and killeth Worms.

*Felle*, which we call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanseth and mundifieth.

*Ferrugo*, which we call the rust of Iron, is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and restraineth evil humours.

*Fici aridi*, which we call dry figs, are hot and dry in the second degree; they ripen tumours, soften and consume hardness, and are good for puriveness, coughs, and Diseases of the Lungs.

*Filomontano*, which we call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to herbs, winding about them like threads; it openeth the Liver and Milt, and purgeth all flegm and choler.

*Filonio* is a composition, which will astonish or benumb any part or member.

*Fennel* is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree: It doth dissolve all manner of gross humours, and is good for the Liver or Lungs.

*Fuligo* which we call Soot, is hot and dry, and it drieth marvelously, and so doth all soots whatsoever.

G 2, 3, 4, 5

**G** *Alanga*, which we call Galangal, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It easeth the Stomach of all griefs which proceed from cold causes: It streightneth the brain, and comforteth the Senses.

*Galbanum* is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second: it softeneth, stopeth, and draweth away evil humours, and is good against a cold.

*Galla*, which we call Galls, or a light fruit of Oaks, are hot and pleasing.

*Garrisilata*, which we call herb Bennet, is hot and dry in the second Degree.

Garofoli,



*Garofoli*, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable for inward sickness.

*Ginger* is hot, and is excellent to preserve heat in the inward parts.

*Genistra* or *Ginistra*, which we call Broom, is hot and dry in the third degree; it killeth Worms, and scoureth much.

*Gentian*, especially the Root, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree; it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanse all evil humours, and it is good for the Liver and Stomach, and for Wounds and Sores.

*Gillio*, which we call Lilies, softneth Sinews, and are good for Wounds and Sores.

*Gramen*, which is any manner of Grain and Pulse, is cold and dry, except Wheat, and that is temperately hot and moist; they do incarnate and mundifie.

*Grasso*, which is any manner of Fat, is hot and moist, and doth ripen and soften.

## H.

**H** *Arundinis cortex*, which we call Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Hedera*, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener,

*Helxine*, which we call Pellitory of the Wall, cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for any old Cough, or for any Inflammations.

*Hysoppo*, which we call Hyssop, there is both wild, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the best, it is hot and dry in the third degree; cleanseth and warmeth, it is good for Inflammations of the Lungs, old Coughs, Pozes, Rheums, and short Wind.

*Hordeum*, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the first degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

## I.

**I** *Ncense*, which we call Frankincense, it drieth and incarnateth; see *Olibanum*.

*Ipericon*, which we call Saint-Johns-wort, expelleth moisture, and healeth burnings.

Irios



*Irios Florentia*, which we call Flower-de-luce, especially the root: it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Iride Illirica*: See *Helpine*.

*Iris* is a root that is hot and dry: It cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

*Iaspiana*, which we call Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree: it astonisheth and benumbeth.

*Juniper* is hot and dry in the third degree: The berries are good for the Stomach, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneys; it cureth all Coughs, gripings, and Windiness of the Belly, and provoketh Urine: Is good against all Venom, the infection of the Plague, and kills Worms.

## L

**L** *Igustum* which we call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: It expelleth Wind, especially the Seed and Root.

*Lapathum*, which we call a Dock, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

*Lauri*, which we call Laurel, or Bays, are hot and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

*Lentisco* is a gum that is like Mastick; it is dry in the second Degree, and moderately bindeth: It is bitter in taste, and ever green.

*Linosa*, which we call flax or Line, the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

*Lee* is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It is very adustive, cleansing and piercing.

*Lythargyrio*, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of Gold the other of Silver: It is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up; and of these two, that which is like Gold is the best.

*Lolium*, which we call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolveth much.

*Lumachs*, which we call House-snails without shells, do conglutinate very much.

## M

**M** *Alva* is cold and moist, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth pain.

B b b

*Malvariscus*



*Maluaviscus* is very dry, it softneth, loosneth, and mitigateth.

*Mace* is dry in the third degree, without heat, and only bindeth.

*Manna* is of equal temper, hot and dry, it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

*Mariaton* or *Martiaton*, is a hot unguent against all cold humours: It helpeth the grief of sinews, purgeth old watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

*Marrubeo*, which we call Hore-hound, of which there be two kinds, the white and the black; but the white is the better: It is hot in the second, and dry in the third Degree: It helpeth obstructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good against colds and for sores.

*Mastick* is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: It draweth and drieth, bindeth and softneth, and is good against cold.

*Medulla*, which we call Marrow, of what kind soever, is cold and moist, and mollifieth Ulcers; now the best Marrow is that of a Hart, or old Stag, the next of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the last that of a Goat.

*Mel*, which we commonly call Honey, is hot and dry in the second Degree; it cleanseth the stomach and the entrails, stoppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Melissa*, which we call Balm, is hot in the second, and dry in the first Degree; it cleanseth and conglutinateth.

*Mentha*, which we call Mint, is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree, of which the wild Mint is the best: it killeth Worms, it bindeth, it dissolveth, and is good for the stomach, or a cold Liver.

*Minito*, which we call red Lead, is cold and dry, and good against swellings.

*Myrrhe* or *Myrrha*, is a sovereign Gum; it is hot and dry in the second Degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanseth wounds, is good against all colds, killeth worms, and helpeth the purfick: for though it doth cleanse much, yet it doth not exasperate the Arteries; also it doth incarnate.

*Morcosita* or *Marcafita*, is hot and dry; it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humors.

*Mertilia* is the fruit of the Myrtill-tree, it is dry in the third Degree, it doth bind good, and loosen evil humours.

*Morcas*, which we call the Mulberry, the unripe is cold and dry in the second Degree: The bark, but chiefly the root, is hot and dry



dry in the third Degree, it doth cleanse, purge and bind, the root thereof killeth Worms, and the gum thereof doth loosen, and the juice of the berry doth heal cankers, or sore mouths.

## N

**N** *Arcissi Radix*, which we call the Root of a white *Daffodil*, or else *Prime-rose* pearless, is dry, it cleanseth and draweth, and healeth wounds.

*Nardi radix*, which we call *Set-wall*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it bindeth and *Spica Nardi* provoketh Urine.

*Nasturtium* is hot and dry in the fourth Degree; It burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth Worms; see *Agrecum*, which we call *Cresses*.

*Nigella*, which we call *Git*, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It stayeth Wind, killeth Worms, and looseneth; yet to give too great a quantity is dangerous.

*Nitrum* is of the same nature that *Salt-peter* is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

## O

**O** *Libanum* is a gum, it is hot and dry in the second Degree; it warmeth, bindeth, closeth wounds, and incarnateth.

*Oil of Olives* is of a very temperate nature, and changeth its qualities according to the nature of the *Simples* which are mixt with it.

*Opium* is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a *Liquor* made with *Poppy* dried and mixt with *Saffron*, it doth astonish and provoke sleep.

*Opoponax* is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: It softneth and stayeth humors: It is good against all Colds. See *Papaver*, *Galbanum*; *Bdellium* or *Sagapenum*.

*Orpimento* is a kind of Metal, of which the artificial is called *Arsenick*, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second, it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a *Corrosive*.

*Origano*, which we call wild *Marjoram* or *Penny-royal*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it taketh away stoppings, and is good for Coughs.



*Orobus*, which we call Fitches, are hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: They do open and cleanse.

*Orizo*, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the first degree: it ripeneth and cleanseth.

*Urtica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry: They are biting and wholesome for the Lungs, or for Sores.

*Ovum*, which we call Eggs, the white is cold, and the yolk is hot, and doth incarnate.

## P

**P***Anacea* is that Herb whose fruit we call *Opoponax*.

*Panico* is a grain which we call Panick, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

*Papaver*, which we call Poppy, the Seeds thereof are white, and hot in the fourth degree. See *Opium*.

*Pastinache*, which we call Parsnips, are hot, and do provoke Urine.

*Pece*, which we commonly call Pitch, is hot and dry in the second degree, draweth, drieth and ripeneth.

*Pece liquida*, which we call Tar, is hot and dry in the second degree, is good against Colds, or evil humours gathered together in the breast, and draweth wounds.

*Pece Resina*, which we call Rosin, or Pitch of Greece, it draweth, healeth and incarnateth.

*Pece Resina & liquida*, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

*Pepper* is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for all Diseases of the Breast or Lungs.

*Peaches* are cold and moist in the second degree: They bind and stir up Worms.

*Petasites*, which we call Butter-bur, is dry in the third degree.

*Petroleum*, is a certain Oil made of Salt-Peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the second Degree, it healeth wounds and comforteth weak members.

*Petrocellium*, which we call Parsley, or Stone-Parsley is, and especially his Seed, hot and dry in the third degree: It stays wind, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

*Philonium*,



*Philonium*, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Persicum*, are excellent compositions, and most comfortable after the loss of blood.

*Pologono*, which we call Knot-grafs, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth back humours.

*Plantago*, which we call Plantain, is cold and dry in the third degree: It comforteth, drieth, bindeth, and incarnateth wounds.

*Porri*, which we call Leeks, Scallions or Onions, are hot and dry, and do extenuate Obstructions, and raise and loosen all evil humours in the Body.

*Puce* or *Porrum*, is hot in the second degree, and it is good for all cold watrish Stomachs.

*Pulegium*, which we call Penny-royal, is hot and dry in the third degree, it doth vehemently dry in moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs.

*Punicum Malum*, which we call Pomegranate, is cold and dry: It bindeth, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach.

## R

**R** *Afano* or *Raphanus*, which we call Radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: They comfort and are good for old Colds; but especially they provoke Urine.

*Resina*, which we call Rosin, is hot and dry in the second degree: it stoppeth, softneth, cleanseth, draweth and purgeth wounds, and is good against cold causes.

*Resalgar*, see *Risigalla*.

*Rigoretio* or *Rigolio*, which we call Liquorice, is temperate in heat and moisteneth, and ripeneth, and is good for Heat in the Stomach or Liver, and profitable against wounds.

*Risigalla*, is a Composition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unslakt Lime; and is a most strong Corrosive.

*Rossa flos*, which we call Rose-leaves, or Rose-cakes, are dry and binding.

*Rubea*, which we call Madder, is dry: It comforteth and incarnateth, the root thereof provoketh Urine and is good for the yellows.

*Ruberb* or *Rubarb* is hot and dry in the second degree, it purgeth choler and flegm, and putteth away stoppings.

*Ruta*, which we call Rue or Herb grace, is hot and dry in the  
third



third degree: But the wild Rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth, the Garden-Rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward inflammations, it ripeneth, and drieth, and expelleth wind.

## S

**S***avina*, which we commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third degree, it openeth, dissolveth, drieth mightily, and is most soveraign against worms.

*Sacoro* is hot and moist, and is very comfortable.

*Sagapenum*; see *Serapino*.

*Sagina* or *Saggina* or *Sergo*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

*Salo*, which we call Salt, is hot and dry in the second degree: and it cleanseth.

*Salamora*, which we call Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the same nature that Salt is.

*Sal-armoniack* is hot and dry in the fourth degree: And it cleanseth.

*Salee*, which we call Sallows or Willows: It bindeth and drieth vehemently.

*Salgemma*, is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry: It cleanseth and mundifieth.

*Sal-nitro*, some use for this Salt-peter, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth: It comforteth Sinews and taketh away tiring or weariness.

*Salvia*, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the second degree: it cleanseth and bindeth. Is good for Wounds, or Exulceration of the Lungs.

*Sambucus*, which we call Elder-tree or Wall-wort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first: It drieth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

*Sandolo*, which we call Sanders, are cold and dry in the second degree, and drive back humours.

*Sandolo Rosso* or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red Sand or white Sand, are hot and dry, and bring on skin.

*Sanguis draconis*, see *Cinabar*: Yet some take it for the red Dock, or red Patience, but it is not so.

*Sapone*, which we call Sope, is hot: It draweth, mollifieth, drieth cleanseth and purgeth.

*Sassifragia*



*Sassifragia*, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry, and binding.

*Scabioso*, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the second degree; they do regenerate, and are good for scabs, for the Lungs, or for the soreness in the breast.

*Scammonium*, which is the juice of a root, is hot in the third degree: It digesteth and purgeth choler, but must never be given inwardly, unless it be corrected.

*Scariola*, which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

*Sarcocolla*, is a Gum of the kind of *Euforbium*; it is hot and dry in the second degree: It cleanseth, incarnateth, and comforteth Wounds.

*Sea Onions*, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree; it ripeneth and expelleth humours, it hindreth putrefaction and preserveth health.

*Semola*, which we call young Cole-worts, are hot and dry in the first degree.

*Semper-vive*, which we call Housleek, and some call Stone-crop, is cold in the third and dry in the second degree; it is good for burnings and frettings, or for inflammation of Ulcers; it driveth back humours, cooleth and bindeth.

*Savadoice* is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: It cleanseth and openeth.

*Serapino*, is a Gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: It mollifieth, looseneth, and is good for Colds.

*Serpillo*, which we call wild running Betony or Thyme, smelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

*Sinapi*, which we call Mustard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: It draweth and resolveth, and is good for Scurfs or wild Scabs.

*Solatro*, which we call Night-shade, is cold in the third degree.

*Sulphur-vive*, which we call Brimstone, is hot and dry in the third degree: It draweth, disperseth humours, and killeth worms.

*Spelta*, which we call Beer-Barley, is a grain less than Wheat, and shorter than Rye, but not so black, is cool and cleansing.

*Sparaci*, which we call Asparagus, is without any manifest heat or cold, and only cleanseth.

*Spiga* or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the first, and dry



dry in the second degree: It cleanseth, and is good for the head, especially the Conserve, which is very comfortable.

*Squille*, is that which we call the Sea-Onion; see Sea Onion.

*Stecados*, which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

*Storax* or *Stirax*, is a sweet Gum, which is hot and dry: It correcteth, softneth, and is good for coughs or any sickness in the head.

*Surgeons of the first*  
T  
L 42

**T***Artaro*, which we call Tartar, is the excrements of Wine, which stick to the Vessel: It is hot and dry in the third degree, and only cleanseth.

*Tataruch*, which we call Snails with shells, are of the same nature that Snails without shells are.

*Tasso barbarosso*, which we call Yew, is of the nature of poison.

*Turpentine* is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: It draweth, cleanseth, skinneth and comforteth.

*Thymum*, which we call Thyme, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth flegm.

*Thuris Lacrima*, which we call frankincense, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree. See *Olibanum*.

*Thuris cortex*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth.

*Thuris succulis* is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Tithymalis*, which we call Spurge or Milk-Thistle, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: It cleanseth and purgeth flegm and choler, and is good for old sores or fistula's.

*Trifora Magna* is a certain Composition which will provoke sweat, helpeth grief in the Stomach, and taketh away all cold Rheums.

*Tutia Preparata* is a certain Mineral that is cold in the first, and dry in the second degree, and is very good for sore Eyes.

## V

**V***Eratro*, see *Ellebore*.

*Verbena*, which we call Vervein, is hot and dry: It comforteth and mundifieth.

*Verderame*, which we call Verdigrease, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corrosive that eateth away dead flesh.

*Vermi*,



*Vermi*, which we call Worms, do conglutinate and comfort sinews.

*Verce* is hot and dry. See *Brasica*.

*Vitro*, which we call Glass, is hot in the first and dry in the second, and it cleanseth.

*Vinacce*, which we call the Kernels of Grapes, are dry.

*Vinga Pastoris*, which we call wild Tassel, is cold in the third, and dry in the first degree: It comforteth and bindeth.

*Vischio*, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth Degree: It drieth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid stuff, it burneth, and is Corrosive.

*Vitelli* or *Viris alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the root: It cleanseth and killeth scabs: It drieth, it draweth, molli-fieth and dissolveth.

*Vitelli* which we call the yolks of any Eggs, are hot, and do strengthen and incarnate.

*Vitriol*, which we call Copperas, is of two kinds, that is, *Vitriolum Romanum*, which we call green Copperas, and *Vitriolum album*, which we call white Copperas, they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger; they take away scurfs, and kill scabs.

*Vitriola Calcanthum*, is reckoned amongst Metals, and is a kind of inky earth: Drieth and fretteth.

*Vitriola herba* is an herb that groweth on the wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall. See *Helxine*.

*Urtica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and stop and cleanse humors, and are good for sores.

## Z

**Z** *Eferano*, which we call Saffron, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: It comforteth and expelleth all inward Poison, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Zebulus*, see *Ziziphe*.

*Zentonic*, which we call Worm-seed, is hot and dry.

*Zenzera*, which we call Ginger, is of the nature of Pepper, and hath the strength of long Pepper; it maintaineth natural heat, and is good for cold stomachs.

*Ziziphe* taketh away Coughs, and helpeth the shortness of Breath.

*Zucche*, which we call Gourds, are cold and moist in the second degree, and it allayeth all manner of Inflammations, or hot swellings.



## C H A P. CXC VII.

*Certain Principles touching SIMPL ES.*

**Y**OU shall understand, that touching Simples, some are only to ease pain, as Linseed, Camomil, soft Grease, Suet of all sorts, or any other Oil that is hot in the first degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyna* or *Lynogs*.

There are other Simples which are astonying, benumbing or bringing sleep, as Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlock, and such like, which are gross and cold in the fourth degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongst Leaches, called *Narcotica*.

The third sort of Simples are such as incarnate or breed flesh, as Frankincense, Flour, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, and such like, which are hot in the second degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of Simples are corroding, fretting or burning, as Arsnick, Rissagallo, Mercury, Lime; and such like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whensoever they are applied simple or compound, then the Medicine is called *Corrosive*.

The fifth sort of Simples are those which be called mollifying, and are four in number; that is, green Mallows, white Mallows, Violets, and Brank-urfin.

The last sort of Simples are those which are called Cordials, and are three in number: that is to say, Violets and Bugloss of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, use, property, and operation of Simples.



## C H A P. CXCVIII.

Weights and Measures, and to know them by their Characters.

As I have in this work set down your Weights and Measures in such plain English, that every one may understand: Yet forasmuch as the more curious do set down many excellent Receipts under obscure Characters, I think it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you find any such, you may not be ignorant in the understanding of them.

Know then that the least of all weights is a grain, which is the weight either of a Barley-corn, or of a Pepper-corn, and his Character is *G.* or *Gr.*

*Siliqua* is four grains, and his Character is *℥.*

An English half-penny is five grains, and his Character is *ob.*

A Scruple is twenty grains, and his Character is *℞.*

A dram is three Scruples, or the eighth part of an Ounce, and his Character is *℥.*

A Roman Penny is the same that a Dram is, and his Character is *X.*

An ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty four scruples, and four hundred and eighty grains, and his Character is *℥.*

The Character of half an ounce is *℥ss.*

A Pound in medicinal Receipts is twelve ounces, and his Character is *℔.*

The Handful is six Ounces and a half, and his Character is *M.*

The Character of as much as you can hold betwixt your Fingers is *p.*

The Character for a drop is *Gut.*

The Character for three drops is *Gut. iij.*

*℔ss.* is half a Pound.

*℥ss.* is half an Ounce.

*℥ss.* is half a Dram.

*℞ss.* is half a Scruple.

*℥jss.* is an Ounce and a half.

*Mjss.* is a handful and a half.

*Pj* is half a handful, which is three ounces and a half.

*Ana* or *an*, is like, or of each alike.



And thus much touching Weights,

# CHAP. CXCIX.

*The Farriers Instruments expounded, with their Names and*

**T**He Figure 1. sheweth the Hammer, which driveth in  
Figure 2. Pincers which breaketh off, clengeth and  
eth the nail.

3. The Butter is that which pareth and openeth the Foot.
  4. The Rasp or Rape, which maketh smooth the Hoof.
  5. The Cutting Knife, which taketh away the superfluous Hoof.
  6. The Fleam, with which he letteth blood in the Neck, or in the gross places where the vein is great.
  7. The Farriers Lancet which openeth small veins and threads, where the Stroak may not be used.
  8. The Incision-Knife, to open Impostumes and to cut away superfluous Flesh.
  9. The Cronet to take up Veins.
  10. The drawing cauterizing Iron to open and separate the flesh either sound or impostumed.
  11. The round button cauterizing Iron to bore holes in the skin, and swelled places.
  12. The Mullets to cleanse Wounds.
  13. The Barnacles to pinch an Horse by the nose or ears, to make him endure pain patiently.
  14. The Needle to stich up Wounds.
  15. The Probe to search and find out the depth of Wounds.
- And thus you have a full Explanation of all the needful Instruments belonging to the skilful Farrier,





*The Farriers chief Instruments.*





my master only & supply  
Let beging fellows go and bye  
My Master only & supply  
Let beging fellows go and bye

Stio  
Lampfold



T H E  
P O S T S C R I P T .

*Courteous Reader,*

**H**AVING now with infinite Labour and Industry perfected and finished this my M A S T E R - P I E C E for the Cure of Horses and Mares, wherein the Physical part of Horsemanship concerning those manifold inward Diseases which are incident to Horses is clearly discovered, and the Chirurgical part concerning outward Accidents, is plainly opened and described; and having for the more absolute Advancement of Horsemanship, and to give Satisfaction therein, made a particular Speculation and run through every Part, Vein, Bone, Sinew and Artery of the Horses Body, demonstrating not only their Number and Place by Figure, but also considering their Disaffections and Diseases which do thereunto belong; and having also with much pain (as a Work of this difficult nature requireth) brought it to a full period, not only giving you a few terms of Art concerning Horsemanship, but making an Anatomy from head to foot of all the Integral parts of a Horse, with their Diseases inward and outward, and their Physical, and Chirurgical Cure exactly prescribed and set down, and have given you ocular Demonstrations of the whole Fabrick of the Horses Body. So that as in a Map you may behold every small Part, River, Creek or Stream running up and down within the Superficies of the Earth; so I have likewise made and drawn divers Pictures, setting out all the parts and parcels of a Horses Body; and that they may be plainly seen and considered, I have most lively delineated and  
figured



figured out every Part and Vein in the Horſe, where to find it from head to foot. I have alſo Anatomized the Horſe in every Bone, that you may perceive their Conjunction, and how they are joined, and thereby judge of their Diſlocations, and putting out of their places; and all this you ſhall at one view behold in the ſeveral Parts and Figures which you ſhall find in this Book.

Therefore, I would adviſe all Gentlemen, and others, who being of a generous ſpirit, cannot chuſe but delight and take wonderful pleaſure in Horſes, to conſider, that for want of Care and Experience many excellent Horſes falling into flight and common Diſeaſes, have either utterly periſhed, or elſe been lamed and ſpoiled; it will be therefore a Study worthy the thoughts of a generous Spirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward Diſeaſes of Horſes, in regard that a Horſe is a Beaſt whoſe praises cannot be ſufficiently declared.

The Horſe is commodious for common uſe, as pleaſing Tillage, and transporting of Carriages and Burthens, and alſo for Mens continual occaſions and daily Journeys. In time of Peace, when Princes did uſe to recreate themſelves with Hunting Deer and other wild Beaſts, Horſes were always had in high eſtimation and honour; and thoſe that would out-run the Wind, and made the beſt ſpeed after the Chace were moſt eſteemed, ſo that there could be no pleaſure in hunting, if they had not Horſes to carry them after their Game; and what a brave fight is it to ſee, in a field an hundred or more hunting Horſes riding and running this way or that way after the timorous Deer, or fearful Hare? Therefore the Horſe, as he was made for induſtrious Labour, ſo he is fit to maintain and procure the Pleaſures and Delights of a Prince, or any Nobleman.

And moreover in War, the Courage and Service of a Horſe



Horse is daily now seen, and two well known; he will as if he were animated by the sound of Drums and Trumpets, presently rush into the Battel, and take delight to charge the Enemy; he is all fire, and full of mettle and Fury. And thus we see that a Horse is not only convenient for daily occasions of the Husbandman, of Travellers, and divers others, but in Princes-Courts he is highly esteemed for Hunting, for Races, and other Pastimes; and also in the Wars, his daily Service is sufficiently known, being a Beast of a magnanimous and undaunted courage, so that the Horse is naturally made for Profit and Pleasure; for Labour and Delight; for Peace and War; for Hunting, for Triumphs, and all gallant occasions.

It is pity then that a brave Horse, well-limb'd and spirited, falling sick in any inward Disease, or outward accidental infirmity, as Sprains, Dislocation of Bones, Spavins, and hundreds more, should be spoiled, in suffering the Disease to grow on him until it be incurable, or in applying Remedies unfit for the Malady; whereby many a Horse becomes maimed, and for want of Cure utterly disabled for any Service.

Therefore my advice and counsel is, (as I said before) that if any Gentlemen whatsoever, shall have their Horses, either by outward accident, as Sprains, pricking in the Feet, and the like; or inward Surfeits, Glanders, Colds and Heats, by intemperate and extraordinary Riding fall sick, or become through the aforesaid Infirmities any ways disabled for Service, they should not depend upon their own Experience or Judgment, but should wisely consider with themselves, and consult with the Farrier, reasoning together, and comparing their Opinions concerning the Causes and Cures of such Diseases as are incident to their Horses, that so by this means, by the height of Discourse and Reason they may come to a certain and



infallible knowledge of the Horses Diseases and Infirmities, and having diligently searched out the Causes thereof, they may know likewise to cure the same; for you shall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not Book-learned, and therefore have no more knowledge than Horses themselves, but are subject through their Ignorance to run into many gross Errors, so that through their Negligence and aforesaid Ignorance, mistaking the causes and cures of Diseases, and in one word, most grossly, for it is good for experience both in the Theorick and Practick part of any Art or Science.

For another (to my knowledge) many good Horses do continually remain lame and unfit for Service, or else do utterly perish for want of understanding their Diseases and the particular Cures thereof. Therefore as wise Physicians do consult together when they meet with a sick Patient, so I advise both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their Judgments together, whereby the Beast may be saved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gain Credit, and their Experience and knowledge in the many diseases of Horses much bettered.

Moreover, for the Readers greater benefit, all Simples and Compounds good for Horses are Alphabetically here placed, and the Conditions of them whether hot or cold, with their Names and Qualities are described. Also what Ounces, Drams and Scruples are to be given in any Drink. If Gentlemen be unacquainted with these things, let them confer with the Farriers, and so confirm their Judgments by Discourse. And so, courteous Reader, I have left you my best Work thus accomplished, and thus perfected, that I know, in all the points belonging to the Cure of Horses, it will give full satisfaction, if the Reader follow the Advice of this Postscript.








THE




THE  
TABLE  
OF THE  
FIRST BOOK,  
CONTAINING  
*All Cures Physical.*

Chapter.	Page.
<b>T</b> HE Composition of Horses bodies	1
2 Of Elements	2
3 Of Temperaments	5
4 Of Humours	7
5 Of Members	8
6 Of Powers	10
7 Of Actions or Operations	11
8 Of Spirits	12
9 Of things not natural	13
10 Of complexions	16
11 Of inward sicknesses	18
12 Of signs of Sicknesses	19
13 Of Observations in Physicking	23
14 Of Urine and excrements	25
15 Of Fevers	27
16 The Quoridian	29
17 The Tertian	30
18 The Quartan	31




Chapter.	Page.
19 The continual	31
20 The Hetique	32
21 The Autumn Fever	33
22 The Summer Fever	33
23 The Winter Fever	34
24 Fever by surfeit	35
25 Fever pestilent	35
26 Of the Plague	36
27 Fever accidental.	37
 28 One general approved cure for all Fevers	38
29 Diseases in the head	38
30 Of Head-ach	39
31 Of Frenzie	40
32 Of the sleeping evil.	41
33 A Horse taken	41
34 Of the Staggers	43
35 Of the falling-evil	45
36 Of the Night-mare	46
37 Of the Palse	47
38 Of the general cramp	48
39 Of the cold	50
 40 How to take away any cold	52
 41 The best of all medicines for the cold	52
42 Of Hide bound	53
43 Of the Glanders	54
 44 Two certain cures for the Glanders.	58
45 Of the mourning of the Chine	59
 46 A certain approved medicine for the mourning of the Chine	61
47 Of the cough	61
48 Of the wet cough	63
49 Of the dry cough	64
 50 Two approved cures for any cold cough	67
 51 The best Medicines for any dry cough	67
52 Of broken Lungs	68
53 Of rotten Lungs	69
54 Of shortness of breath	69
55 Of the broken winded	71
56 Of the consumption	74
57 Consumption of the flesh	75
	58 To



Chapter.	Page.
58 To make a Horse fat	76
 59 The mirror and master of all medicines to fatten a Horse	78
60 Of the breast pain	79
61 Of the Anticor, or heart-sickness	80
62 Of tired Horses	80
63 Of loathing of meat	83
64 Of casting out drink	84
65 Of glut of provender	85
66 Of foundring in the Body	86
67 Of the hungry evil	88
68 Of inflammation in the Liver	89
69 Of obstructions in the Liver	90
70 Of the Consumption of the Liver	92
71 Of Diseases in the Gall	93
72 Diseases in the Spleen	94
73 Of the Yellows	95
74 Of the Dropsie	98
75 Of the Colick	100
76 Of the Belly-ake	101
77 Of Costiveness.	101
78 Of the Lax	103
79 Of the bloody flux	104
80 Falling of the Fundament	105
81 Of Bots and Worms	106
82 Of pain in the Kidneys	109
83 Of the Strangury	110
84 Of the pain-piss	111
85 of the stone	112
86 Of pissing blood	114
87 Of the Colts evil	115
88 Of the mattering of the yard	116
89 Of the shedding of the seed	116
90 Falling of the Yard	117
91 Barrenness of Mares	118
92 Consumption in Mares.	119
93 Rage of love in Mares	119
94 Of casting foals.	119
95 Of hardness of foaling	120
96 Of making Mares cast their foals	120
97 Drinking	



Chapter.	Page.
97 Drinking of Horse-leaches	121
98 Eating of Hens dung	121
99 Of the Suppository	122
100 Of Glisters	124
101 Of Purgations	126
 102 An excellent and approved scouring	130
103 Of neezing or fumes	131
104 Of frictions and bathes	133
105 General drenches	134
106 To make Diapente	135
107 A famous Drench and ointment	135
108 Of the oil of oats	136
109 Brief Observations, &c.	137
110 Principles in foals and horses	142
111 Observations in mares	143
112 Observations in buying a horse	144
113 Notes concerning some simples	145



*That not this Book be  
 made of blame but of use  
 and the cure of some  
 THE  
 Lungs*

SE





Chapter  
 1 The  
 2 The  
 3 Of the  
 4 The  
 5 The  
 6 The  
 7 The  
 8 The  
 9 The  
 10 The  
 11 The  
 12 The  
 13 The  
 14 The



THE  
TABLE  
OF THE  
SECOND BOOK,  
CONTAINING  
*All Cures Chirurgical.*

Chapter.	Page.
<b>P</b> roportions of members	149
2 Of the Veins	152
2 The Anatomy of Veins	152
3 Of the sinews	154
3 The Anatomy of sinews.	155
4 Of all the Bones	156
4 The Anatomy of Bones	157
5 Of letting blood	158
6 Of outward Sorrances	162
7 Of weeping eyes	164
8 Of blood-shotten eyes	165
9 Dimness of sight	166
 10 A certain and approved Medicine for any blindness, &c.	167
 11 Another to the same effect	167
12 Pearl, pin, or Web	168
13 An infallible cure for any pin, pearl, or Web	170
14 Of the Haw	170
	15 Of









Chapter.	Page.
15 Of Moon eyes	171
16 Canker in the eye	172
17 Stripe in the eye	173
18 Wart in the eye	174
19 Inflammation in the eye	174
20 Impostume in the ear	175
21 The pole evil	176
 22 A rare and certain cure for the pole-evil	178
23 Of leaved ears	178
24 Of the vives	179
 25 A rare and certain approved cure for the vives	181
 26 Another excellent cure for the vives	181
27 Of the Strangle	182
28 Canker in the nose	183
29 Bleeding at the nose	184
30 Bloody rifts	185
31 The Gigges	186
32 Of the Lampasse	187
33 Of the Camery	187
34 Canker in the mouth	188
35 Heat in the mouth	189
36 The tongue hurt	190
37 Of the Barbes	190
38 Pain in the teeth, and of Wolves teeth	191
39 Crick in the neck	163
40 Wens in the neck	194
41 Swelling after blood letting	195
42 To stanch blood	196
43 Falling of the Crest	197
 44 A certain approved way to raise the crest	198
45 Manginess in the Main	199
46 Of shedding the hair	200
47 Grief in the withers	200
48 Any gall'd back	203
49 Canker in the withers.	205
50 Of the sit-fast	206
51 Wens below the saddle	206
52 Navil-gall	207
53 Swaying of the back	208
	54 Weakness



Chapter.	Page.
54 Weakness in the back	209
55 Swelling of the cuds	210
56 Of Burstness or incording	211
57 Botch in the groin	213
☞ 58 A certain approved cure for the Botch	213
59 Itch in the tail	214
60 Of the generat scab	217
☞ 61 Two most excellent and approved cures for the scabs	218
62 Of halting before	220
63 Of halting behind	221
64 Of hidden grief	222
65 Of griefs in the shoulder	223
66 Wrinch in the shoulder	225
67 Wrinch in the nether joint	225
68 Splatting the shoulder	226
69 Shoulder-pight	227
☞ 70 A certain cure for any desperate strain in the shoulder, &c.	228
71 Swelling in the fore leggs	229
72 Foundring in the feet	234
73 Of the splent	237
☞ 74 An approved and certain cure for any Splent	237
75 Of the Serew	238
76 Of the Mallender	239
77 Of an upper attaint	241
☞ 78 An approved Medicine for any sinew strain	241
79 A nether attaint	242
80 An over-reach on the heel	242
81 The meller	243
82 False quarters	244
83 An Horsehipped	245
84 Of stifling	247
85 Bone spaven	250
86 Blood-spaven	251
☞ 87 An approved cure for any Blood-spaven what soever	251
88 Of the Sellander	252
89 Of the hough-bone	253
90 Of the Curb	254
91 Of the pains	257
92 The mules	257
	93 Of



Chapter.	Page.
93 Of Wind galls	258
94 Strain in the pastern	260
95 To help any halting	261
 96 Three rare and approved Medicines to cure any strain or swelling whatsoever	263
 97 Another approved cure for any strain	264
98 Of enterfeering	264
99 The shackle gall	265
100 Casting in the halter	265
101 The scratches	266
 102 A certain and approved cure for the scratches	268
103 Of the Ring-bone	269
104 Hurts on the cronet	270
 105 A certain approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet	271
106 The crown scab	271
107 The Quitter-bone	272
108 Of gravelling	273
109 Of surbating	275
110 Prick in the sole	276
111 To draw out a stub	277
112 The Fig	278
113 A Retrait	278
114 Of Cloying	280
115 Observations for the hoofs	281
116 Loosening the hoof	281
117 Casting the hoof	284
118 Of Hoof bound	285
119 The running Frush	286
 120 An approved and certain cure for the running Frush	287
121 Of evil hoofs	288
122 Of Brittle hoofs	288
123 To preserve hoofs	289
124 Hurts on the Hoofs	290
125 To soften Hoofs	290
126 To harden Hoofs	290
127 Of the Mat-long	291
128 To skin a sore Foot	291
129 Of gourded Legs	292
 130 A most certain and approved Cure for gourded Legs	293



Chapter.	Page.
131 Of the Farcy	294
132 Of the Canker	301
133 Of the Fistula	303
134 <i>Arare and approved cure for any Fistula</i>	308
135 Of the Ambury	308
136 Of the Cords	309
137 Of the string-halt	309
138 Of Spur-gall	310
139 Of Wounds in general	310
140 Hurts with Arrows	313
141 Of healing old Sores	313
142 <i>A certain and approved cure for any old Sore</i>	314
143 Of Bruisings or Swellings	314
144 Of Impostumes	316
145 Of cold Impostumes	317
146 Of hot impostumes	318
147 Of the Tetter	318
148 Of sinews cut, &c.	319
149 Of fretting with the Girths	319
150 Of Blisters	320
151 To take away Bones, &c.	320
152 To eat dead Flesh	321
153 Of Knots in the Joints	323
154 Wounds made with Gun-powder	324
155 Of burning with Lime	325
156 Biting of a mad Dog	325
157 Hurts with a Boars Tusks	326
158 The stinging of Serpents	326
159 Of Lice	327
160 Defence from Flies	328
161 Of Bones broken	328
162 Bones out of joint	330
163 To dry up Humours	331
164 To dry up superfluous Moisture	331
165 To dry any Swelling	332
166 To dissolve Humours	332
167 To mollifie Hardness	333
168 To harden Softness	334
169 To conglutinate	334
	170 To



Chapter.	Page.
170 To mundifie	334
171 Repercussive Medicines	335
172 Of burning compositions	335
173 For all manner of Hurts	335
174 Powder of Honey and Lime	337
175 The taking up of Veins	337
176 Of Cauterizing	339
177 Cauterizing actual	340
178 Cauterizing potential	342
179 Of Rowelling	344
180 To geld Horses	346
181 To make Curls	347
182 To make a white Star	348
183 To make a black Star	350
184 To make a red Star	350
185 To make hair to come very soon	352
186 To make Hair smooth and fine	353
187 How to take off Hair in any part of a Horse	353
188 How to cast and overthrow a Horse	353
189 How to know the age of a Horse	354
190 How to make an old Horse seem young	355
191 How to make that a Horse shall not neigh, neither in company, or when he is ridden	356
192 How to make a Horse exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur	356
193 How to make a Horse that tires, or is restiff, to go forward	357
194 Other most excellent and approved ways to preserve an Horse from tiring, never disclosed till now	357
195 How to make a Horse to follow his Master, and to find him out, and challenge him among never so many people	358
196 The Nature and special Qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Work, set down in the manner of Alphabet	359
197 Certain Principles touching Simples	376
198 Of Weights and Measures, and how to know them by their Characters	377
199 The Farriers Instruments expounded, with their Names and Properties	378

FINIS.



AN  
APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

The exactest RECEIPTS for Curing

ALL  
DISEASES

IN  
OXEN, COWS, SHEEP, HOGS, GOATS,  
and all small Cattel.

---

Never before made Publick.

---

L O N D O N,

Printed by *Ralph Holt* for *Thomas Passinger* at the Three  
Bibles on *London-Bridge*, and *M. Wotton* and *George*  
*Coniers*, at the Three Daggers in *Fleet-street*, near the  
*Inner-Temple Gate*; and at the Ring on *Ludgate-Hill* a-  
gainst the *Old Baily*, 1688.



APPENDIX  
Sho Langford

Sho Langford  
His Book Jan<sup>ry</sup> 22: 178

We men have a many fault.  
Woman have but two that is  
Nothing they say no Nothing  
they see



# The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

## I. OF OXEN.

**T**HE worthy Author having excellently treated of the Order and Government of Horses, both as to their Breeding, Feeding and managing, as also for the Curing of all Diseases they are, or may be incident to, I thought it very proper to add by way of *Appendix*, this short, but necessary Treatise for the direction of the painful Country-man in his ordering all other sorts of Cattel, viz. Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, &c. and herein I shall be as short as may be, giving you only those approved Receipts, which not only the former, but these modern times have frequently experienced.

### C H A P. I.

#### *For the Cough in Oxen.*

**A** Cough of no long continuance may soon be remedied by a Drink which you make with Water and Barley-Meal, adding some Bean-flour and some Stich-wort and so given to your Beast.

A certain Cure for an old Cough, is to steep two pound of Hyssop in a quart or two of Water, well mixt with eight Pounds of Lentil-pease mingled together: Likewise give the Beast fine Wheat and Roots of Leeks clean washed, well beat together, fasting. You may also stamp Garlick with Dragon-Water, new Ale and Butter, and being warm give it the Beast.



## C H A P. II.

*For a Beast's Hoof hurt.*

**I**F your Ox by chance be hurt with a Stub of Wood, or with a Coulter or Share, on any part of the Clees, mix but the Powder of Brimstone with a Salve of Pitch and old Grease well melted together; then pour it hot on any sore part.

To keep your Beasts from Foundring, when you unyoke them, wash their Feet with cold Water, likewise let their Pasterns and Clees be anointed with old Grease, and they will do well.

To cure the Gravel or a Cut in an Oxes foot, let him be bathed in warm Water, then melt Tar and old Grease for an Ointment, and if with old fresh Grease you rub and chafe his Feet, before you unyoke him, nothing is better to preserve them.

## C H A P. III.

*For a bruise on a Beast's Shoulder.*

**L**Abouring Oxen may be lame or fore bruised on their Shoulders, either by going on the hard Ground, by a crush of a Post or Gate, let them but bleed on the Fore-legs, it shall certainly heal them.

## C H A P. IV.

*For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body.*

**Y**Our Ox will commonly gape, and eat no meat, but stand holding his head and mourn, if he has eat any venomous Grass or such like, for Cure whereof give him to swallow down a white Onion bruised, well mixt with a little good Vinegar, but be sure before he has it, you rub his Mouth and Tongue well with it.

C H A P.



## C H A P. V.

*To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel.*

**B**Y taking Cold after a great Rain, by some Sickneſs or Surfeit, your Oxen, Kine or other Cattel may be lowlie; for a Remedy, rub and chaſe the Beaſt all over with the Decoction of wild Olives mixt with Salt, or take Penny-royal mixt with Garlick ſtampt. Give it the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, and chaſe him a while after. Some ſay Rain will kill them, if you ſift Aſhes on their Backs. If you feed your Cattel well, and put them into good paſture, it will not be long e'er they are well. If they have Lice or Ticks about them, theſe Medicines above are very good to kill them with.

## C H A P. VI.

*Against the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn.*

**Y**Our Cattel will be in danger of Death (without ſpeedy Remedy) if through negligence of the Keeper, they eat of Barley, Rie or Wheat, that is near ripe; for it will lie and ſprout in their Maws, and cauſe in them a mighty Swelling. To help them, ſome drive them up and down, till they ſee them aſſwage thereof, and ſo they recover. Some throw a new-laid Egg, ſhell and all into the Beaſts Mouth, and break it in his Mouth, making him ſwallow it with Ale. Some give him an handful of Nettle-tops well beat, and ſtrained with Wine or honeyed Water. Some ſtamp or ſtrain Juniper Leaves or green Berries with Wine, and give it the Beaſt. Others give the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, Soot and the hard Rone of a red Herring well beaten. All which are approved Remedies.

## C H A P. VII.

*For an Ox or other Beaſt that have loſt their Qui'e.*

**A**N Ox or other beaſt will mourn, and eat nothing (becauſe he cannot digeſt what he has already eaten) if he happen to loſe his Quide, as perhaps by ſome occaſion it may fall out of his Mouth. To remedy this, ſome take part of the Quide out of another Beaſts Mouth of the like nature; if it be a Cow wants her Quide, they

F f f

take



take part of the Quide of another Cow, giving it her to swallow down, and she will be well, and so the like of other Beasts. Some bruise a quantity of the Herb called Cudwort, and put it to a quantity of Fat, and so make the Beast that hath lost his Quide swallow it, and he will amend. Others put a piece of Leaven into the Beasts Mouth, as aforesaid, and thereby he will recover: But if he have continued so long that he is far spent and wasted, take out his Tongue, prick the Vein under it with an Awl in two or three places, and so it will bleed, whereby he will be well again.

## C H A P. VIII.

*For Worms in Cattel.*

**S**Tamp a good handful of Wormwood, strain it with Ale or Beer and give it to your Cattel troubled with Worms. Some stamp Garlick and mix it with Milk or Ale, and give them. Some stamp a good handful of Mugwort, and being strained with Ale, give it the Beast. Others stamp Garden-Cresses, than strain it with Ale, and give them. All which are very good Remedies for Worms in Cattel.

## C H A P. IX.

*To help a Beast that pisseth Blood.*

**I**N arable Land you may find shell-stones, which burnt and beaten to Powder, and mixed in a Vessel of Milk and Water, is very proper to be given to your Cattel, or you may take Blood-wort and Knot-grass, and stamp a handful of each together, mix them with good Milk; add to it some runnet and some of the husks of Acorns. Give this in a drenching-Horn twice a day, and it will effect what is desired.

## C H A P. X.

*To help Cattle that cannot piss.*

**T**AKE *Cardus Benedictus* a good quantity, and steep it in white-Wine a whole night, afterward strain it; you may also add some Sow thistles, a handful of Aniseeds and two or three Onions sliced, all steeped the same time and strained; and so given to the beast it will force Urine, and increase the Appetite.

C H A P.



C H A P. XI.

*For Beasts that are gored or hurt by one anothers horns.*

**Y**OU may take red Earth and Oker, and mingle them well together with a little Ale, make a Salve of it and spread it upon a Plaster. Ashes finely sifted mixed with the Grounds of Ale, have been found an excellent Remedy, but it must be made very thick and applied by Plaster to the place grieved. It certainly heals.

C H A P. XII.

*To breed Calves and cut them.*

**A**S Husbands relate, it is not convenient to take Calves of which you will make young Bulls, which are calved within the Prime, which is counted five days after the Change, for they will not prove well: And Calves (or any other Beast) then Calved are not good to keep, but to eat or sell: Two Calves of a hundred will be enough to make Bulls. For the rest it will be best to cut them quickly after they have Calved, for two years old; then mix with Litharge the Ashes of Vine-Twigs burnt, and put it upon the Sores, three days after for fear of Swelling anoint it with melted Tar mingled with the aforesaid Ashes.

Some approve of gelding of Calves young and tender, not with Iron, but a cloven Hazel-stick pressed together, raising the end by degrees, whilst it is consumed. This way is counted best, for it is performed without wound.

It is not so convenient to cut a Calf (that is big) the first year, as it is the second.

In Autumn at the Decrease of the Moon, it is best to cut them, the Sign not being in the place; then take two streight laths, like Rulers of Wood, made in fashion of a pair of Tongs or Barnacles, casting him down, his feet being travessed together, touch him with Iron, afterwards take up the stone with the Nerves and Strings they hang by and close your Tongs under betwixt his body and Stones; let the Stones be on the outside, but close them hard together, then first slit the purse of one Cod, and put forth the Stone thereat. Let it



it be cut of within, hard by the said tongue, close up the Nerves ; then take out the other Stone. For fear of bleeding too much, anoint him with fresh grease, and let him go, but cut them so, that you leave the end of the string joining to the said Nerve, and he will not lose so much Blood, and will not be Feminine nor stout of his Members. After ye have thus dressed, anoint him with fresh Grease.

## C H A P. XIII.

*The Government of Cattell and the ordering of Kine with their Calves.*

**T**HE right and good ordering and nourishing of Cattell and Kine (as able Authors relate to us) must be the care of the Husbandman himself, or some honest experienced Servant that will have a diligent eye over his Cattell, whether they be Oxen or Kine, at home or abroad, and to see that they have (both Morning and Evening) Meat and Water sufficient, and in due time ; and if sick, to provide them Medicines, and to get Stalls for them to lie in, set East and West, with Windows and doors Southward, but close Northly, for the better security of the Cattell from the sharpness of the winter. Some hold strewing of Salt beat, on the boards or Stones under them to be good for the preservation of the health. Some strew Sand on their Planks for fear they should slide. Be sure they be well littered after their work at night.

If you put them out in the Spring with your Kine, separate the young Calves as soon as they have sucked their Dams, and put them severall into a House, where they must remain one day, if you have a mind they should suck, turn them out to their Dams only Morning and Night, then house them again. Thus doing, your Calves will be fairer and fatter than going with their Dams. It is necessary to give Kine with Calf of the green Herb called Melilot, stampd with Honey steepd all night in Milk, this herb aforesaid (although she be a good Nurse herself) without she be well looked to by the Owner, she will not be able to give nourishment enough to her Calf. Farmers Wives may (without any wast) make Butter and Cheese, when the Calves are took up and the Milk put apart, gather your Cheese well and close, press out the Whey clean, if you leave any in the Cheese will be sower and full of holes: scald and wash your Pots and other Vessels throughly. Let not your women-Servants touch the Butter or Cheese when they have their monthly terms, for it is not



not wholesome: It is not a good Sign for a day-labouring Ox to bate none of his flesh, but to continue fat, for he is Flegmatick. Open his mouth every eighth day, wash it with his own Water, it will draw forth the Flegm, which he would still swallow down. The Flegm oft-times hinders his eating, and you may discern that it occasions the Catarrh or Rheum by the hanging down his Ears, by the dropping of his Eye, and being watry: Then bruise Thyme in White-wine and wash his mouth, and rub it with Fat and Garlick well mixt; after this wash it again as before. Several Remedies are prescribed for it, but for the Catarrh of Rheum, if his Eyes do inflame, let but blood on the vein under his Tongue, and you shall find the Cure perfected to your hearts content.

C H A P. XIV.

*For Purging of Cattel.*

**B**Ruise and seeth in Water the Leaves of Alder, strain them, give them to the Beast in the Morning, and both Choler and Flegm shall be purged downwards by it: it will likewise cleanse the Stomach of Water.

Others take a quart of Ale or Beer, putting into it a good handful of the Tops, Leaves and Flowers of Centaury, which they boil until a quart of it wast away; then it being pretty warm (but be sure well strained) they give it the Beast, if the Sign serve. This is a gentle Purge for Choler and flegm, but chiefly Flegm, and is necessary at any time for the Cattel. If the weather be sharp, let him be in the house six hours after. Some put into a pint or more of honeyed Water or Ale a handful of green Broom-Crops, which they steep at night, and so (being strained the next morning) give it the Beast warm. There are several other things might be set down, but these well ordered, the Beasts will do well, God willing.

C H A P. XV.

*For Fattin of Oxen.*

**C**ountrymen and my Friends, if you desire to fat your Oxen well, observe these following Directions; first he will like his Meat the better if he go in the Sun, or if with warm Water he be washed three



three times a week; then give him to eat ground Beans, dried Barley, or Elm-Leaves; or if you boil Coleworts with Bran, it will make their Bellies loose, and add to Nutriment more than Barley; Chaff likewise sometimes mixt with ground Beans is very good. If your Ox by labour be weak or feeble, once a month give him Fetches beat, and steeped in Water mixt with beaten Bran, and to make your Beast lively and nimble, rub his Horns with Turpentine being mixt with Oil Olive; touch not any other part of his head beside the Horns, for it will in some time indanger his Sight. Also if you rub and chafe the Muzzel or Mouth of an Ox with Garlick bruised or Leeks well beat; he being made to swallow it, he will assuredly be cured of a Rising that comes over the Heart of the Beast, whereby he seems as though he would vomit.

## C H A P. XVI.

*A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattel.*

**T**Here are several Remedies for the Plague or Murrain amongst Cattel, if taken betimes. Infectious Blood causes the Disease; it is vulgarly discerned in the Head by a swelling, they will have great Eyes that run with Water; they will eat though they are sick, and when once they froth at mouth they are near Death. For Cure of this Disease, it is thought good of some to bind a small Cord hard about the Neck, then take a Launcet and strike on the further side, where you will find a Vein, bleed him a pint or more, and so for the other side of the Neck: It will stanch, the Cord being taken away, but it is more dangerous of Bleeding still if the Sign be there; and if it continue, put to it Nettles and wild Tansie bruised with Salt, and some give them Drinks. Thus serve your infected Cattle, being all together in one Pasture, by this means you will avoid great peril in this Disease. The Murrain is caught by venomd Grasse, by Company, by poisoned Water, and by Hunger.

## C H A P. XVII.

*To rear up Calves that they may increase.*

**I**T will be prudence in a Husbandman every year to rear as many Calves as he thinks necessary for the maintenance of his Stock.  
Those



Those that fall betwixt *Candlemas* and *May* are esteemed of best, for at that time they can spare their Milk, and there will be Grass enough, and they will be able by the next Winter to shift for themselves with other Cattel, being looked after a little; also their Dams in *June* will take Bull again and bring other Calves in the space above mentioned. A Cow is barren often times and the Calf weak, if it be after *May* e'er she Calve, and besides it would be too chargeable to rear Calves the latter end of the year and to keep their Dams in the House all the Winter, as it is practised in some places: Again for their own Advantage it will be best they come betimes, that they may put them out, for Grass increases a great deal more Milk, when the Kine are abroad, than Hay or Straw at home, for dry meat will abate Milk, Grass does not; and if your Calves have been used to Grass, wean them abroad and not at home; your Calves will have great Bellies if you wean them with Hay, Grass makes them stir better, and not noxious to them, in the Winter-season instill them, rather than let them run abroad a-nights; when you take them in, you may give them Hay, but in the day time let them feed in the Fields. Observe but these Directions, and you will find them a great deal fitter for the Plough, when you come to make use of them.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk.*

**A**Niseeds boiled in Ale or strained, given warm to a Cow that has newly Calved, and being poor wants Milk, is very good for the increase of it. Colewort-Leaves boiled or raw, will do the like: Also Barly and Fennel seed sod together is good for her. There are several others, but these are the principal approved Medicines to increase Milk in Kine.

## C H A P. XIX.

*For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beast out of Joint.*

**Y**OU may easily discern by the tripping of a Beast on the same Foot, that the Shoulder-Bone is out of Joint; for Cure whereof throw him on the ground, and bind fast his other three Legs, then stretch out the other Leg and put one hand on his Shoulder, where  
the



the Bone went out, and the other near his Body within side, and place the Bone right, and just even with the other Bone; when it is right and fast together, get two wooden Pricks of a length, and boring two holes cross under the Skin in the middle of the Joint, from both sides of the Joint, they must be distant an inch and an half from each other, and there put your Pricks cross under the Skin, then wrap it round with strong Pack-thread binding of it round the ends of the Pricks, draw up the skin in a Lump with it; so when your Thread is fastened, there let it be until it drop away of it self, and the Beast will be well, fit for work in two days time. If it be in the heat of Summer, anoint the place with Tar by reason of the Flies.

## C H A P. XX.

*To cure Cattel that be sick and will not feed in Pasture.*

**B**Ruise and boil of Horehound, Camomil, Betony, Cinquefoil, Penny-royal and Agrimony, of each a quantity alike, in a quart of Ale, until half of it be consumed, with a stick of bruised Liquorice; afterwards strain it, and mix with it three penny-worth of good Treacle, give it him fasting, when it is well mixt together, walk him for some space after, and he will certainly recover.

## C H A P. XXI.

*A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be sound.*

**G**Ripe him on the Back with your hand be hind the Fore-shoulder and if he be not sound, he will shrink with his Back, and almost fall down; but on the contrary, if he be sound, he will not shrink in the least.

## C H A P. XXII.

*A Remedy for the Disease in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick or any such like thing.*

**I**F at any time your Beast be troubled with the Colick, Belly-ake or Gnawing in the Guts, it will speedily give him ease, if you boil good store of Oil in the Water he uses to drink. For the Bloody-Flux give the Beast some Powder of Wood, Rose Seeds well beat & dried, and brewed with a quart of Ale, and it will cure him. CHAP.



CHAP. XXIII.

*For Weakness, Stiffness or Soreness in the Sinews of a Beast.*

**I**F your Beasts Sinews be at any time tender or do shrink, you may perceive it by the slow pace he goes. Bind to the place out of order Mallows and Chickweed; but they must be boiled in the Dregs of Ale or Vinegar, and being very warm when you lay them on, they will very much strengthen the Sinews.

CHAP. XXIV.

*A Cure for the Palate of a Beasts Mouth that is down.*

**T**He Palate of a Beasts Mouth by hard working will be apt to come down, which you may discern by two things, they will often sigh, and would fain eat, but cannot. To cure him, throw him down, putting it up again with your hand, then bleed him in the Palate, and anoint it with Honey and Salt, and turn him to Grass, for you must not let him eat any Hay or dry Meat.

CHAP. XXV.

*For any inward Diseases in Cattel.*

**T**Ake a handful of Wormwood and as much Rue, and boil them in a quart of Ale; then let it be strained, and put into it two spoonfuls of the Juice of Garlick, as much of house-Leek and as much of London-Treacle; make it lukewarm, mix them well together, and then make the Beast drink of it, and you will in a short time see the virtue of it against any inward Disease or drooping in Cattel.

CHAP. XXVI.

*For all sorts of Bruises in general.*

**F**Ry the least sort of Brook-lime with Tallow, and apply it hot to the place that is hurt, and if it does not expel it, yet it will ripen it, and break it, and heal it, as many by Experience have found to be very true.

Ggg

CHAP,



## C H A P. XXVI.

*A Remedy to kill any sorts of Worms either in Oxen, Cows, or Calves.*

**C**Hop the Herb Savin very small, beat it with fresh Butter, then roll it up in Balls; give it the Beast, and it will destroy the Worms in their Bodies sooner than any other thing. Likewise a little Black Sope mixt with sweet Wort, and given the Beasts to drink, will make them void their Worms better and quicker than other things.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Against the Gout in Cattel.*

**Y**OU may discern by the often rising and swelling of your Beasts Joints, whether they have the Gout or not: For Cure whereof, boil Galengal in the Dregs of Ale and sweet Butter, and being made like a Pultice, clap it to the place that is disordered.

## C H A P. XXIX.

*For Purging of Cattel as some do.*

**G**reen weedy Grasse growing under Trees in Orchards is the best thing to purge Beasts naturally, and the best Purging Medicine for them is Sugar-Candy, Butter and Tar, well mingled together, then rolled up in Balls as big as Hen-Eggs, and so given them.

## C H A P. XXX.

*Things good to breed Milk in Kine.*

**I**F your Cows Milk after she hath Calved, come not down as it was wont to do, beat to Powder Coriander and Aniseeds, & put them into a quart of strong Posset-Ale, and make her drink every Morning; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increase in her Milk: besides it will assuredly cause it spring, and to come down in abundance.

C H A P.



C H A P. XXXI.

*For the Rot in Beasts.*

**I**F your Beasts wax lean, slight their Meat, or scour much behind, you may assure your self they are subject to rottenness; you must beat to Powder Bay-Berries, and mix with it Myrrh, Ivy-Leaves, Elder-Leaves and Fever-few, a good lump of Clay and Bay-Salt all together in strong Urine, and when it is warm, give the Beast half a pint thereof to drink, and it will firmly knit and preserve them.

C H A P. XXXII.

*Against Vomiting of Blood.*

**I** Must give you to understand, that this Sickness happens to your Beasts by being hard kept, and then put into good Pasture, where they feed over-much, and so get such rank Blood, that you may discern it flow from their Mouths. The Remedying of this must be to bleed the Beast, and afterwards to drink give him some Bole-Armoniack and Ale mixt together.

C H A P. XXXIII.

*For the over-flowing of the Gall in Beasts.*

**I**F the Skin and the Eyes of your Beast look yellow, it is a true sign of the over-flowing of the Gall: For a Remedy, first let him bleed, afterwards for three mornings one after another, make him a Drink of two pints of Milk, Saffron and Turmerick; mix it all together; then give it him, and it will help him.

C H A P. XXXIV.

*To Draw out Thorns.*

**I**F at any time your Beasts accidentally get Thorns or Stubs in their Feet, get but some black Sope and black Snails, and let them be well beat to Salve; then lay them to the sore place, and it will by degrees draw them out, and your Beast (whether Ox, Cow or Calf) will in a short time be perfectly well again.



## C H A P. XXXV.

*A cure for Feverish Cattel.*

**B**eafts many times surfeit by their Meat being raw and musty, whereby the Fever cometh upon them, or if they are kept in the Cold (through a Flux of cold Humours ingendred by it) they will have a Fever. If they tremble, groan or foam at mouth, it is a true sign they have it: To cure him, let him blood, sprinkle his Hay with Water, and boil three or four Plantane Roots, and two spoonfuls of *London-Treacle* in a quart of Ale, and then give it him to drink.

*These Remedies afore-mentioned are the best (as by experience several have found) for Oxen, Cows, and Calves, some I know by my own Experience; others are collected out of such able skilful Authors that would never have prescribed such Medicines, if they would not certainly have cured the Beasts.*

---

T H E



# *The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.*

## II Of S H E E P.

### C H A P. I.

*Some short but sure Rules for a certain Cure of Diseases in Sheep.*

**I**F the greatest quantity of your Sheep happen to fall sick, change of Pasture will conduce much toward their Recovery, and place them a good distance from the Ground they went in before: if the Murrain come by Cold, put them in the Sun; if by Heat, in the Shade: Also over-driving them, and so will lying still be the worse for their Distemper; you must keep them going on a moderate Pace. Likewise it will be much better to part them at their new Pastures, for in a small parcel the Infection will not prevail so much as in a great quantity, and a few will be sooner cured than a great many.

### C H A P. I.

*For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep.*

**B**Rimstone and Tar well stirred together over a small Fire is an excellent Remedy; when the Wool is sheared off anoint the fore place with that above mentioned. Likewise Powder of Brimstone mixt with Wax is good for the Scab.

### C H A P. III.

*For Sheeps Feet.*

**A**Certain Cure for Sheeps Feet that are Galled, is, if you beat a Pomegranate not ripe with Alum, and adding to it a little Vinegar, apply it to the place. Or the Powder of Galls burnt, mixed with red Wine, and so laid unto it, is very good.

### C H A P.



## C H A P. IV.

*For broken Bones in Sheep.*

**I**F accidentally any one happen to break his Leg, the Bones will be knit again, if you bruise young Ashen Leaves, and lay to it, or apply to it the Herbs of Comfrey, Betony, or Cuckow-spit well stamp, and the bones will knit.

## C H A P. V.

*For the Glanders or Snivel in Sheep.*

**G**Ive them to drink honied Water, well mingled with the Juice of Betony, and it will help them. Some for their Cure take a Stick, and (at what time they think fit) cleanse their Noses of all the Matter and Snivel they can get out. Others stamp the Herb called Bucks-Beard with Wine, which they say is an excellent Remedy for to drive Cold or Flegm out of their Bodies.

## C H A P. VI.

*For Sicknes in Lambs.*

**I**F your Lambs have a Fever, or are grieved otherwise, the distemper will be catching; therefore take them from their Dams, and if you would have them well again in a short time, force them to drink Rain water mingled with some of the Ewes Milk. Also some pour down their Throats, Goats Milk with a Horn, and for some time after keep them warm; which is prescribed for an excellent Medicine.

Sometimes your Lambs will have Scabs on their Chins, sometimes on other places; if on their Chins, wash the Palate of the Mouth and Sores with Gypres- Leaves stamped in Water; or Tar and Hogs-Grease mixt and made into an Ointment, is very good, but you must wash the Scab with Vinegar, before you anoint it. If they happen to be scabby on the Brisket or elsewhere, I might set down several Remedies, but I shall instance but one, which I do imagine to be the best, because most Shepherds do generally use it, which is only some fine Grease mingled with Tar, and so to lay it upon the place infected.

C H A P.



## C H A P. VII.

*Some short but necessary things to be observed concerning Sheep.*

**F**irst, if the Wool come off when they have been scabby, grease them with Tar and Goose-grease, and it will grow again.

Secondly, for the Cough, stamp the great Nettle, then let it be strained with Wine; and give him of the Juice thereof to drink, but it must be warm; and so he will be well. You must be sure to take it in time, for until it be gone he will not be fat, but abate in his Flesh daily.

Thirdly, if a Sheep be blind, which they will be for a space at one time or other, some say he will be well again of himself, but if you bleed him under the Eye, or drop Tar in his Eye, he shall recover his sight the sooner.

Fourthly, Scabs often come on the Muzzels of Sheep by pricking their Lips and Muzzels with eating the Tops of Furz, which you must anoint with Plantan and fresh Grease boiled both together and it will perfect their Cure.

Fifthly, they are troubled with the Haw in the Eye, for which the Juice of Pimpernel dropt into the Eye and shut it close, is very good.

Sixthly, A Shepherd must always carry with him his Knife, Sheep-hook, Sheers and Tar-Box, and a Dog must not be wanting, which must be such a one as he has brought up to his own command, to go or stand still as he pleases.

Seventhly, Sheep sometimes have the Pox, which you may discern by things like red Pimples on their Skin, and Locks of Wool will hang loose on their Backs; the Pimples will be as broad as a Groat and many Sheep for want of early looking after, die by it.

Eighthly, Sheep by feeding on Hills or places full of Fern are in the Spring-time commonly troubled with the Cramp, or as some call it the Wood-Evil; which Diseases (without speedy Remedy) will endanger their Lives in two days time. For Cure cause them to be anointed with Neats-Foot Oil and Hopsleek, stamped together, or Scallions of Bugloss stamped and bound to their Legs is good. Likewise it will help towards their Cure to remove them into some other lower Meadows to feed in.

Ninthly, Sheep in the hot season will be troubled with Fly-Blows  
and



and Maggots, which you may be certain of, if they bite, stamp or shake their Tails, and many times they are wet; to dry it up, throw Powder that is very dry upon it, some time after strike it off again, and anoint it well with Tar, and they will be perfectly well.

Tenthly, by cropping some noxious Herb your Sheep may be poisoned, which you may easily know by their Heads hanging down, and they will swell, and stagger, and foam at Mouth, and in a short time (without speedy Remedy) fall down dead, which to prevent, cut the bladders which you will see under his tongue, then chafe it with Lome beat small, or the crums of Bread, afterwards wash it down. If his water be stopped, pour some Drink down his throat, and give him juice of Wormwood in Vinegar, and it will cure him.

Eleventhly, Sheep may have Worms in their Guts, which come by reason of some cold Humor; you may know it by several things, he will not feed as formerly, he groans, hangs down his head, and many times swells, which without help will speedily kill him: Now for his Cure give him Powder of Worm-seed in a little Malmfey or Powder of Savin in Ale or Wine finely beat and it will thoroughly heal them.

Twelfthly, if you imagine your Sheep have the Rot, honeyed Water warm mixt with Elder-Berries will clear their Bodies of Water; or seeth a little Water, put some Milk to it, then give it to them; for it will purge them betwixt their Flesh and Skin. If they will drink salt Water after they have been a great Journey, you may assure your self of their health, and they will do well.

## C H A P. VIII.

### *For the red Water in Sheep.*

**S**Heep are often times troubled with the red-water, which is a poisonous Disease, very noxious to the Heart; for this Water will so scald and consume that at length he will perish by it, without some speedy help; which must be done thus: First, Bleed him in the Foot between the Claws, and under the Tail; then stamp Wormwood and Rue with Bay-Salt, and it will cure them, being applied to the sore places.



## C H A P. IX.

*For the Itch or Scab in Sheep.*

**W**ash the scabby places of your Sheep with the Root of Camellion noir and the Herb Bears-Foot boil'd both together in Water; it must be warm; and without any other thing they will be cured.

## C H A P. X.

*Herbs hurtful for Sheep.*

**S**everal Herbs are very noxious to Sheep, I shall instance the principal; First, Spear-wort, which usually grows in moist places, is thick and hard of digestion. Knot-Grass, and mill-dew'd Grass are not good, Black Ellebore is very hurtful for Sheep or other Cattel, if they eat any store of it. Two-penny Grass, and dead Grass or rotten Fog, which is in low Commons and Meadows is very destructive to them, and will breed the Rot in them. Hemlock and Mushrooms are naught for Sheep. Lastly, if Sheep eat Oak-Leaves when they are green, it is bad for them; especially for young Lambs, for it will certainly kill them.

## C H A P. XI.

*Against the Gall in Sheep.*

**S**heep will stand shrinking their four Feet together, if they are troubled with the Flowing of the Gall; you must let him blood under the Tail, then give him to drink half a spoonful of good Vinegar and as much *Aqua Vita* mixed together, and he will be better.

## C H A P. XII.

*The Turning Disease in Sheep.*

**S**heep oftentimes hold their Head on one side, by reason of this Turning Sickness. Some Shepherds give advice, that if the Sheep hold their Heads on the right side, ye must cut off the Horn on the left side, for under the Horn there lies a Worm which will be killed if you anoint it with Tar, and they will be well again.

H h h

C H A P.



## C H A P. XIII.

*Some Directions to encrease Milk in Ewes.*

**T**Here is nothing better than altering of Pasture for the increasing of Milk in Ewes; put them to graze sometimes in Valleys sometimes in Hills, let them feed longest upon short Grass, if it be sweet, for there they eat most heartily; for touching giving them Fitches, Dill and Aniseeds, and such like, Milk will spring much better by Change of Pasture.

## C H A P. XIV.

*For loose Teeth.*

**I**F your Sheeps Teeth be loose, let him bleed in his Gums, and under the Tail, and afterwards rub his Teeth with Earth, Salt and Sage, and they will fasten.

## C H A P. XV.

*For the Wild-Fire in Sheep.*

**T**Here is a dangerous Sicknes, which is called the Wild-Fire, that will infect the whole Flock, if not lookt after. Some bury the first infected Sheep alive, with his heels upwards before the Sheep-Coat door; but it is very certain you may save your Sheep alive, if you take but Chervil, stamp it with old Ale, make a Salve thereof, and anoint the Sore therewith, and your Sheep will be sure to recover again.

0-4-16



# *The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.*

## III. OF HOGS.

**T**Here are several Diseases which Hogs (as well as other Creatures) are incident unto, which you may find discoursed of in the Pages following, with Directions for the Cure of them.

### CHAP. I.

*For Impostumes under the Throats of Hogs.*

**I**F your Hogs have Kernels or Impostumes underneath their Throats, they must be let blood under the Tongue; and when they have bled sufficiently, beat some fine white Meal and Salt together and rub and chafe his Throat and Groin with it, and he will do well. Others prescribe as followeth: You must give them six ounces of *Garum*, which you may buy at the Apothecaries, then with a flaxen Cord bind it thereunto with Ferules of Wood. and hang them about his neck, so that they may touch the Impostumes and Kernels, and it will certainly cure them.

### CHAP. II.

*Directions to preserve your Hogs from the Measels.*

**I**N the heat of Summer, as from the middle of *July* to the middle of *August*, in which time are the hottest and Dog-days, you must give your Hogs some cooling Herbs chopt. small, as Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Violet-Leaves, Fumitory, Dandelion, Sow-thistle, and such like, or the Leaves of Dwale, they must be mingled with their Wash or other Meat. These Herbs aforesaid are very good to keep them in a cool temper; you must use but a few of the Leaves of Dwale, for they are exceeding cold in Operation. For I must acquaint you that it is the great and vehement heat of Blood in



Hogs which doth bread the Measels. There will be Kernels in the outward part of the Body, which will appear in his Throat, and at the roots of his Tongue, and you may first know his Infection, if he be hoarse, or rattle in his voice when he cries, it is a certain sign; then if you look into his mouth, you may see the Kernels under his Tongue; thus you may know Measly Hogs. Likewise to preserve them from the Measels, put mens Urine amongst their Wash, and it will keep them from it. Sope-water and Fish-water is naught for them, it will breed the Measels: Some say if you often use to put Mustard amongst the Wash they eat, it will in a short time make them Measly.

Now it would be necessary to give you some Directions to cure your Measled Hogs, for take all the Care you can to prevent it, some may happen to be so. An approved Remedy to help them, is to shut them up in a Sty without any thing whatsoever, either Meat or Water for the space of three days and three nights. Then make a hole in the tops of half a dozen Apples and take out the Cores; afterwards fill it up with Brimstone beat to Powder, and cover the Brimstone with Pieces of Apples, and so throw them to your Measly Hogs; first give him one or two and so the rest, for being hungry he will eat them all; then after two or three hours give him a little Meat, and no more until the next Morning, then the next Morning serve him as aforesaid with five or six Apples, as before is directed. Thus serve him five or six days, and he will be well again. Also some mix the Lees of Sope with some strong Lee of a Buck, and give that, and use them as the other aforesaid, and give him no Meat for an hour or two after; and they say this is a very good Remedy against the aforesaid Sicknes.

### C H A P. III.

*What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat.*

**T**He Roots of Daffadils are very good for to cleanse the Lights of Hogs. Knot-grass is good for Hogs, and they love it marvellous well; it binds the Belly, and causes Urine; the Juice of it put into the ears, helps the pains in the Head; these are the Herbs that are wholesome.

Likewise many there be that are not wholesome: The Herb called Goose-Foot, or the Camelion Thistle will kill Hogs, if they eat



eat of them. If they eat of Hen-bane or Hemlock, which is so cold in operation, that they are very nigh unto a cold Venom, and will make Hogs lie as if they were dead for some time; to cure them, warm the Juice of Cucumbers, give it them to drink, for it will make them Vomit, whereby they will so thoroughly cleanse their Bodies, that in a short time they will recover their Health again.

## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Garget, Catarrh and Staggers in a Hog.*

**F**irst, for the Garget, it is very noxious to them and many are killed by it, you may know by a Swelling and Inflammation in the Throat behind a Hogs Jaws. For to give him ease they do use to slit the Sore in the middle, and then flay up the Skin on both sides of it; afterwards they rub it with Salt within, and lay Tar without, and he does well. Some rub it with Nettles and Salt. Some mix burnt Alum with Plantane.

Hogs have sometimes the Catarrh or Rheum, which makes their Eyes water; it happens to them by eating a great deal of rotten Fruit which breeds a corrupt matter almost as bad as the Plague. For help, old Capers mixt with their Meat or Wash is good; or Coleworts both red and white put amongst their Meat is also good, Some mingle Marsh-Mallows with the Meat. Others boil Liverwort in honied Water, and give it them. All these aforesaid are excellent things to stay the Rheum or Catarrh.

For the Staggers in a Hog, give him of the Herb called Starewort or Gall-wort in Milk, and he will amend.

## C H A P. V.

*How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs.*

**A**S long as your Hogs are lousie they will not thrive; be sure you keep them well in cold Weather, for it is through Poverty and want of good feeding in the Winter, they are so full of this Vermin. To rid them, take Quick-Silver, first kill it with fasting Spittle and Sallet-Oil; then mix therewith fresh Grease or Neats-Foot Oil, and so anoint them all over. Some melt Sope and Tar together, with the powder of Staves-acre, and so anoint them



them with it. If Maggots breed in your Hogs Ears, or any other hollow place under the Skin, drop the Juice of Hemlock into the Hole, and they will die or avoid; also take but Oil and put in that place all the Maggots will die or avoid the place incontinent, if they live; this has been well experienced by several Persons.

## C H A P. VI.

*How to spay a Sow.*

**Y**OU must first lay her upon some Form or Board, then with a Cord bind her mouth fast, lay her so that her left side be upward; then take your Launcet and strip away the Hair two inches long, three fingers from the hinder Leg, and likewise from the edge of her Flank. Then with the point of your Launcet cut aslope her Belly through the skin two inches and a half long, so that you may put in your Fore-finger towards her Back, and there you shall feel two Kernels as big as Acorns on both sides the Birth, and with the top of your finger draw on to the slit, then cut the string with your Knife; so take out the other also, and cut them off, then strike away the Blood and stitch up the slit again with a strong Thread. Be sure you have a special care of her Guts; then afterward anoint her with Tar, and so you may let her go.



THE  
**T A B L E**  
 OF THE  
**A P P E N D I X.**  
 I. OF O X E N.

Chapter	Page.
<b>F</b> For the Cough in Oxen	1
2 For a Beasts Hoof hurt	2
3 For a Bruise on a Beasts Shoulder	2
4 For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body	2
5 To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel	3
6 Against the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn	3
7 For an Ox or other Beast that have lost their Quide	3
8 For Worms in Cattel	4
9 To help a Beast that pisseth Blood	4
10 To help Cattel that cannot piss	4
11 For Beasts that are gored or hurt by anothers Horns	5
12 To breed Calves and cut them	5
13 The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves	6
14 For Purging of Cattel	7
15 For Fattening of Oxen	7
16 A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattel	8
17 To rear Calves that they may increase	8
18 For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk	9
19 For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beast out of Joint	9
20 To cure Cattel that be sick and will not feed in Pasture	10
21 A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be sound	10
22 A Remedy for the Disease in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick, or any such like thing	10
23 For Weakness, Stiffness or Soreness in the Sinews of a Beast	11
24 A Cure for the Palate of a Beasts Mouth that is down	11
25 For inward Diseases in Cattle	11
26 For	



Chapter.	Page.
26 For all sorts of Bruises in general	11
27 A Remedy to kill any sort of Worms either in Oxen Cows or Calves	12
28 Against the Gout in Cattel	12
29 For the Purging of Cattel as some do	12
30 Things good to breed Milk in Kine	12
31 For the Rot in Beasts	13
32 Against Vomiting of Blood	13
33 For the overflowing of the Gall in Beasts	13
34 To draw out Thorns	13
35 A Cure for Feverish Cattel	14

## II. OF SHEEP.

Chapter.	Page.
1 Some short but sure Rules for a certain Cure in Diseases of Sheep	15
2 For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep	15
3 For Sheeps Feet	15
4 For broken bones in Sheep	16
5 For the Glaunders or Snivel in Sheep	16
6 For Sicknes in Lambs	16
7 Some short but necessary things to be observed concerning Sheep	17
8 For the Red Water in Sheep	18
9 For the Itch or Scab in Sheep	19
10 Herbs hurtful for Sheep	19
11 Against the Gall in Sheep	19
12 The Turning Disease in Sheep	19
13 Some Directions to encrease Milk in Ewes	20
14 For loose Teeth	20
15 For the Wild-Fire in Sheep	20

## III. OF HOGS.

Chapter.	Page.
1 For Impostumes under the Throats of Hogs	21
2 Directions to preserve your Hogs from the Measels.	21
3 What Herbs are good and what are bad for Hogs to eat	22
4 Of the Garget, Catarrh, or Staggers in a Hog	23
5 How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs	23
6 How to spay a Sow	24



THE  
Compleat Jockey

Or the most exact

RULES and METHODS

To be observed for the training up of

RACE-HORSES.

SHEWING

How to prepare them for any Heats or Courses, with the manner of their Keepings, Instructions for their Dressing and Looking to, their Scourings, Diets Matches, and Racings; with every particular to be observed therein; the like not published to the World before.

To which is added

The most Experienced way for Buying Horses; and Instructions to avoid being Cheated upon the like occasion; with a relation of the Cheats and Tricks the *Jockies* and *Horse-Coursers* put on the unexpert Buyers.

Written for the Pleasure and Profit of all Gentlemen and others, who take delight in any thing of this Nature.

---

LONDON, Printed in the Year, 1688.



Complete

THE

RECEIPTS

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

The best  
Race  
Especially

A

matched, w  
Races or M  
the better fa

1. The first  
over the wire

2. The second  
ordinary Le  
feale has p

3. The third  
dealt well by



O F

# Race-Horses.

## CHAP. I.

*The best Method, and speediest way for Ordering of Race-Horses, to fit them for any Match in what Estate soever they be.*

**A**T such time as a Horse is matched, (or designed to be matched) for a Race, or Course, let him, to whom the Horse belongs, or whosoever shall have the ordering of that affair, be very circumspect in observing the Condition or Ability of Body in which the horse is at the time of such his being matched, which chiefly ought to be taken notice of in three several Rules or Methods, the which I here shall undertake to lay down for the better satisfaction of those whom it hereafter may concern.

1. The first of which is, if your Horse be Foggy, Gross, or over-fat when he has been lately taken from Grass, or Soil.
2. The Second likewise to be observed is, If he be more than ordinary Lean, either by reason of too hard Riding, or any Disease has pulled him down by hindring his feeding.
3. Thirdly, If he be in good plight and has had good keeping, dealt well by, and moderately rid or exercised.

Aaaaa 2 Now



Now in the first of these you cannot take less than two Months or ten Weeks, to bring your Horse into a fit condition for a Match, which must be done by moderately Dieting him and often Exercising him, which wasts the superfluous grease, and makes him long-winded, both which will make him more fit and apt to win the Wager laid upon his head.

As for the Second, If your Horse be exceeding poor, then about six weeks space must be allowed, with good feeding and moderate exercise.

Now for the Third and last of the fore-mentioned conditions which is a *medium* betwixt both; lesser time will serve to fit him for the match you do design to have him run. About a Month or five Weeks will be sufficient, if you observe the Dieting of him, which must be indifferently well.

But seeing I have given you an account of the particular Estates or Conditions of Horses; So now I must give you some cautions therein to be observed: First then, note if your Horse be fat and unwieldy, you must have a regard to his Exercise, for if he be over-free, and is willing to put out his strength and abilities to the utmost, so that his flesh quickly fall away, you must restrain him and not put him to too hard Exercise, for he cannot bear it like those who are hardy by nature and grow fat with any Diet, or any reasonable Exercise.

Yet farther, if your horse be in a poor condition by any hard or ill usage or disorder of Body, yet notwithstanding any thing in the like nature, grows quickly into good liking and so continues for a considerable time, you need not, neither shall you be so tender of him as in the case of that just before mentioned, nor at all restrain him from his Exercise, for if you do, he will soon grow unfit for your purpose.

Thus far have I thought fit to instruct such as are unskilful, or have not the most expedient Method, for preparing Horses for Races.

And now I think it most convenient to give my Reader a full satisfaction and ample instruction as to the dieting and using of Horses, and lay open the secrets most necessary to be observed by all according to truth and the most innate Sincerity. And first of the fat horse, because in him are comprehended the other two, by reason he may be made lean, or between both, as the Master of him thinks most convenient, &c.

C H A P.



CHAP. II.

*The way and manner of dieting or feeding a Horse to fit him for a Race, being Fat or Gross, immediately after his being taken from Pasture or Soil, as to the first two weeks.*

**N**OW if you lay a wager, or match a fat or unwieldy horse which has been made so, either by being kept at grass in long idleness; or standing at his Stall, and there over-lavishly fed; to bring him to a fit condition to perform your expectation, for the first fort-night you must be up as soon as day appears, if not before, to attend him, and having put on his Bridle which you must be sure always to let hang upon the Rack close by him, dipped either in Beer or Ale, which will not only put him in mind of his being rid, but also make him the more familiar with it, and love it the better when on. This being done, cleanse the Stable of the filth, and then fall to dressing of him, which according to the best method, is as follows.

First, Curry him well in every part, but begin with the head, then his neck, back and hinder parts, after that his shoulders and fore-legs as low as the knees, that done; use your dusting cloth or something in the like nature, and with it dust him over in every part, then rub him well with your hard brush, beginning first at the head, and omitting no place whatsoever there, as the Temples, Nose, Ears, under-Jaws, and fore-Head, then proceed to the others parts as before, not forgetting his shanks, nor setting on of his hoofs, going backwards by degrees till the whole body be well rubbed, after that take your wet hand and stroke him over gradually, not leaving him rough nor wet in any part. Then with your wet hands or a soft cloth rub gently his Yard, Testicles, Sheath, Ears, between his Thighs, and all other private places whatsoever; after which, with a hair-cloth or any other hard cloth, if that be wanting, rub him over again, being sure to observe the rubbing of his face well, as his cheeks, between his Jaws, and on his fore-head, the rising of his neck, and fetlocks, and other places as you shall see occasion.

Which



Which being well done, take a clean woollen cloth something fine, and cleanse him with the same, beginning at the head, and so proceeding as you were taught before, leaving no part unrubbed; Lastly, with a Curry-comb well wetted, comb out the Mane and Tail very decently; thus much for rubbing and cleansing; which is as necessary in the ordering of Race-Horses, as their meat. The next thing to be observed is, to cover his body with a large cloth for that purpose, either of thick Kersey or thin Stuff according to the season of the year, or as heat or cold shall best agree with the nature of the Horse, upon which put his Saddle, girthing the foremost Girth very hard, but the other slack; then under it thrust two wisps of clean straw, which may stretch it to an equal straightness with the first, then putting a thick breast-cloth on you may mount, but if you please you may first spurt some Beer or Ale into his mouth, which will make him champ and feel his Bit the sooner, and be sure that your Stable be made clean before you bring your horse in again, the Dung and foul Litter being laid at the door, and it well stored with fresh; for if the horse stand not upon good store of Litter, and have it likewise to lie dry in, he will not thrive well nor seem half so pleasant as he will with it; for which purpose of all the straw, Wheat straw is the best, and must be used on this occasion unless it cannot be got, and then the next to it is Oat-straw, for both Rye and Barley-straws do much annoy your Horse, by reason the one doth cause him to be much troubled with the heart-burn, and the other to loosen him and make him scour extremely.

Being thus upon his back you must ride him easily for the space of half an hour, for if you gallop or strain him presently you do him much injury, by reason that it stretches his Sinews too much on the sudden, which is apt to ingender cold humours in the Joints and Nerves, so that the horse will be stiff after it, if not carefully, if not quickly remedied by bathing his Legs with Oil of Swallows or Earth-worms; but after by gentle riding they are made pliable you may gallop him easily, but let it be by any means upon plain and firm ground, or if you live near any steep hills whose ascent is smooth and firm let it be up them, then walk him down in your hand a foot pace or a small amble, that so he may cool by degrees; the best time to begin to exercise is before the Sun rise, or as soon as it is risen at the farthest, then after his breathing



breathing, when he begins to be cool lead him to some pleasant Spring or River and there let him drink his fill.

Then gallop him again, but not too hard, when you have done so for about the space of a quarter of an hour bring him again to the Brook or River, and let him drink if he so pleases, but if not then give him a gentle course or two to raise thirst in him, the which no doubt will do it, for take this as a general Rule, that before and after water you be sure to breath him gently.

After he hath drank three times and been breathed the like number, you may bring him home, and coming to the Stable-door where the dung and the foul litter is laid, let him stand upon it; after you are alighted from his back for some time, and by softly tapping or hitting his hinder Legs with your switch or whip, make him stretch them as far as he can backwards, and by pleasant whistling provoke him to Urine, which if he refuse to do once or twice, yet at last he will do it freely, and thereby you will preserve your Stable from filth and noisomeness, which otherways would much offend the horse.

He being come into the Stable rub his fore-Legs with wisps of clean Straw, putting all your strength thereto, but first, be sure to tie his head up close to the Rack in his Bridle, then his breast or fore-cloth being taken off, rub his head, breast, and neck. After that unloose his body-cloth and rub him well in every part, but especially in the Saddle-place, his Saddle being hung up in his sight, and after he hath been well rubbed with dry cloths, cover him up again with a linen coverer, and upon that put his woollen cloth, or more if the weather be cold, if warm, they will be sufficient, but be sure to observe they are dry when you put them on.

After you have girted them close upon him, stop in little wisps of light straw quite round him between the Cloths and the Girts, let them by no means be knotty or hard lest they hinder him of his sleep, and make him lie uneasy by hurting his sides; when he is thus cloathed cleanse his feet by pulling out the gravel or earth that they may have got into them, and with warm Cow-dung stop the same up close; after that is done, put about half a small armful of Hay that is very sweet and good into his rack, bound up as hard as possibly you can bind it, but first let it be cleared from dust or Seeds as well as may be, and take not off his Bridle till he has.



has eat it or most of it, for it being bound up hard will make him pull it with more than ordinary eagerness, and then consequently he must eat it with a good stomach, but let him not stand above one hour and a half in his Bridle, but having taken it off rub well his face, the ridge of his Neck, and each part of his head with a rough cloth made of Flax or Hemp, but the latter is the best, because if it be new the smell of it is very wholesome, and being apt to make him sneeze will thereby cleanse his head of gross and crude humours lodged therein.

This being done, cleanse the Manger of all the scattered Hay or other things offensive that may be in it, then take about two double handfuls of the best old Oats that are free from chaff or seeds, be sure they be the largest and fullest you can get, for the goodness of Oats is known by their weight, such as many do call *Polonian* Oats, or some more vulgarly cut oats, for these of necessity are wholesomest and best; for if you give your horse those that are musty or wet they will cause several little risings in the Horses Body, or more properly termed swellings, and such as be not old breed little worms in the Belly and cause pain; it is very hurtful for to give your horse any Oats that are not thoroughly dressed, for they will not only cheat him in his feeding, but make him slight them; nor are black ones to be allowed of unless in time of necessity, and then they are not wholesom.

Therefore be sure when you give him his portion of Oats, which must not exceed a quart at a time, you must sift them so that all the light Oats and Husks may fall away, and whatsoever else you imagine offensive, as Dust or Seeds, Straw or other grain, after which put them into the Manger; and observe whether he eat them heartily or not, if he do, you may supply him with the like quantity again, ordering them as the former, so depart and leave him to himself till about ten or eleven of the clock, at which time you coming again to him rub his head, face and neck with the Hempen cloth before recited, then give him another like quantity of Oats or somewhat more, order them also in the like manner before you give them to him, after which leave him for the space of two hours and let him remain during that time in as much darkness as your Stable is capable of, and not only then, but always in your absence; for the more obscure and dark he is kept, the better will he eat his meat and the better will he take his rest;  
for



for note, a Horſe will ſeldom lie down in a Stable that is very light, unleſs he be much wearied either with ſtanding or Travel; to cauſe the more darkneſs many are uſed to line their Stables, or at leaſt the Stall where the Horſe deſigned for Race ſtands, with Sacking or Canvas; not only to make it dark, but to keep him the warmer by ſheltring him from wind and duſt.

After the end of the ſaid two hours which is about one of the Clock; you muſt viſit him again, and give him another the like quantity of Oats ordered as the former, and rub his head, neck, and face, as before; which done, give him a ſmall bundle of Hay hard twiſted together, and let him alone to eat that by himſelf, and ſo let him continue till four of the Clock if the days be long, but if ſhort, not paſt three.

Then according to the time come to him again, and the Stable being well cleaned, wet the Bit of his Bridle in Beer, and ſo faſten the Reins of it to the Rack as ſoon as you have put it on, which being done, take off his cloths and dreſs him according to what you were taught in the Morning; he being well Dreſſed bring him forth and put his Saddle upon his Cloths as formerly, and endeavour to make him piſs upon his Dung and old Litter caſt without the Stable, then as ſoon as you pleaſe you may mount him, and ride him as in the Morning, only let this difference be generally obſerved, that you ride him not up any hills that are ſteep in the Evening, but upon the plaineſt and firmeſt ground you can find; or if you will for change, ſometimes in ſmooth, green Meadows that are dry, or by running waters if they lie convenient, or that there be any near you; and let him take all the Air he can, and often ſuffer him to gaze upon the Stream, but ſuffer him not to ſtand ſtill, but keep him in a continual motion either Galloping or ſhort Pacing which many give the term of racking; if he at any time as you lead him in or out of his Stable, offer to ſmell to any horſe dung though not his own, hinder him not, for that will cauſe him to evacuate and ſit him the better for his meat.

When he is well watred and well aired at the cool of the day (or if it be within night it matters not) bring him home (for note, there is nothing better to rid him of groſs and foul humours than to be abroad with him early and late) and when he is come to the Stable, obſerve that nothing, according to former ordering of  
B b b b b him



him be omitted, but all done with care and diligence, the which I hope by this time you have so well taken notice of that I need not to repeat it over again; let his diet be likewise the same, and let him stand at it by himself two hours or more, according to the Season of the year, in his cloths; in Winter you may let him stand till nine before he has his Bait for all night, in Summer later if you please; then coming to visit him you must give him near three pints of Oats sifted, dress him in every part, give him a small bundle of Hay in his Rack, and after having raised his Litter leave him till the ensuing Morning.

When betimes you must abroad with him again and use him as you have been taught, so that in the space of two weeks you may bring him to such a pass, as he will be fit to ride or take any moderate heat, but beware how you strain him too much, for it will do him a great Injury; thus having after the exactest manner instructed you as to the first fortnights keeping, I shall next proceed to give you Rules and Methods for giving him Courses, or as some term them Heats, &c.

### CH A P. III

*Orders most carefully to be observed in the Coursing or Heating your Horse.*

**T**O begin with which, I must inform you that you must not give above two Courses in a Week, for if you do you will spend him too much, although he be never so lusty, and thereby weaken him and make him unfit for your Race.

The next thing to be observed is, that one of the times must be upon the day you design he shall run the Match; the two days must be as equally distant from each other as you can divide the Week, therefore you ought to make your Match accordingly; Mondays and Fridays, or Tuesdays and Saturdays are the fittest if you can so model the affair, for those days have the most distance between them; if your Match be designed on the Monday let that and Friday be his heating days.

But



But if on Tuesday or Wednesday then Saturday must be the other that must serve to both, because it is unseemly to do it on the Sunday, and so you may observe of whatsoever day it shall fall out to be, that you keep as near as you can an equal distance of time between his Courses or Heats.

But again, you must be sure to observe in what weather you ride him at such times, for if it be wet, that is, if it either Rain, Snow, or Hail, you must not give him any heat till such time it be fair, unless necessity urge it, as when it rains most part of the Week or so; and then you must chuse the time when it holds up best, and let him be covered very warm, not only his Body, but his Head, Neck, Ears, Breast and Shoulders; for his Head you must provide a covering made with little bags to put his ears in, and be sure you keep him abroad as little time as possible, for the damp raw Air will at such times indanger much his health.

But to the last particular that is to be taken notice of in this Chapter; be sure if the weather be fair and serene, get him dressed and abroad with him as soon as day light appears, but not before, by reason it is very incommodious in this case both to the Horse and Man, and thus much concerning his Courses or Heats, which is the most necessary thing to be observed in preparing him for your Match; now to the second order of his Keeping and Feeding.

C H A P. IV.

*The manner of his second Fortnights Feeding, and the care to be observed therein.*

**I**N this as in the former, you must be circumspect to observe the cleaning of his Stall, giving fresh Litter, and keep it lighted up that his Bed may be always soft, and the old with his Dung and Stale cast out at the Stable door, then when you come to him in the Morning give him a quart or somewhat more of well dressed Oats, dressed as you were taught before, e'er you put on his Bridle, which being eaten, dress him in every part with such  
Bbb b b 2 cloths



cloths, brushes, and combs, as you formerly have done, which being perfected according to the best of your skill, fursingle on his cloths, and then set his Saddle upon his back and ride him abroad, galloping and racking him moderately, and between each time of so doing water him, and let his bringing home and Stabling be in each particular observed as in the fore-going fort-night, the which you have been so amply taught that I think there is no need of repeating it over again, only this take notice of, which is not yet laid down; when you have brought him into his Stall before you pull off his Bridle take a wisp of the best hay you can get, and holding it hard in your hand after it is well dusted, let him eat it thence, and give him all the occasion you can to pull hard at it, and if he devour it with a good Appetite supply him with more, and do so three times at least if he will eat it, for by so doing you will bring him to be familiar with you and win much upon his good nature; when he refuses to eat or that you think he has eaten enough, take off his Bridle after he has stood in it about an hour, then rub him all over and dress him as formerly, which ended, give his Bait of Oats in quantity and manner as has been often declared, but by no means forget to sift them. Then having his diet-bread by you pretty stale, which must be about three days old at least, it being then the wholesomest and most commodious for him to eat, and after having eaten it to digest; the manner of making it according to the most skilful prescribers is as you shall be shewed in the following Chapter.

## C H A P. V.

*The first Diet to be given in the ordering your Race-Horse, and the way to make it.*

**F**irst, to make this Diet-bread you must take half a bushel of the best horse-beans, well sifted from any Seeds or husks, or three pecks, if your horse be a great feeder; to the latter you must put one peck of the best Wheat you can get, to the former quantity proportionably; you may grind them, divided if you please, and



and so mingle them afterwards, but in my opinion they will be best ground together, after which dress the meal as fine as you can, so that there be few or no husks or bran left in it; then take the best Ale-yest you can get, by no means let it be sour or dirty, about three quarts will do, and put to that as much water as will just make the Meal up into Dough, which must be kneaded with all your strength in a Trow, or some such like thing for that purpose. If you are not strong enough to knead it with your hands you may tread it with your feet, being sure to leave no knobs in it, when it is thoroughly kneaded, cover it from the dust and let it remain the space of an hour, then knead it again, and after you have so done make your Loaves up about the bigness of six-penny-loaves or bigger if you please, and after you have baked them exceeding well in an Oven, take them out, set them trans-verse to cool, that is, with their bottoms upwards.

When you have kept them three days, which you must do ere you give any of them to your horse for fear of making of him sick, which if they do, he will refuse to eat it for the future.

The next thing to be observed is, that if the bread be moist or clammy, so that it stick to his mouth and he cannot freely swallow it, or do seem not to like it, you must cut it into thin slices and dry it in the Sun, or if the Sun shine not, in some Stove or by the Fire, but not too hard, then take it and mix it with his portion of Oats by smalling it amongst them, so that then he will eat it freely, and it will do him no harm, but be sure to pare away the crust, but note that you must never give it him alone, but always being crumbled and mixed with his Oats, the quantity of Bread you so mix must not exceed three or four slices at a time.

You having given him one bait, in the morning, about eleven or twelve a clock visit him again, and after well dressing him give him his bait or portion of diet, as before, both of Bread and Oats.

About two of the Clock or somewhat later if you design not to course him the following day, and so take the distance of time as has been formerly observed in all his diets, only let his motions be curiously observed and each action taken notice of, for by that you may know in what liking or estate of body he is, and how he thrives upon his diet.

Again observe, that if you design to heat him the day following you must not from the time just before mentioned give him  
any



any bread with his Oats, but let him eat them by themselves, and when he has eat them put him on his Bridle and dress him well in each part, the manner of which I hope we need not now declare; then his cloth being put on in decent manner, clap on his Saddle and ride him abroad in the Air, gallop and rack him gently and let him take his watrings as before, then bringing him home let him stale and dung at the door if you can get him to do it; and being brought into the Stable, after rubbing down give him his portion of Oats, but no Hay, for that is not convenient before a heat.

Now I have given you a most exact account concerning the ordering and dieting your horse, the next thing necessary is, to inform you what Muzzles are most convenient for Race-Horses, and what is the occasion of their being put on, and the danger that there is in some of them.

First then, Muzzles were made to prevent horses from biting and tearing their Racks, Mangers, and Stalls, to keep them from eating Loume or Mud-walls, their own Litter or the like, which is very dangerous and hurtful to them, for it is not requisite they should eat any thing without your knowledge, or what you give them.

But as for these Muzzles there are many kinds, some close, some broad, others with little round holes in them, these are commonly made of Leather which often proves very annoiable to your Horse.

First then, any Leather that is alumed is very hurtful to the head by reason of its sharp scent and Saltness, the next is that which is greased or dressed with course Oil, the smell of which often makes your Horses head ake, and causes him to leave his meat, be sick and hard bound, so that he cannot dung kindly.

Now there are another kind of Muzzles that are very requisite which are much in use, which are made of pack-thread or whipcord. These are most convenient in the Summer time and will not offend the horse, if you wash them once in two or three days or have fresh ones to put on.

Another sort there are which are commonly used in Winter, which are made of strong Canvas fit for the head of your Horse, so far as need requires, and bound with strong filleting, on one side a loop being made, and on the other a string to fasten it round his Poll, and under his Chaps; some for warmth use to put  
double



double Canvas, but take notice there must be a breathing Place with net-work just against his mouth and nostrils to let the Air in and out, or else if it be hard tied on it will go near to stifle him.

Thus much as touching Muzzles, now I will return again to the ordering your Horse, and give you a farther account of several other particulars in the management of him, beyond what has already been discoursed upon.

If in the ensuing Morning, you coming to visit your horse find him laid, raise him not, but let him rest, but if he be upon his Legs take a quart of Oats and wash them well in Beer or Ale, then dry them indifferently well and give him them to eat; and when he has so eaten them, put on his Bridle and rub him down exceeding well, after that put on all his cloths and then for Saddling of him; after which, hold up his head as high as you can reach, and into his mouth break a new-laid Egg and oblige him to swallow it, after which, spurt some Beer into his month and carry him abroad to Air, observing at the door as formerly. Being mounted, ride him gently, and by degrees encrease his pace till it come to a gallop, and if he be so enclined let him smell to any horses dung he meets with upon the Road.

Now I shall give you another instruction worth observing that is, the day you are designed to run the Race when you come within a mile or less of the starting goal or post for that purpose assigned; take off his cloths, which being done clap your Saddle upon his Back sending some person, with his cloths to the end of the Race intended, and ride him on gently till you come to the weighing or starting post; shew him the post and make him as far as he is capable, sensible of what he is designed for to be done withal.

The Signal for the start being given put him on at near three quarters speed, or if his strength will allow it, more, but be sure you put him not to more than he is able to perform; hold the Reins pretty streight in your hand, but by no means check him in his Course, but let him run on chearfully, and give him all the encouragement you can, and so let him run the whole Race through.

If you, during the Course find his strength to fail him, or that he begin to yield, give him what ease you can, and do not force him to too great a swiftness, but use him so that he may be at all times well.



well pleased with his courses and free to run, and so in a short time you bring him to perfection, but if he be any way discouraged at first, he will never perform according to your Expectation.

Now the next thing material to be observed is upon what ground you run, and then consider which ground your horse takes most delight to run upon, for this may turn to your great advantage, the which you may best take notice of in his Heats or in his first Race, whether it be smooth, rough, dry, wet, or a little rising that he most eagerly covets, and for the future chuse it if possible in all your Races.

When the Race is ended, wherein if he have been exceeding hard put to it, by no means let him stand still but gallop him moderately about some green field the better to let him take breath by degrees and cool accordingly, the which when you find he has pretty well done, have him into some dry gravel-pit or other deep place out of the wind, or if there be none convenient, then to the thickest Bushes or Trees you can meet with, and there having his cloths ready, with a large blunt knife or some old piece of Iron or Wood flat like a Ruler, yet having a blunt edge, scrape the sweat off from his Body, laying the strength of both your hands to the same till none appear in any part, and between whiles give your horse a turn or two, and then scrape him again till he has done sweating, at which time pull off his Saddle and scrape the place on which it was; likewise then with dry cloths, rub him in all parts, not omitting any place, exceeding well, put on his cloths and girt his Saddle on upon them, immediately after which you must gallop him gently for a considerable space, then rub him slightly not taking off his cloths, especially from his head and neck; then you may alight and walk him in your hand about the Heath or field, but be sure you suffer him not to graze if he should offer it, and when you perceive him cool and dry, ride him home gently; you may gallop him softly if you please; when you come home to the Stable door endeavour to make him piss and dung, but beware you put him not into the Stable till he be quite dry and very cool, where being entered fasten his Bridle to the Rack, and have this following dose in readiness, which you must give him in a drenching horn or some such like thing, which will cleanse his Body and much help nature to recover strength, if he be any ways weakned by his running.



C H A P. VI.

*The Dose or Scouring is made thus.*

**F**irst, get a Pint of the best Canary, and add to it one ounce, three drams of clarified Rosin beat into powder, and stir it about in the Wine, then add more, half a pint of Olive Oil the best that can be got, (for if it any ways stink it will make your horse sick and cause him to cast it up again) and mix it well with the former, then take an ounce and three quarters, or if you will, two ounces of Sugar-Candy, beat it small and put it to the rest, all which being well mixed together place them in an earthen Vessel upon a gentle fire till they boil, then take it off and let it stand till it be blood-warm, and so give it your Horse; if he refuse to take it you must force him to it by pouring it down his throat, and holding up his head till he have quite swallowed it down.

The virtue of it is to take away by scouring and sometimes by gentle Sweat all foul and gross humors, that too much heat or overstreining had caused to gather in the Stomach and bowels, it dissolves crewdy grease that having been melted is again settled in hard knobs, and brings it a way in what part soever; in fine, there is not a wholesomer drink can be given to any horse, especially after running.

C H A P. VII.

*The Way and Method of looking to, and keeping your Horse after he has taken this Potion.*

**W**hen the Horse has taken it, then immediately rub his Legs and pull off his Saddle and all other his cloths, leaving him nothing on, then curry him well, and after brush him, and with a dusting cloth dust him, and again with a new hempen cloth or cloth of hair, rub his body in every part, but in so doing

Ccccc

ing



ing your greatest pains must be about his head, neck, and breast; this being perfected put on his cloths and keep him as warm as possible, and put several handfulls of straw under his girts, and then let him remain without either meat or drink for the space of two hours, during which time you must watch him, and seldom let him stand still for fear of getting cold, during the time the Potion is in working; nay, sleep or standing still (which he will chuse if he be left alone to himself) are alike dangerous, by reason that the blood and vital Spirits have not their operation so well as in times of motion, nor the heat of the body power to force up the humors that lie as it were absconded in the several parts. When he has stood in his Bridle, and fasted so long as is before-mentioned, or if you think convenient somewhat longer; then take ears of wheat about one hundred, and offer them to him to eat, but let them not be bearded in any-wise, but ere you suffer him to take them, feel him all over in what condition or estate of body he is, and if you find him sweat on a sudden or any cold clamm over-spread his Limbs, which many call a cold sweat, or if you observe him to pant, tremble, or fetch his breath short, with-hold your hand and give not any thing; for if you do, it will much indanger him, these being the Symptoms that the Potion has not done working, but that it is striving with the vicious humors and foul indigestures of the Body, therefore put on his slip and taking off his Bridle stop all the Lights of the Stable, the better to keep it dark, and secure your horse from too much Air, and let him take his ease in your absence for the space of two hours or more, by which time the Potion will have done working and his sickness will pass away.

Then coming to him again, if you find him well you may give him the ears of wheat by four or five at a time till the whole parcel is wasted, after that if he will eat any more you may suffer him to have the like quantity again, and after them a small bundle of Hay bound up very hard and thrown into his Rack, but during the time of his eating it, be sure to rub him over as you have been taught; but more especially his head.

Within the hour following give him his quantity of Oats as before, mingling with them, a pint of husked Beans, as clean from husks and dust as can be, then take three slices of bread and (the crust being cut away) crumble them among the Oats and Beans, and so give them to him, and after he has eaten them



Next Morning, as soon as day appears, you must give him his first diet, then rub him well in every part; after which, put on his cloths and air him, that is, ride him abroad, and use him as formerly, permitting him to drink freely; both Gallop and Rack him, but do not ride him hard.

When you return, dress him, and feed him with Oats, Beans, and Bread as heretofore and some Hay, but not so much as you were used to give him.

As for your heating days, they must likewise be observed in all points as formerly, nor upon any occasion neglected, unless upon such as has been declared, nor must you encrease them, nor strain your Horse more than you were wont; four heats or courses will be sufficient for the first fort-night, and four purges or Scouring for the whole time of his being made fit for Racing, all which must be observed with diligence and caution, according to the forementioned Methods and Instructions; but now to the third, &c.

#### C H A P. X.

##### *The third Fortnights Dieting and Ordering your Horse.*

**N**OW for the manner of Making his Bread, it must be as followeth, finer than formerly was wont, must it be made; therefore take but two pecks of Beans, and with fine Wheat make it up a Bushel, let them be ground together as formerly, and dressed exceeding fine, so that there be hardly a Husk or a Bran to be seen; then with a like quantity of yeast as before, mingle the meal and add water to it, so much as is just sufficient to make it stick close together; when it is well kneaded and worked up, you must bake it as you have been taught.

After which, it having stood about three days or somewhat more, pare away the Crust and give it your Horse, (that is) three slices crumbled amongst a quart of fine dressed Oats and a quart of split Beans; your observance shall be in these as in the former two weeks, his Dressings, Airings, times of Feeding, & likewise his heating days must be particularly observed. And take notice of this,

That you must not, after he has been heated, give him any of the Scouring, but that being laid aside, give him in the room of it Balls about the bigness of a Pullets Egg, which are great Cordi-  
als.



als and restoratives, and you must give him one at a time; thus sitting in the Saddle or otherwise if you please, hold up his head as high as is convenient, and put one of them into his Mouth and oblige him to swallow it, but before you give it him, you must rub him down, or according to your match; for you must not heat him for four or five days before you intend to run your Race, but you may air him very well, and give him gentle breathings, that he may in no wise lose his wind, but give him none of the fore-mentioned scouring drink.

One thing more I have considered to quicken his Spirits and make him lively, which is to burn *Storax*, *Olibanum*, *Frankincense* and *Benjamin* mixed together, which drive away all ill scents and airs, and there is nothing more wholesom for the brain.

As likewise, when you give your horse his Oats, Beans and Bread, wash the two former in neither Ale nor Beer, but take a pint of *Muscadine*, and about the Whites of ten Eggs, and steep them therein, but you need not do this above four times in a Week; at other times, give them to him dry as formerly.

Beware likewise how to give him any Hay, unless immediately after his heats, and then holding a small wisp in your hand, let him pull it thence by degrees, but if his Belly be apt to shrink up, you may give him more to keep it streight.

Again, all the last week, if your horse be given to eat his Litter you must keep him Muzzled as you have been formerly taught, but if he be not subject to the same, nor to eat any other foul thing, three days before you run him will be a sufficient space to keep him muzzled.

The day morning before you intend to run him, you must air him gently, and when you have brought him home, dress him and rub him as formerly, and be sure to diet him exceeding well, omitting no point, neither before nor after his being carried abroad, only towards night you may stint him of the third part of his usual Bait, but let his last Diet be full Proportion, as likewise his dressing; another thing is also to be observed, which is, that you must not keep him out late, but let him be in his Stable at Sun-set or before, and likewise the day before the Match, you shall shooe him, poll him, and all things else that you shall think convenient for fitting him out in the best wise, but beware that it be not unskilfully performed, for then you may much injure your Horse, or  
give



give him some cause to be offended at your curiosity; or as many call it Adornment. It is reported by some who have had long experience in this way and manner of ordering of Horses, that several are so skilful as to understand the meaning of such ornaments, and what they are to be put to, the next day, which makes them conceive such Pride that they will not eat any meat till the time they have run the Race, unless it be forced upon them.

It is true, all Authors that treat of Naturalities do affirm that horses are most knowing and subtil Creatures, and that they are indued with many noble qualities and generous perfections.

Now for brading their Tails and Manes and tying Ribbons on their fore-head, or at their ears, I hold altogether unnecessary, for, so doing does not only offend him, but many times hinders him in the performance of his Race, by reason that they make him cast his head often to look at them, and if he has not been used to them, many times make him start out of his way, and so lose his ground; therefore in my opinion, only to comb out his Mane (and Tail, and if they be too cumbersome you may clip them a little) is the best Method in that case.

Be sure there be nothing left undone that you intend to do to him, till the morning he is to run, for if there be, it may chance to vex him, and thereupon some horses will grow fullen and will not run freely.

The Morning you are to run, make him a visit before it is well light, and after you have pulled off his Muzzle and rubbed his head in every part thereof, offer him a quart of Oats steeped in a pint of Muscadine or Tent, but before you put them in bruise them a little, if he chance to refuse it, put him some Oats in the whites of Eggs only; or to be the better sure of his eating, some of the best and finest Bread, and some whole Wheat, well sifted and dressed, mingle with his Oats, in which you must use no Beans; but be sure you give him but a little of any of these diets, for if you fill him he will be unfit for the Race and may fail your expectation, which otherwise he no doubt would have answered in each particular, to your great satisfaction.

If he empty not his Body freely, take him abroad and air him a little, and see if you can possibly get him to dung and urine, the which if he do (the which no doubt by this time you will have taught



taught him to do) bring him into the Stable again, and put his Muzzle on; but on the contrary, if he will empty without any further trouble in the Stable, 'tis needless to lead him out, and far better to let him remain till the time you are designed to run, or about half an hour before, according as the distance is from the place he is kept at to the starting place.

Just as you are going to lead him, dip the Bit of his Bridle in Muscadine or Alicant, and then drawing off his Muzzle, draw on his bridle, but if you see him inclinable to empty, let him do it before, and to incite him to do it the more speedily, give him about a pint of washed Oats, Bread and Wheat as before you did; then spread soft wax, such as shoo-makers use, under your Girts and Saddle, which done girt it gently on his back, so that he scarcely feel it is on; then spread a large white Linen cloth over his Saddle, and over it all his other cloths, which likewise being slightly girt, stick wisps under his Girts or Sursingles, but let them be very soft; then cover him with some piece of rich Tapestry or Cloth of State to make him shew gallant, after which pour down his throat with a drenching horn, one pint of Muscadine, Alicant, or for want of either, Canary.

Then lead him forth with courage, and suffer him to move gently, and if he offer to smell to any dung, either old or new, suffer him by any means to do it, or if he offer not, endeavour to make him, for it will cause him to evacuate, which will much lighten him and help him in the Race; nay use double diligence herein, by leading him to such places as you think will soonest provoke him to it, as heaps of rushes, brakes, or heath, little bushes, high tufted grass, or the like; but if there happen to be no such in your way, then you may spread, and light up some Straw under his feet, making it rustle; then whistle, and touch him gently with your switch or whip to make him stretch, the which no doubt will effect your desire.

Again, If he foam at mouth by champing hard upon his Bit or otherwise, you must take care to have a fine linen cloth ready to wipe it off, and a vessel of fair cool water, to cleanse and wash his mouth still as you observe the froth or foam to rise.

Then having walked him gently to the place designed for starting, you must take off all to his Saddle, and having rubbed him down with care in every part (which must be done with hard wisps



wisps) search and cleanse his feet, and spurt some water in his mouth; after which, your self or whom you assign to ride him, may take his Back, and observing the fair start, put him swiftly on, and run the Match.

—— No doubt with good success, for this manner of ordering will seldom fail your expectations, if your horse in himself be but sound and of good Mettld Limbs and strength to bear him out.

Now I shall give the curious to understand as necessary a point belonging to horses as has ever been discoursed of in any Tract whatsoever, the which will be very useful for all those whose employ it is to trade in Horses, and be as the Sailers Card, to direct them in that affair, and keep them from being over-seen, or cheated in any Market or Fair whatsoever; with each particular observation, rule and method to be taken notice of in the Limbs, body, and head, as eyes, mouth, nose, ears, and the true manner to know a good horse from a bad.

But to begin, first, there are these things to be observed, if you will choose a horse that shall be for your turn, and please you in every part, and in all his actions, travels, or other labours, as Hunting, Racing, War, drawing of Coach, Chariot, or any rural service whatsoever, but take notice that no one horse can be capable of all these.

Therefore you must choose your horse according to what you design him for, and so manage him accordingly.

But to imperfection in general, the which I will undertake to demonstrate in the sound horse, who is no ways defective, because in him may lively appear all the maladies and mischances that may or can befall any horse whatsoever.

First then, be advised, that when ever you design to buy a horse, take especial notice of all his parts, and the full proportion of his body according to his natural shape, or if you can observe any imperfection in his Limbs that may arise by accident, whereby they are lessened or made bigger, take special care to find out the cause of it if possible, by which you may know what you buy, and whether to like or dislike him.

In which, your observances in election must be draw from two heads, the first of which is general, the latter peculiar or proper.



For the first of which, it is to be understood upon what occasion you buy your Horse, or for what use he is designed, what colour is best, or best pleases you; next his stature, breed, and likeness, these are general, because every man in this will please himself according to his fancy, nor ever can we imagine all men to be of a mind in this, therefore it is best to let them choose according to their own pleasure, nor much matters it.

The next, which is a peculiar or a particular Query, is to know what Country-breed he is of, whether English or Foreign, to know which you must enquire of those who have had the breeding of him, or if that cannot be known, by reason of his being so often bought and sold, take these particular observations; if he be Spanish breed, his Limbs are small and streight, dry and spare, like a Harts; if Barbary, a fine little Head and a well set Breast and Shoulder; if of Naples, he is hawks nosed and clear eyed, his eyes seeming to sparkle; if Dutch or Flemish, his legs will be generally rough and large hoofed; as for French and English, they are almost alike, only the English are stronger set and more hardy for any exercise whatsoever.

Now to his colour, for the colour of a horse is much to be observed, by reason one colour is far better than another, though there be good Horses of all colours; the best colours, as the most experienced do affirm, are the Roan, the White, the Lyard, the Bay, the Sorrel, the Dapple-Gray, the Flea-bitten, the Black, Iron-grey, and White, but above all, the Bay is chosen and accounted the best, both by the French and the English, especially if they have a Star in their fore-heads, and their feet spotted with white spots, the Lyard for courage is esteemed, which is a mingled Roan, the Mouse, Dun and Grizled were formerly in great esteem, as also the Dapple-Grey, and such as come nearest them, the Iron-Grey, the White-Sorrel and Brown Bay. *Plato* commendeth much the White, whom *Virgil* does not esteem; others commend the Black, especially if he have a white Star in his fore-head, or be streaked with white down his face, the black if he be not mingled with Silver hair, nor have any white about him, is naught for Service, the Flea-bitten horse is always singular good for Travel and other Labours, and will hold out the best of any; the yellowish or glew'd unless he be spotted or straked with white is naught, yet if he be well marked he often proves indifferent well; and



and if he have a black List down his back from the nape of his neck to his tail, he is excellent good for a Stallion if his proportion be according; the red Bay, and the blue gray are much subject to Melancholy. The Flea-bitten and the Black with White are Sanguine, the Roan, the Sorrel, and the Black without White subject to choler.

But as to their Paces, which are these, Trot, Rack, Amble, or Gallop, the which you must choose, according as you design to put him to, either for Racing, Hunting, Travelling, or Fight; if it be for moderate Travelling, an easie Trot is best, the which you may know if he be prone to by observing his Legs.

Thus when his near fore-leg and his off hinder-leg, move together, or his near hinder Leg and his off fore-Leg; and farther observe, that if when he moves, he be quick to raise his legs from the ground, and do it short and with an even distance, making but little treads, he will likewise pace very well; for if he lift up his feet blunderingly or carelessly, it denotes he is given to Stumbling and will be oft troubled with Lameness; if he strike his Legs across, or take no wideness in his steps, it denotes he is subject to trip, interfere or fall; if he take not his step even, it shews an unwillingness to travel and a weakness in his Limbs; if he tread large steps, he is subject to over-reach and strain himself if he be put to the Speed.

Again, if you choose a horse for ease and pleasant Journeys, you must choose an Ambler, which you may know thus, if he move both his Legs on the same side together, fore-Leg and hinder-Leg, and that he must do, large, nimble, and easie; for if he tread short and shuffling he is no good Ambler, yet if he be very nimble at his first beginning to pace, it denotes he cannot long hold it.

Now for hunting either of Buck, Stag, or Hare, for speed on the Road, or to ride Post, if you choose a horse, then you must take one who has naturally or has been taught the racking Pace, which is neither Trot nor Amble, but between both, and is the easiest of all, tho it gains not so much ground, the which you may observe by the same method as you did ambling.

The next I have to treat of is galloping, which is natural to all the former Paces, but the Amble; for an ambling Horse will immediately be brought to Gallop, by reason it consists almost of the same nature with it, only a slower and not so much straining; for it being a swift pace, by long use has so inured the horse to it

D d d d d 2

that



that he cannot without some time and instruction frame his legs to it, but will fall into a Pace; if he be overmuch spurred, beaten or forced that can properly be called no Pace, but a confusion of all together, but perfects all things, so in time you may bring him to gallop as you please if no imperfection in his Limbs restrain him.

Now I shall lay down such observations as you may infallibly know a good Gallopper by. First, if he raise his feet swift and clearly from the ground but not too high, and that he neither roul nor boggle in his way, nor striketh his Belly with his feet. If he take large reaches with his fore-legs, and his hinder follow quickly, in which you must likewise observe that he do not cut under the Knee, or on the Shank, which is called by some the Gallopping, but by others the swift cut, or that he throws not his Legs cross or twist them as it were, nor that he set one foot upon, or clap it against the other, but that he keep him steady and even in all his course, and still with his fore-foot head the way.

The horse who has these properties always gallops most neatly, and a man may trust to him in any time of danger, that is, if he be beset with Thieves, or pursued by an Enemy, in time of War, if he be but able of Body, and well kept.

If your horse raise all his feet together, and gallop as it were on a heap, or round, then, he is not swift, but will tread sure and hold cut well, by reason of his strength and limbs, and is fit for War or to carry double.

Again, observe if a horse gallops but softly and treads firm, not being Subject to fall nor stumble, yet his Legs seem tender, and he lifts them up as it were in fear, and throws them in and out as if he was hurt or pained, then is he not for gallopping uses, nor ever will he, by reason he has some obscure disease or stiff lameness in his Joints that is hard to remove.

Now as to his height or stature, the which must be observed according to the use you put him to, or as your self shall think fit, a well made horse with strong Joints, but not much flesh upon his Legs, you much choose, about sixteen hands high; if you take one for carrying double or any other great weights, as likewise for drawing either in Cart, Waggon or Coach, and if for recreation only, the finest and neatest limbed and shaped you can light of, and not exceeding fourteen hands in stature, or if you please less, according to the proportion of your own body.

Thus



Thus far having given you, as I well hope, a satisfactory instruction, I shall now proceed to inform you of the Deformities and Imperfections, secret Distempers and Infirmities that lie hidden many times from the eyes of the Buyer, the which are not a few, so that it would be almost impossible to discover them all, so that every one might understand them; therefore I shall endeavour to give you as plain and full an account as is necessary, or that can be understood according to the best opinions of the skilful.

To begin then, when any one offers you a Horse to sell, after you have seen him tried, as to the former experience, and understand his Age, and Breed, then cause his Saddle and all other his Cloths, nay his very Bridle, if so be you can get him to stand still without it, to be took off, & then place your self just before him, and look withfully upon him, and take especial notice of his Countenance at all times, whether he look pleasant and lively, well and stedfast, without change or alteration; the which if he do, it is a sign that he is of a good Spirit, and in good health, as to bodily sickness or inbred diseases; the next thing to be observed is his ears, for if they be thick, stiff and taper from the roots to the tips, as also long or of a convenient size. well fastned and strong at the roots, it is a great sign of mettle, perfection and compleatness, for such ears are an ornament to any horse.

But if they be contrary, as thick at the ends, lolling, and often moving, it denotes him dull, sloathful, heavy, and stubborn, and of a very ill temper.

Now if his face be clean and his forehead rising, the similitude of a feather in his forehead, upon his cheeks or any part of his face, but it is the greater sign if it be above his eyes, or if he have a white spot, Star, or Streak of a pretty large Size, drawn even, or a snip of white upon his nose, it is a sign he is good and beautiful.

But on the contrary, if his face seem swelled, bloated or puffy, fat, dull, cloudy, or lowring, his fore-head flat and square, which the vulgar term Mare-faced, the rach if any he has in his front, standing very low, or in the middle of his face, his Star or Streak uneven or crinkled, his nose ball'd or raw, and the hair in many places off from his face, are very bad marks and signatures of great deformity.

Again



Again, if his eyes be shining, full and round, stand Eagle-like, out from his head, and little or none of their whites to be seen, if they be full and sparkling, it denoteth him chearful, swift-sighted and comely, full of Spirit and of good nature, yet fierce and fiery.

But if his eyes look askew, seem dull, and withered, little and slow in motion, they denote much imperfection, and are unhand-some to behold; if they are the colour of Foxes or Ferrets eyes, he will be quickly moon-eyed or wall-eyed, and, if not timely prevented, blind; if he chance to have a thick, dull Philm over it, and in it white specks, it not only shews a timorousness in your Horse, but subjection to causeless starting, and also in danger of having a Pin and Web or white skin over his sight; if they run either water or matter, or seem bloody or raw, they proceed from an old Surfeit or an over-heating, which was done by immoderate riding: Corruption ingendring in the Head by exceeding draughts or the like, as dead eyes that are low sunk do; that, if he lives long he will be blind, and that he was gotten by a very aged Stallion and is of no good breed; if the Whites be as much seen as the Black it signifies great weakness, unnatural and sullen in himself.

Again, if you observe by feeling or otherwise, his Chaps or Jaw-bones Lean, Spare, and large spaces between them, his Wind-pipe Head great and wide, not surrounded or incumbered with Nerval small Ropes or the like; and that his neck seems to shoot through the Jaw, or be placed in the nether part of it within the same; it is a token of large and strong wind, and that your Horse will hold out a Race very well if all his Limbs be proportionable, and that he is of a good heart, and has a head not subject to Diseases: But on the contrary, if his Jaws be fat, gross and full of kernels or knobs, and that there is but a little space between the bones, it denotes short wind, foulness of Stomach and Belly, and subject to Glaunders, Broken-winded, or Strangury, and many times apt to be troubled with grievous Colds.

Now if his Jaws be close and firmly fixed as it were to touch each other, so that they cause the flesh to rise about them as if swelled, it denoteth short-wind, gross and vicious humours settling there, and especially if it rise more in one place than in another, and the form of the risings be long, for then some inward infection is gathered



ed, which if not taken in time will turn to an Impostume or worse.

If he have wide Nostrils, and they open and shut and seem in a continual motion, so that the insides or redness upon every little Straining or Snorting appear; yet the compass of his nose but small, his mouth not wide but deep, with small dry Lips, meeting without the least hanging over, do likewise promise the horse good. And well winded, courageous and hardy.

But if contrary, quite otherwise; as short-winded, tender and weak, a shallow mouthed horse will never bear his Bridle well, but if it be not buckled fast, the Bit will be apt to fall out of his mouth, or he will be much apt to flaver.

Again, if his upper Lip be uneven, and will not meet with his under, but either shut over or flap, it is a certain sign that he has a lingering Disease or is exceeding slow, as also if he have a Rheum or dropping at the nose, if that be clear it will if not timely stopped (the which it is hard to do) turn to the Glaunders; if one nostril runs it is worse than if they did both.

— Now as to his teeth, be sure to observe that when you buy a horse, to look in his mouth, and take a diligent care to see if he have lost none of his teeth, or if he have, what they are, whether Grinders, Fore-teeth or Tusks; for thereby you may give a shrewd guess at his Age, although the mark be out of his mouth; but to avoid being cheated buy not a horse that has lost any, for if he have lost some the rest will quickly follow.

The next thing to be considered is his Brest, for if that be broad, strong-set, rising or full fleshed, and Adorned with marks or feathers; then you may confide in his strength, and he will not deceive your expectations; but if he be the contrary, it denotes weakness of Body and unfitness for Labour, and that he is given to that ill quality in Horses, viz. to stumbling, as likewise to cutting and tripping; as also if his Breast seem to sink or give inwards, it shews him of no courage nor metal.

The next thing to be considered is his Legs; that is, his fore-legs only, of the hinder hereafter I shall treat; first observe the Joint next to his shoulder, which is properly called his Bow or Elbow, and from thence his Thigh as low as his knee, and observe they be well Sinew'd and covered with brawny flesh, no ways giving out nor tumid, and that he stand firm without bending or moving his  
Joints



Joints, which if he do, it is a sign of strength, as likewise they are all marks of the same.

The next is to observe if he carry an even or equal pace with his Legs, but especially with his knees, and that they be neat, well knit, and not too fleshy, of a just proportion; for take notice if they differ in magnitude he has had his knee broke, or else some distemper harbours there, as the Gout, &c. if you find any cuts or scars with hair growing in them, he is apt to fall, which will be hard to cure or rid him of.

Then leaving his knees, observe his Shanks as low as his Fetlock, and if they be well Sinew'd, finely made and shaped proportionable to his Thighs, and that they neither bend in, nor out, and that there be no ridge nor seam descending from the knee-joints on the inside, then is he good and sound in those parts; but on the contrary, if there be scars, scabs, or knobs on the inside, it is by reason of his high striking, called by most the swift cut; but if above his Fetlock or Hoof, it is interfering or short-cutting, but in this be sure to take good observation, for if under the skin, all over there appear little Knobs or Scabs, it is caused by some ill usage or nasty keeping, or else Symptoms of the Maunge, that will in a short time break forth to the full if not prevented.

Farther, if his Legs be full fleshed, fat, or Dropsical, he will in no wise be fit for servile Labour; if on the inward bend of his Knee there be long scars, seams or scabs, the which have not been occasioned by the swift cut, they will prove very dangerous for it denotes a Mallander that in a short time will turn to a Canker or Ulcer.

Now let us descend to his Pasterns, the first of which must be sure to be cleaner and strongly knit with Sinews or Ligaments, the second straight, stiff and smoothly fixed, not more inclinable to bend one way than another, but not over long; for it shews a weak horse: Or if the former be gouty or swelled, it denotes strains and over reaching Sinews.

The next thing to be considered is the hoof, the which is as great a piece of Curiosity to be observed, as any that belong to the choosing a good horse, for if that fail, all the other properties avail not.

First then, a good hoof should be smooth of colour; black and inclining to long, something hollow and full, sounding; for, take  
fo



notice that a white hoof is not so good by reason of its tenderneſs; ſo that it is apt either to let the ſhooe draw, or it ſelf to batter or ſpread, by being in too much wet or hard riding.

The next is a withered hoof that ſeems to ſcall, or have welts or ſeams upon it; which denotes the horſe to be aged or much worn by hard travel or overheats; another ſort of hoofs there are which are called ſhort hoofs, and are ſo brittle that they will not bear any ſhooe above a day at the moſt if rid or laboured; if his hoof be exceeding round, it is bad for deep and dirty ways, by reaſon the horſe cannot tread ſure; a flat hoof that is light and full of pores or holes is a ſign of h s being foundred; if you perceive by ſtriking the hoof a hollow noiſe, or that it be hollow within, it ſignifies ſome internal defect and old feſter not cured, that has waſted the pith, and therefore is not good.

The next thing obſervable is the Coronet or Socket of the hoof, the which being well fleſhed, ſmooth, without Chops or Scars, and well decked with hair, is a ſign of its being in good plight and ſound; but if the contrary, he is often troubled with ring-worms, a crown-ſcab or the like dangerous miſfortune.

Having taken particular notice of the former properties of goodneſs or defect, remove your ſelf to the right ſide, and then take eſpecial notice how his head is fixed to his neck; ſee firſt that it be ſmall at the ſetting on, and ſo by degrees deſcend taper to his ſhoulders, not thick, but rather broad; and obſerve that his head ſtand not too high nor too low, with a high yet thin Creſt, his Mane declinable, long, ſoft, and a little curling, which are ſigns of comelineſs; as on the contrary, a thick joulthead, and thick neck, ſhort and brawny, ſhews much dulneſs and deformity.

If there be any ſwelling in, or under the nape of the Neck, it will certainly turn to the Poll-evil or ſome Fiſtula, which is altogether as bad if not taken in time.

Again, to have a thick Neck, and lank or fallen near the Withers, to have a groſs and flat, or ſunk Creſt, are ſigns of great defect in ſtrength; exceſſive ſtore of hair upon the Mane, eſpecially if it be ſtreight and hard, ſignifies dulneſs and want of courage; a thin Mane that is not made ſo by any accident or diſtemper, ſhews the horſe to be of a fiery nature; if it fall away it ſhews either Itch, Worms, or Mange to lodge there.



The next thing worthy to be observed, is his Back or Chine, which must be broad, streight and smooth, well measured and even, to which his Ribs must be well grafted, firm, and round, his fillets or haunches streight, stout and strong, nor must there be above three Inches breadth between his farthest rib and huckle-bone, that is the nearest to the same, as the short ribs which are all signs of a perfect and well shaped horse.

The next thing is, to take a special observation of the shape of his body, if it be plump, smooth, and contained within the compass of his ribs, and not hanging over or paunching out; his stones or genitals must likewise be contained close in their Purses or Cods, as it were girt to his Yard, the which shews the horse to be of good mettle, well made and free from Diseases in those parts; but if the contrary, it shews him defective and uncomely.

First then, if he have a narrow back, he will be prone to Saddle-galls, hurts and bruises in riding; to have a sway-back is a token of great weakness in the Chine, or if his Ribs be very fat and streight they in Travel will hinder him from fetching his full wind and so consequently make him tire; if now his hinder Ligaments or Fillets be slack, hang flabbing and unseemly, they will be a great hinderance to him if he travel in steep way, and he can by no means hold any pace up a hill if it be very steep, and but very untoward in carrying any burthen.

Again, if his belly be gant, and seems to be close within his ribs or near to his back, if his Stones hang down and swag about in the Cods, they are great signs of imperfection and uneasiness in the horse, caused by some distemper, and likewise he will be apt to founder.

The next things to be taken notice of are his Buttocks, they must be smooth, round, and even, not standing too high nor too low, but as near as can be level with his Body; but many choose a long Buttock'd horse for riding double or the like, which if they do, they must observe that they rise behind and wear the Dock spread to the setting on thereof, which makes a horse shew well, and are signs of strength.

Now for the narrow Buttock or ridged rump, they are both weak and uncomely and will not conveniently bear any thing behind.

From



From which I shall descend to his Thighs or Hips, first observe if they be well brawned, Sinewed, and that they from the first setting on to the Bow-Joint are made taper, lessening by degrees, and be well fleshed, all which if they be not, shews weakness and unaptness for service; after which take special notice of the hock or middle Joint, and with your hand feel if it be well knit, full of Gristles, Sinews and Ligaments, that it be not fleshy nor swelled, and that it have large Veins, be pliant and apt to bend at each motion of the horse, something bowing it must be and firm. All these are good signs; but if there be cuts, scars, or festers in the inside of the Joint or else-where, it is dangerous and not easie to be cured.

If there happen any swelling or heat over the Joints in general, then it is no other but a blow, but observe if such swelling be only in one place, and that on the inside in the hollow of the Joint, and the Veins strut, feel hot, and beat much, or throb, and that the swelling be soft, it is a blood spavin; but if brawny and hard, a bone-spavin, but if it chance to be just upon the hock or out-bow, behind or a little under it, then it is or shortly will be a Curb, &c.

Now for his hinder legs, you must observe whether they be fine, neat and clean, full of strong Sinews and not very fat, which shews him sound in those parts; but on the contrary, if his legs be very fat, fleshy, large, it signifies him bad for Service; if they be tumid or swelling, it denotes the setlings of molten grease there; if any scabs happen to be something above the Pasterns, they denote the Scratches or chops; cuts or scars beneath them denote Pains or Aches, all which are dangerous and require great skill and diligence to cure them.

Now for the Tail, it cannot stand amiss nor out of place upon fair Buttocks; but upon an ill pair if it be never so well placed it will not seem handsom; the posture it ought to stand in is even with the parting of the Buttocks, that is broad, high, smooth and somewhat bending inward, fleshy and of a good length, bristly and curled, the length being not only a beauty but very necessary for him to defend himself with against Wasps, Hornets and Flies, though many desire to have him cut-tailed.

But in general, the whole body must be framed according to the most expert horsemens opinions, thus to have the head and



legs of a Stag, the ears and tail of a Fox, the neck of a Swan, the breast of a Lyon, the Buttocks of a Woman, and the feet of an Ass. The perfect good horse thus *Virgil* in his *Georgicks* describes, the which to insert may not be amiss.

*With head advanced high at first the Kingly Colt doth pace,  
His tender Limbs aloft he lifts, as well becomes his race.  
And foremost still he goes, and through the stream he makes his way,  
And ventures first the Bridge, no sudden sound doth him affray.  
High crested is his neck, and eke his neck is framed small,  
His Belly gaunt, his back is broad, and breasted big withal.  
The Bay is always counted good, so likewise is the Grey,  
The white and yellow worst of all: Besides if far away  
There haps a noise, he stamps and quiet cannot rest,  
But prounces here and there as if some spirit him possess'd.  
His ears be set upright, and from his Nose the fiery flame,  
Doth seem to come, while as he snuffs and snorteth at the same.  
Thick is his Mane, and on his right side down doth hanging fall,  
And double Crin'd, upon his Loins a gutter runs withal.  
He scraping stands, and making of deep holes he paws the ground,  
Whilst that aloud his horned hoof all hollow seems to sound.*

Thus I ave you all the particular and general descriptions both of a good and bad horse, and may therefore know what to choose and what to forbear, and note that amongst all the Creatures irrational, there is not one more generous nor more serviceable to man than is the Horse; for as we read of *Bucephalus* the Horse of *Alexander* the Great, that although he was wounded in the Battle against the *Perfians*, so that his Life was much despaired of, yet would not he suffer his Master to mount any other horse till he had brought him safe out of the Battle. The like has been reported of others, whose Loves have been so great to their Masters, that when they have been enclosed with Enemies, the Horses have fought in their defence couragiously; and *Eumenius* relateth that a certain Traveller being set upon by four Thieves was killed, which his Horse perceiving, fell upon them with such fury, that in revenge of his Masters death he killed two of them and made the other two get up into a Tree to save themselves, where he watched them till such time as several Passengers came by and understood



stood what had passed, the Thieves being constrained to confess what they had done. And indeed it behoves all that frequently travel the Roads to have a good horse that they may save them in necessity, either by courage or swiftness in flight.

C H A P. XI.

*How to cure the Autocoe, a violent pain so called.*

THIS happens most commonly when horses are first put into fresh Pasture by their too eagerness in feeding, which causes ill digesture, and leaves vicious humours in the stomach, or if he be at Stable or dry meat, the like may happen by his rank feeding; this Disease often takes the Horse very violently, makes his Legs fail him and to hang down his Head, shaking all over as if an Ague possessed him; the speediest way to remedy it, is to let him blood, and two mornings successively to give him about an ounce of *Diapente* brewed in a quart of strong Ale; it being a soveraign Medicine or Drink to expel the Vapours, Pains and Infections that do oppress the heart; if he be not cured in twice giving, you may give him thrice, the which will infallibly remove and take away the Distemper.

C H A P. XII.

*How to cure a Horse that has been burnt by any Mare, &c.*

VVHETHER he be so or no you may discern by his Yard, for if that be foul, corrupt, and swelleth, so that he cannot stale without much pain, they are infallible symptoms that he has been burnt. To cure which, take a pint of French-wine, boil it with a quarter of a pound of Roch-Alum beaten into fine powder; after which, take it luke-warm, and with a Sirringe or Squirt, squirt it into his Yard, and so do till his Yard leave mattering, and it will perfectly cure him.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XIII.

*Rules to be observed in the Sweating of Horses.*

**F**irst, let the keeper take great care, when he airs his horse, that it be done by degrees, and not all on a sudden, and then let him observe in that as well as in all his other actions, what temper of Body he is of, that is, whether with little or much motion he used to sweat; for many horses will sweat though they stand still in their Stalls, which commonly denotes the Horse faint, ill-dieted, and as bad looked after, then must you exercise him to work out the sweat and bring down his foul feeding, but if he be not apt to sweat unless upon strong heats and large breathings, then observe if his sweat be white or frothy, then take notice that your horse is foul within and must be exercised yet more, but if it be like water yet thick and black, then you need not fear any danger.

## C H A P. XIV.

*How to prevent a Horse from Stumbling, &c.*

**T**Ake your Horse so used to stumble, and with his Halter fasten him close to a Post, then with your Launcet or a sharp pen-knife slit the skin from his Nose to the upper Lip, that is, down right just between his Nostrils about two inches, which when you have done, part it as wide as you can, and under it you will find a red film or second skin, that likewise cut and part, beneath which you may discern a flat, smooth, white Sinew, the which take up with your Cornets Horn point, and twist it round about, after a little space twist it again quite round, so another time, then have regard to his Legs, and you shall see him draw by degrees



grees his hinder legs almost to his fore-legs, the which as soon as he has done, with your Launcet divide the Sinew at the part which grows to the Lip, the which as soon as you have effected, untwist it and it will shrink up into the head, and then his legs will withdraw back again; for note that his Sinew is the cause of this stumbling, and that it goes quite through his body and speads it self into his two hinder Legs; after which you must close up the slit and put into it fresh Butter, and a little Salt beat fine, then take a Cerecloth made of *Burgundian* Pitch, or Stock-Pitch, and lay upon it, and afterwards you may trust your horse for Stumbling; this is a rare secret known but by few, but worthy to be observed in any the like occasions.

C H A P. XV.

*How to take the best advantage of ground in any Race.*

**T**Is to be observed that when you know the ground you are to run, you must acquaint your horse with it, and give him his Heats there always, making him take the worst part of it, that so upon any straight he may not boggle, but that if he in the Race get the best part he may run the more chearfully, yet let it not be in such rough ground where he may be apt to slip, or get any sprains in his Joints, for if he does it will disable him for the future and make him timorous; but at any time when you heat your horse thereon, let him run out the full Course, and never beyond the weighing Post; or if you do not ride him out-right, ride him half way and back again, but never let him exceed the bounds he is to run, that is, not beyond the Mark or Post, but you may run him quite through, and then back again if he be of ability to bear it, so that in a little time he will be so well acquainted with the ground, that when he comes to the Race it will be easie for him to perform; one thing more is to be observed, that is, what ground the horse most delights to run upon, that you must choose as near as opportunity will give you leave, but you must not always heat him upon the same ground, sometimes in spacious fields, green Meadows and Rivers sides as has been before-mentioned.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XVI.

*How to know by the hair of your Horses Neck in what estate he is.*

**F**irst observe the horses hair in every part ; but the main regard is to be had to that of his Neck, for if it be sleek, close, bright, and shining, it denotes that he is in good order ; but if the contrary, as rough, shagged, and standing upright, and as it were changed colour ; take it for a Rule that he is not well, but that some inward grief has siezed him, as chilness of heart, want of warmth in the external parts, or some Ague hovering about him, but not yet perfect ; to prevent which, and to restore him you must rub him and keep him very warm, with double cloths, and give him in a quart of warm Ale, one of the before-mentioned Cordial Bails, the which will expel the cold humours and make him lively and chearful again, the which you shall know by the sudden falling of his hair, the which before stood staring.

## C H A P. XVII.

*How to make the brittlest Hoof imaginable become soft, and bear well any Shoe without the least injury to the Horse.*

**T**AKE about eight pound of fresh hogs grease, and about half a bushel of Damask Roses well picked and clean from seeds ; melt the hogs grease in a Kettle, and when it boils put in the Roses and dip them all over till they swell ; then take them off, and putting them into a close Earthen Vessel with the grease and all, let them stand and cool ; or if you have an Oven, when you have drawn let it stand in it and cool by degrees, after which, when your horse has newly dinged, put about three pound of the same into them, let it stand for the space of three weeks, then melt it again and strain out the liquid part and cover it up close in the earthen vessel by it self, throwing the other away.

The



The manner to use it is as followeth, the one Spoonful of Tar, and a handful off Horfe-dung, heat them together in a pint of Olive Oil, then taking of his shooes, wrap up his feet with stiff Leather so that you may pour the Liquor in, and it will not run out, which being in, let it continue there about a week, and then the old being wasted supply its place with fresh, the which after thrice doing you may put on his shooes again, then stop his feet well with the Tar, Horfe-dung and Oil, putting over it Tow, or Flax, and in a short time his hoofs will be soft and tough, so that you may use them without fear, and they will bear any shooe exceeding well, and so for a long time, if not as long as the Horfe liveth.

CHAP. XVIII.

*An Account of the things to be observed for the preservation of a Horses Health, and to make him live long.*

**T**He First of which is mature and good digestion of whatsoever he eateth or drinketh, so that it turn to pure blood and nourishment.

2. The Second to be considered, is spare and moderate feeding in which he must neither eat too fast, nor too much.

3. The Third must be taken from moderate Labour and seasonable Exercise.

4. The Fourth is to observe fit times and seasons for sleeping and waking, both which must be moderately taken.

5. The Fifth, He must not be too much acquainted with Mares nor ride them often, for nothing sooner shortens life in any Creature.

6. The Sixth, not to be over-heat nor his Spirits to be wasted by long and tedious Journeys.

7. The Seventh is, continually to be in smooth, serene and wholesom Air, and not to feed in foggy Fens, Marshes, or damp Meadows.

Fffff

8. The



8. The Eighth, Observe that you neither exercise nor any ways make him labour hard when he is newly taken from Grass.

9. The Ninth, to keep him from greedily eating young Grass, either Clover or other, but especially from Surfeiting on the blades of Corn.

10. The Tenth, you must observe that he drink not when he has been hard ridden or laboured, so that he is very hot.

11. The Eleventh thing to be taken notice of is, that you must neither wash nor walk him when you are come to your Journeys end, ride him about a moderate pace till he begins to cool, and then bring him into the Stable, rub him well down and clap on his cloths and wisp him round, being well stored with Litter.

12. The Twelfth and last is to give him meat in due time, observe his Scourings, Diets, and other Physical Medicines as occasion shall require, the which in this book you will find good store, with large directions how to use them.

### C H A P. XIX.

*St. Anthony's most Admirable Remedy for any Sprain, Swelling, or stretching of Sinews or Nerves. A better not to be found.*

**O**Fbruised *Carmin* seeds take three ounces, and boil them in a pint of Oil of *Camomil*, then add to them half a pound of yellow Bees wax, and let them boil to the thickness of a Cerecloth, then spread it on Sheeps-Leather very hot, and apply it to the place so grieved, and in twice doing it will perfect the Cure if it be not too far gone, if it be, you must apply it till it is well.

*Dialphora Zi*



exercise nor any  
newly taken from

young Grabs,  
on the blades

not when he  
serves.

of it, but you must  
to your journey  
he begins to sail, and  
well down along on  
ward with him.

ment in due time, to  
Medicines as occa-  
will last good store,

Spain, Italy, or  
to be found.

ers, and boil them  
to then half a pound  
thickness of a Co  
very hot, and apply  
will perfect the Co  
must apply it till a

CHAP. V



